THE GOLD BOOK

GEOCOSMIC CORRELATIONS TO GOLD PRICE CYCLES

by
RAYMOND A. MERRIMAN

M.M.A. PUBLISHING CO., P.O. BOX 1074 BIRMINGHAM, MI. 48012

DISCLAIMER

All information provided in this book is based upon the original research methods of Raymond A. Merriman, with some technical guidance by Walter Bressert. It is written with sincere and reliable intent. The purpose has been to inform and report, not to mislead.

Although these methods have proved reliable in the past, there can be and therefore is *no* guarantee they will work in the future. Therefore neither the author, the publisher nor any other persons connected with the writing of this book assume any responsiblity whatsoever for any reader's activities in the market. Any such activity must solely be the responsibility of that person alone who chooses to be active in the market.

1st Printing: November, 1982

THE GOLD BOOK: GEOCOSMIC CORRELATIONS TO GOLD PRICE CYCLES

Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number : 82-61324
ISBN: 0-930706-13-7
Edited by Arlene Robertson and Joan Merriman
Cover Design: Alan Burr

Published by Seek-It Publications
Distributed by M.M.A.
P.O. Box 1074
Birmingham, Michigan 48012

DEDICATION

This book is dedicated to Walter Bressert, internationally-known pioneer in the study of financial cycles. Without his insight, patience and encouragement, this book could not have been written. I am most thankful that a professional market analyst of his calibre has become my mentor, and I hope that this book and future works prove worthy of his apprenticeship.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The efforts and loving concern of several people were instrumental in the creation of this book. They include:

Larry Kociela and Joan Merriman, who worked many hours on the great detail involved in making up the charts which appear in the back of this book. Several days were spent in libraries examining Wall Street Journals and microfilms of Wall Street Journals, commodities charts of several individuals, and then transposing data onto graphs.

Michael Angott, who introduced me to **Patti and Skeeter Hughes** of the *Dancing Apache Guest Ranch* just outside of Sedona, Arizona. The *Dancing Apache* provided a most inspirational setting for writing the beginning of this book.

Maxine and Herb Witt, whose cabin in the Summit region of the Colorado Rockies, an old silver mining area, provided the needed seclusion and serenity necessary to conduct the research study which went into this book.

Nick Pastor, whose beautiful cabin on Lake Margrethe outside of Grayling, Michigan provided the setting for completion of this book. During that period a great insight into the market's psychology was attained, which represented a breakthrough as to the real nature of geocosmic signatures related to gold price cycles, as explained in the later chapters.

Lee Smith and Sue Dent, whose apartment in the Gold Coast section of Chicago was the setting for making corrections.

Jeanne Long of Houston, Texas, whose ranch in Del Rio I did not use, but who has been my associate in teaching the methods outlined in the book. Since teaching is one of the most effective ways to learn something, I am thankful for her help in sharing the load, thus allowing me more freedom to research.

The participants of M.M.A. Stock and Gold Market Cycles' Seminars, whose challenge and feedback served as a stimulus to delve further into areas related to gold price cycles.

Debra Christy-Merriman, my wife, who loves gold.

CONTENTS

SOURCES FOR CHARTS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

Fig. 6: *HAL Commodity Cycles and Monetary Cycles Cyclic Report,* Vol. 7, No. 3, January 22, 1981.

Fig. 10: *The American Ephemeris For The 20th Century: 1900-2000 At Midnight,* by Neil F. Michelsen

Fig. 12: *The American Ephemeris: 1981-1990,* by Neil F. Michelsen

Chart For Case History #1: *The HAL Blue Book,* by Walter Bressert and James Jones

Chart For Case History #2: same

Appendix B: Compiled by Lucy Hawkins

Appendix D: Weekly Range Chart of Gold Prices
Graphix Commodity Charts, Suite 1432, 30 W. Washington St., Chicago, Ill 60602

Appendix D: The Graphs On The Daily Prices Of Gold were hand-drawn by Larry Kociela, Joan Merriman, Debra Christy-Merriman and the author. The source for these graphs included:
Wall Street Journals
Files of HALCO and Walter Bressert
Commodities Exchange, Inc. 1977-1980 Statistical Yearbooks

PREFACE

The greater body of this book was written between late 1981 and mid-1982. The calculations and research covered a period of time from May 25, 1975 through May 28, 1982. Consequently there is a time lag between research completion and the debut of this work.

In the last section of the book, the reader is brought up to date with the period between May 28, 1982 and the time the proofs went to print. Further updates will continue to be made through the Merriman Market Analyst Report, which is issued 17 times per year at regular intervals.

All information regarding dates, prices, and cycle types in effect relate to the futures' charts of gold as they appear in the back of this book, unless otherwise stated. The reader is encouraged to look up these charts before beginning, in order to become familiar with where they are, and what dates they cover.

Each chart is for a geocosmic cycle known as Mercury retrograde, and covers a 19-week period. On the top of each chart, the futures' contract to which the prices apply is indicated. The charts are numbered chronologically according to which Mercury retrograde cycle was in effect, beginning with the first one, May 29, 1975. The vertical line on the far left-hand side of the page is the date that Mercury went retrograde. The next vertical line, about three weeks later, is the date Mercury returned to direct motion. The whole period of time between the retrograde and direct dates is known as "Mercury retrograde", and appears in a vertical rectangle with a number on it.

To illustrate, one can see from the first graph, that Mercury went retrograde May 29, 1975. A vertical line appears here, with the symbol ☿ R_x on the top. The next vertical line appears on June 22, 1975, and represents the date that Mercury went direct. The symbol for Mercury direct, ☿D, appears at the top of this vertical line. The period of time from Mercury retrograde to Mercury direct is connected with the horizontal date line at the bottom, and another horizontal line on top, creating a rectangle. In the middle of the line on top of the rectangle is a number, corresponding to the Mercury retrograde period used in this book. On the first graph, this is the number one, written -1-.

The contract in effect for prices shown on this first chart was October 1975, and is indicated as such in the center, at the top of the page.

The next vertical line on the far right-hand side of the graph represents the date Mercury next began its retrograde motion. Again, the symbol ☿ R_x appears at the top of this vertical line, and a number depicting the next Mercury retrograde cycle used in this study is given. In this example, the number is two, or -2-.

The new cycle then begins again (overlaps) with the next graph. On the next graph, #2, the same date for Mercury retrograde now appears on the far left-hand side. It has the same number the last graph ended with. But now, prices are based upon a new futures' contract, anywhere from two to six months later than the former one. Therefore prices for the same date on the two charts (end of former, beginning of present) will not be the same, for a contract increases in price when it is further out in time. Thus the price for gold in the February 1976 contract fell to $130.00 on September 23, 1975, as seen on chart #2. Yet on the former chart #1, which related to gold prices according to an earlier contract, October 1975, prices dropped to $127.40 on September 23, 1975. The difference is that the February 1976 contract has an additional four months to go before expiring, and the time premium has value in the market.

The contract for prices chosen in these graphs was based upon Mercury retrograde cycles. The contract due closest to the time of the *next* Mercury retrograde date was used. Thus in graph #1, the second (and next) Mercury retrograde began September 26, 1975. The closest contract due at *that* time was October, 1975, the next month. Major contracts in gold futures are available every even-numbered month, hence no odd-numbered months appear in these charts.

Hopefully the reasons given for types of contracts used are acceptable to the reader. Most of the concepts introduced in this work are effective with them. And when not, mention is made. For purposes of illustration, the prices are drawn in heavy black ink, and therefore do not reflect opening and closing prices. The intent here was to produce clarity in observing cycles. Where openings and closings proved necessary, they were included in other graphs which appear throughout this text.

Another point of interest involves the potential use of this book. There are many reasons why one would find this book valuable, most notably to either enhance one's trading effectiveness, or as an intellectual, research pursuit into the study of cycles. To those who would wish to improve their trading effectiveness, it is necessary to bear in mind that the information contained herein is most suitable in the identification of intermediate, or near-term cycles, those which unfold during a two to twelve-week period. This does not exclude its significance in forecasting either long-term or shorter-term cycles, and as a point of fact, technical means of determining (or confirming) such cycles are explained.

In the market place, there are several types of traders, or perhaps it should be said that traders in the market trade different cycles. One type is a "day trader", a person who may be in and out of the market several times in one day. It may be that this book will be least helpful to that person, except to bring to his (her) awareness specific days that may be turning points. There are also "short-term" and "intermediate-term" investors who trade according to what are called "trading cycles". A "trading cycle" of a short-term may have a range from one to twenty trading days (these are not hard and fast rules of definition). A "trading cycle" of an intermediate term may range from two to twelve weeks, and usually only three to seven weeks. A "long-term" investor might be one who trades either by the primary cycle (approximately 19 weeks, give or take three weeks) or longer.

Most of the research conducted in this work centers upon durations known as *trading, major and primary cycles.* Though they have orbs, the average amount of time involved in each cycle is as follows:

Trading Cycle = 3 weeks
Major Cycle = 6 weeks
Primary Cycle = 19 weeks

That is why this book may be particularly valuable to those who are near-term or intermediate-term traders. Yet it is not limited to just this type of trader, for technical information necessary in any type of trading is intertwined with these cycles throughout this book.

One final thought needs to be expressed. There is no guarantee that the methods outlined here will continue to work in the future as they have in the past. True, in the past, the price of gold has correlated very well to geocosmic cycles. But trading of commodities like gold involves an element of risk. Initial investments may require 5% or more of the contract's price (100 ounces of gold). As the price increases, per dollar, the investor realizes a profit of $100.00 per contract. Thus if a February contract on gold jumped from $450.00 to 460.00, the investor would realize a profit of $1000.00 (less commissions) had he/she entered at the lower price and withdrawn at the latter. The cost of realizing that profit might be 5% of $450.00 × 100 ounces, or $2250.00. However, if prices had dropped, that same investor stood to lose $100.00 for every $1.00 of descent. Thus if the price plummeted from $450.00 to 440.00, a loss of nearly 50% would have occured, even though the price of gold itself dropped only a little more than 2%.

For this reason, every reader who is a novice in the market is encouraged to seek a competent market advisor before investing. For even though one's analysis of cycles may be accurate, an inexperience in trading could be very costly.

May this book prove to be as valuable to you as a reader as it was for me as a researcher.

Raymond A. Merriman
September 17, 1982

PART ONE

THE MARKET

CHAPTER ONE

THE NECESSARY TOOLS

Welcome to the study of planetary cycles and their correlation to gold prices. You are about to embark upon a most fascinating experience, one filled with insights, revelations and awakenings. One of the results of this pursuit will be to excite a great deal of new thought, strategy, and, perhaps, inspiration. But before any of that is possible, it is necessary to have essential tools at hand. It can be very annoying to leave a critical part of the book because you suddenly realize you need a calculator. So before you begin, make sure you have the following tools:

1. An ephemeris. This is a book of tables giving precise locations for each of the planets in our solar system. Most recommended (and used in examples in this book) are any of the AMERICAN EPHEMERIDES which cover the years 1971 through 1983 (i.e. THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR THE TWENTIETH CENTURY 1900 to 2000, or THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR 1971-1980, and 1981-1990). Ephemerides list planetary positions for either noon or midnight, Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), every day as seen from Earth against the backdrop of a group of constellations known as the zodiac. Since our examples are based upon the midnight positions, we suggest the reader who is unfamiliar with this book acquire a midnight ephemeris.
2. A ruler or straight edge.
3. Paper and pencil.

It is also suggested that you obtain the following:

1. Make copies of the 23 daily-priced gold charts, and the weekly highs and lows of

gold prices' chart, for easy referral as you read. These may also be ordered from the publisher (see back of book).

2. Have a calculator ready. You probably won't need it for any exercise in the book, but you may get a sudden flash of inspiration involving percentages you might want to calculate.
3. A magnifying glass. Charts necessarily had to be reduced to fit this book, so if you have difficulty reading small figures, this suggestion could be most beneficial.

Now, find a comfortable chair with good lighting, take your phone off the hook, inform everyone that you are not to be interrupted, and begin a study that might change your life.

CHAPTER TWO

BULL AND BEAR MARKET CHARACTERISTICS

The study of gold prices is a threatening enlightenment. It is at the same time a continual source of revelation and learning as well as a constant temptation to plunge into basic (and base) human emotions and behaviors such as greed and obsession. The student, of course, has a choice: to appreciate the study for the vast amount of synchronicity and hence expanded understanding of the nature of reality, or to become hopelessly controlled and disappointed in the ambitious effort to capitalize on what seems to be a "sure thing."

The latter choice, the one of disappointment in the quest for riches, is a result of many factors that arise in the study of gold price cycles. It is not purely related to greed and obsession. It is also due to the incorrect application of both geocosmic and trading principles. The axiom that a little knowledge is a dangerous tool, is most applicable here. Far too often the student places too much emphasis upon one aspect of analysis, thus ignoring or underestimating the strength behind others that are also present. For example, it may be true that 13-15 weeks after Pluto goes retrograde the price of gold has a tendency to realize a major *trough*. It may also be true that, at a given time, this occurs in a long upward (bull) cycle, and thus this trough is not as low as one closer to the time of the retrograde itself. If the speculator placed undue emphasis upon the geocosmic factor and sold *short* with gold at the time of the retrogradation, with the hope of making a sizable profit in 13-15 weeks, there might instead be a considerable loss—a loss that might otherwise have been avoided if technical factors were taken into account.

There is, of course, a happy medium between the two choices described. One can not only appreciate the wonder of synchronicity between planetary cycles and the price of gold, but may also learn patience by taking the time to properly analyze all (or at least many) principles in effect at a given time, and then to invest (if that is the choice) with practicality. Perhaps it is needless to say that this author does not subscribe to the obsession of betting everything on a "sure thing."

Already a number of words have been used like *retrograde, short, trough,* and *bull* which the reader may not understand. Therefore, the first step in a proper beginning of understanding the relationship between gold price cycles and planetary cycles is to know the language. Since many readers may be well-versed in market terminology or geocosmic study, but not necessarily both, a description of terms and concepts for each is included in this book. This chapter will introduce the reader to market concepts and terminology so important in the understanding of price cycles. Chapter Three will cover the principles of gold price cycles and Chapter Four will discuss the principles of geocosmic cycles.

First of all, there are two types of markets, or trends in market prices. These are known as **BULL** and **BEAR** markets. A **BULL** market is one in which the longer-term trend of prices is increasing. A **BEAR** market is one in which the longer-term trend of prices is decreasing. An example of a bear market in gold prices is the period from 1975 through August 25, 1976 (see first four charts in back of book). Actually, this bear market began before the first chart, as it commenced in late December 1974. Another bear market in gold prices began September 24, 1980, and continues in effect as this book is being written in 1982.

An example of a bull market in gold prices can be seen from the bottom of August 25, 1976, through the all-time top, January 21, 1980. Bull markets usually begin when bear markets end, and vice-versa, though these exact points are not always clearly defined. For instance, a bull market may not technically end at the point it achieves its absolute highest price. It may fall from that price, then begin rising again for several months. Though it does not achieve that same peak again in price, it cannot yet be called a bear market because there is not yet a steady decline in each successively lower, bottom, price. To illustrate this point, consider the crest of the most recent bull market on January 21, 1980. Following that peak, the price of gold fell steeply through March 18, 1981. However, each new low (trough) after that date was higher in price than the previous one (see May 1, May 22, August 11 of 1980).

This illustration points out a very important characteristic of bull and bear markets. As a general rule the following conditions exist in a bull market: *each successive crest in price exceeds the previous one, and each successive trough is also higher in price than the previous one.* In a bear

market, *each bottom in price tends to be lower than the previous trough, and each top (crest) in price is usually less than the previous crest.*

Returning to our graphs, one can see that the price of gold did indeed achieve its peak on January 21, 1980. And even though following crests did not match it, they did begin to form a series of successively increasing peaks after April 25, while at the same time successive bottoms in prices were higher than the last until September 23, 1980. Thus, the period of January 21 through September 23, 1980 should also be considered part of a bull market phase.

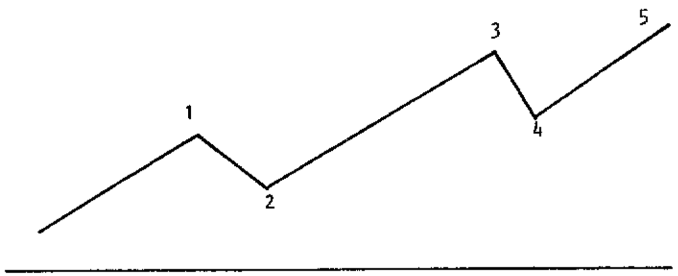


Figure 1: Example of a bull market, filtered waves

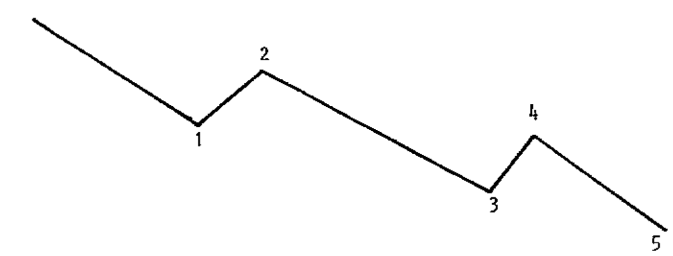


Figure 2: Example of a bear market, filtered waves

Following the September 23, 1980 date, though, the characteristics of a bear market became evident. Each new crest cycle was lower in price than the former, and each new trough cycle was also lower than the former.

The graphs in Figures 1 and 2 demonstrate the basic appearance of a bull and bear market.

Troughs and Crests

The terms trough and crest are the most frequently used phrases in technical analysis to describe a bottom or a top respectively in prices. *Troughs*, or bottoms, are the points from which cycles in prices are usually measured, as in trough to trough. For instance, a "six-week cycle" means that it generally takes six weeks from one major bottom in gold prices to another. In some cases in this book, cycles may be measured from crest to crest, and will be pointed out as such.

There are no definite time periods in which bull and bear markets remain in effect. Generally, bull markets are longer in duration than bear markets. There are, however, exceptions to this rule. Reliable cycles seem to occur between the periods of very powerful troughs, at 5½ to 6 year intervals. More on this subject will be discussed in the chapter on Cycles.

Long and Short, Primary Directions, Secondary Reactions, Rallies and Retractments

Long and *short* are technical trading terms used in the investment community. **To "go long" means to invest with expectation that prices will be rising.** Going long is wisest during a *bull* market, and at a time when the investor believes that the market is about to begin a *primary swing*. A *primary swing* refers to the swing in prices from a low to a high that exceeds the previous crest in a bull market. Specifically, it is known as the *primary direction of prices*, a swing upward towards new highs in a bull market.

A fortunate investor in a bull market is one who buys in at a *secondary reaction*, or *correction*, in order to capitalize on a forthcoming *primary swing*. **Secondary reactions**, or corrections, are terms used to **describe a downward swing, or decrease in prices during a bull market.** Remember, though, these retractments, or troughs, are not usually as low in price as previous troughs. Yet, they offer exceptional investment opportunities in a bull market, because prices frequently achieve new and higher crests than previously when they finish their course and return to the *primary direction*.

It will be shown in a later chapter that price objectives (the expected price range that gold or any commodity may go to) can be determined with

a considerable degree of reliability. If one knows at what price range gold may fall during a secondary reaction in a bull market, then one can prepare to make a purchase when that price objective is met. Not only can that *price range* be determined with frequent reliability, but also through the application of geocosmic cycles, the *probable date* can be determined as well.

A similar chain of events unfolds during a bear market. Here, a fortunate investor is one who *sells short* during a *rally*, or *correction*, then capitalizes on the primary swing downward. A rally is a term used to describe a **rise in prices, or an upward swing, during a bear cycle.** Again, the word retractment can be used for the price will tend to retract (or rally) to a predictable price range. The crest of this rally will usually not be as high as the previous crest, and the next trough will likely be lower than the one immediately preceding it. As the market moves from this rally to the next trough, this too is known as the primary direction, or swing, in a bear market. In Figure 1, lines 1–2 and 3–4 are examples of a secondary reaction in a bull market. In Figure 2, lines 1–2 and 3–4 illustrate rallies in a bull market.

Left and Right Translation

To demonstrate these points, let us look at Charts #3 and 4, covering the phase of a bear market from January 16 through August 25, 1976. Notice that each crest cycle is lower in price than the previous one, and that each trough cycle after March, 1976 is also lower than the previous trough. Now let us look at the bottom of $126.10 for May 26, 1976. Notice the rally one week later to a crest of $133.80 on June 1, 1976. The informed cycles' analyst (using technical tools that will be described later) would have determined a retractment, or probable price objective of $130.00–$134.00. Also, that analyst would expect a *left translation* phenomenon to be in effect within two weeks of the bottom (left translation will be described shortly). A search of planetary positions would reveal that a new moon had just occurred over the weekend, and that Mercury was turning direct (these geocosmic terms will be explained in Chapter Four). In any event, the wise and studious cycles' analyst would recognize that once gold achieved a price of $132.00, give or take $2.00, that the *rally* might be over. Now would be the time to prepare to *sell short*, or buy a contract with the expectation that the price of gold would drop—in fact, with the expectation that the price would drop below $126.10 sometime between five and seven weeks after the last trough, May 26, 1976. It turned out the next trough was eight weeks later, July 20, 1976, at a price of $105.20. That it might have occurred a little later than expected by means of the cycles' theory could have been ascertained through the application of planetary cycles, as four prominent geocosmic signatures were present July 17-21, 1976.

This same investor could have then gained in the next cycle as well. Watching for the rally one to two weeks later (again, knowing about left translation), and expecting the price to rally, or retract, to a price of $119.00, give or take $5.00, the opportunity once again presented itself on July 28, 1976 as the price did in fact achieve $115.80. Again, *selling short* for five to seven weeks (it is not always recommended that one hold a contract this length of time, as will be explained later) would have coincided with the next trough on August 25, 1976 as the price dipped to $99.70, the lowest point in this particular bear market cycle. The end of the bear market becomes suspect when the next crest surpasses the former, and, sure enough, the $115.80 top was cancelled out on September 10, 1976 when prices rose to $118.00.

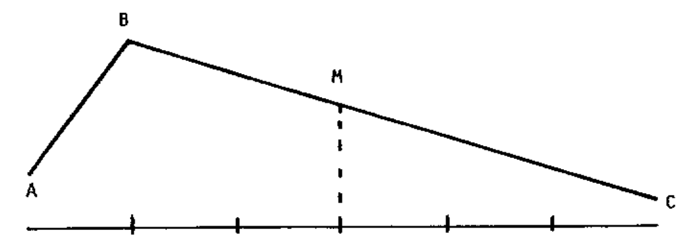
This example brings up another characteristic of bull and bear markets—**translation**. This term first came to the author's attention while reading an issue of the HAL Commodity Cycles report by Walter Bressert.[1]

Basically, there are two types of translation, or swing, from a trough to a crest in prices and they correlate to bull or bear market characteristics. In a *bear* market, *left translation* is usually present. That means that **the crest in price between troughs occurs closer in time to the preceding, or first trough** (see Figure 3). For instance, if there are six weeks between troughs and it is a bear market, the crest will usually occur within three weeks (or less) after the first trough. In fact, it is usually only one or two weeks later, after which the price continues downwards for the next several weeks.

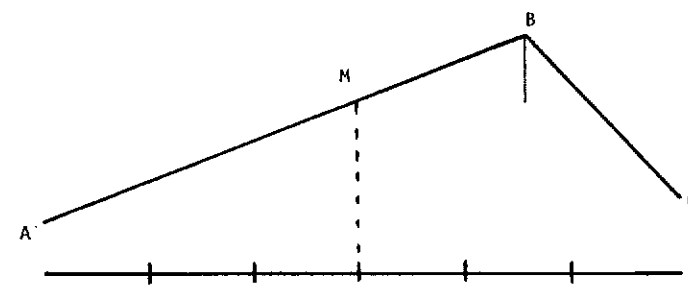
In a *bull* market, *right translation* is usually evident. Here, **the crests between the troughs usually occur closer in time to the following, or second trough** (see Figure 3). To illustrate, assume again that there are six weeks between troughs, and that a bull market is in effect. In right translation, the crest will then occur *after* three weeks, and usually not until the fourth or fifth week. In fact, when the bull market is clearly rolling, the trough will usually occur within two weeks after the crest. Likewise, when the bear market is clearly underway, the top will usually occur within two weeks following the trough.

Let us now return to the graphs in order to illustrate all of these principles. Look up the charts correlating to the April, August and December, 1979 contracts for gold (Charts #12, 13 and 14). Notice first of all that this indeed is a period of a *bull market. Each crest cycle is higher* in

1. HAL Commodity Cycles, Vol. 7, No. 3, Jan. 22, 1981, HALCO, Dallas, TX.



Example of left translation



Example of right translation

Figure 3.

price *than the previous one, and each trough cycle is* also *higher* in price *than the one preceding it.*

Now let us try to identify *right translation*, one of the dominant characteristics of a bull market. The first trough, or bottom, occurred November 30, 1978, at $198.00. The next one arrived seven weeks later, on January 15, 1979. Notice the price of this bottom was higher than the last: $220.60. The crest of that cycle was achieved on January 2, 1979, at a price of $234.00. This was well past the midpoint of the seven-week cycle; in fact, it occurred in the fifth week, and preceded the next trough by only two weeks.

Another trough appeared five to seven weeks later. On March 5, 1979, the price of gold for April contracts declined to $235.00 per ounce. Again, this bottom was higher than the January 15, 1979 price. Again, the crest was achieved at $258.80, well past the midpoint of the cycle, during the fifth week, and only two weeks before the bottom.

The next trough was realized six weeks later, on April 16, 1979, at a price of $235.60. Since we are dealing with a later contract now, the prices will be slightly higher, thus distorting the fact that this trough was actually *higher* than the previous one. The crest during this six-week cycle fell in the third week, right in the middle. The price of the crest was $256.50, lower than the last. This type of behavior signals a warning to the investor that the market may be readying for a change: the right translation phenomenon is moving "leftwards," the prices of the troughs and crests are not as high as preceding ones.

However, our fears of an ending bull market were not realized. Within three weeks, new highs in prices were achieved, thus breaking *resistance levels* (they will be explained shortly), and *breaking out* to a new high June 22, 1979 at $287.50. An interesting phenomenon took place here: there was no strong five to seven week cycle of trough to trough. Instead, there was a **ten-week duration**, the next good-sized trough not appearing until June 28, 1979. Holding true to form, though, right translation of the crest occurred just one week *before* the bottom.

Continuing our examination of these principles, let us assume at this point that a well-informed investor enters the market. This individual is going to apply all the technical analyses described thus far, and knowledge of *price objectives* that have not yet been discussed. It is known that there is a strong bull market in effect, that a crest was achieved June 22, 1979 as prices achieved $287.50. The investor expects that within two weeks there will be a secondary reaction, or retractment, since right translation is in effect, and that another peak will culminate (higher than the last), sometime four to five, possibly seven, weeks after this next bottom. The price objective of $262.00, give or take $6.00, is not realized, so possibly this opportunity is missed. Yet, there is a *break out* (resistance level was penetrated), so "the sky is the limit." Realizing this, and aware that the trough should occur within two weeks regardless of whether or not it reaches *our* price objective, the investor enters the market, perhaps in the second week when it again penetrates the last new high price (about $290.00). Again, this is done with the expectation that a greater crest will come about within four to seven weeks after the trough of June 28, 1979.

Sure enough, right translation is again in effect, as four weeks later the price climbs to $319.50. Adjust a few dollars for the fact that contracts changed in our example—not enough to alter the sizable profit that did occur. And, within two weeks of this crest, the next trough is realized.

Our investor's new price objective from this peak of July 24, 1979 is $302.00, give or take $5.00. We expect it will be realized within two weeks according to translation theory. In actuality, it was realized within a week, and declined even further the second week, but do not expect to be exact every time—close enough is good enough to still come out ahead. In this case, a greater cycle than the six-week cycle was due, and often coincides with steeper retractments than 40-60%.

So, let us assume our investor re-enters the bull market at $302.00, believing that within three to seven weeks following the low (August 6, 1979), there will be new highs, greater than $319.50. Sure enough, the market penetrates $319.50, and by the sixth week, the price is $396.00 (September 20, 1979) before beginning a retractment. The reader will notice two things here: first, our investor did indeed realize a nice profit, and second, the primary swing did not really end three to seven weeks after the trough, nor did the five to eight week trough cycle really take hold.

This is a most important observation: cycles' theories work fairly regularly, approximately 70% of the time. They are not fool-proof, and they should not be expected to perform with 100% reliability. When they do not follow the "usual" plan, there are generally reasons to account for such exceptions. Not always, though. In the example given, the peak of gold prices was not achieved until eight weeks after the trough, and the next trough did not unfold until nine weeks later. We mentioned that one regular cycle of major troughs is a six-week cycle, as identified by Walter Bressert,[2] and this cycle is effective about 80% of the time. In some instances, though, there is instead, a ten-week "slash," or ½ *primary cycle*, also identified by Bressert. So far, we have seen this cycle twice, in an otherwise regular five to seven-week trend. There is a greater cycle which Bressert discovered and will be described in another chapter, known as a *Primary Cycle*, which appears in intervals of 19 weeks. Every so often, this cycle is "slashed" in half, at approximately the nine to ten week midway point, sometimes contracting or expanding to the eighth or eleventh week. When this happens, the customary six-week cycle may be disturbed.

Resistance and Support Levels

Returning to our purpose of explaining technical market terminology, we will now consider the terms *resistance* and *support levels*. These refer to price levels. When the **price** of gold, or anything for that matter, **reaches a level and does not seem to go any higher, it is because of resistance** on the part of the buyer to pay any higher price. A lot of buying and selling at this top price may occur, defining that price as an upward

2. Bressert, Walter, and Jones, James, THE HAL BLUE BOOK, HALCO, 1981.

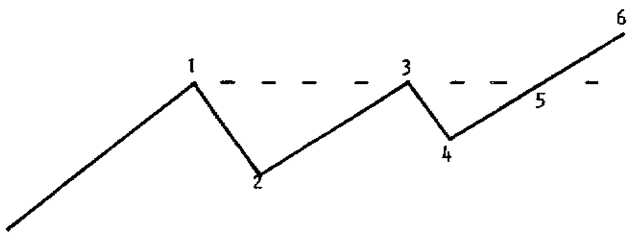


Figure 4: Example of resistance level and breakout of resistance level. Line 1-3-5 is resistance level. At point 5, breakout of resistance level occurs. Point 3 is known as a *double top*, a common occurrence in defining a resistance level.

boundary, or resistance level. Sometime afterwards, the price of gold may drop, then rise again. But once more, buyers are unwilling to pay any more than this defined boundary—they resist (see Figure 4). If prices do not go any higher, then this second crest close to the same resistance price is known as a *double top*, or *crest*.

It works in the opposite manner too. When the price of gold drops, it finally realizes a level at which sellers are unwilling to sell any more. There may be a great deal of buying and selling at this point, giving strength to define a *lower limit, or support, level in prices*. When the price of gold rallies up, it may then be followed by a retractment back down to the same price that was just defined as the "bottom line," or support level. If it remains above this price level, it is known as a *double bottom*, or *trough*. (See Figure 5).

In order to be considered a "defined" support or resistance level, each price level must be tested at least once. If the test holds, it is a defined, or valid support or resistance level.

Breakouts

Whenever the price of gold, or anything, *penetrates* (goes beyond) a defined *support or resistance level*, it is known as a *breakout* (see Figures 4 and 5). Breakouts are important to recognize because the market often takes sudden and dramatic leaps in the direction of the breakout. However, it is also very unsettling, because it often concurs with panic buying and selling. In other words, if a support level is penetrated, meaning the price goes lower than sellers had defined as "the bottom line," a *breakout*

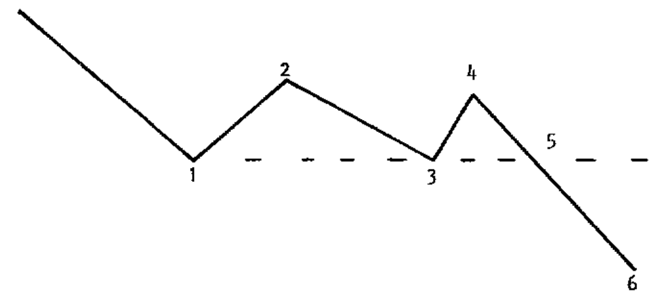


Figure 5: Example of support level and breakout of support level. Line 1-3-5 represents support level of prices. At point 5, breakout of support level occurs. Point 3 is known as a *double bottom*, an occurrence frequently present in defining a support level.

downward to a rather startling level will probably follow. This is usually the case during bear markets, and offers an excellent opportunity for the investor to make a profit by *selling short* (selling at today's prices and buying back at a future, lower price, or, investing with the expectation that prices will decline further).

The same holds true with a breakout, or penetration on the upside of a resistance level. Once the resistance price has been passed, dramatic increases in the price usually follow. This represents an excellent opportunity for the investor to make a profit by *going long*, the usual mode of buying wherein one buys at today's prices and sells at a future price, anticipating a higher price.

As a recent example, let us consider the bear market of 1980–1982. When gold prices reached their peak, January 21, 1980, they then plunged to the $490.00 level by March 18, 1980. After a rally, prices dropped down again to the 490's in late April, thus defining this price as the new *support level* (see Chart #16). Whenever prices approached this point, they rallied up. Sellers were saying: "We are not going to sell gold for any less." So whenever it fell to that level, people began to buy gold, and thus prices began to rise again.

However, in early 1981, the support level was once again tested (see Charts #18 and #19). During the week of February 6 (weeks are always given by the Friday date), gold prices actually broke below $490.00. Not by much, only a dollar or two, but they broke. They immediately rallied, then tested the support level again the next week. It barely held, but again prices increased until the week of February 27, 1981. Finally, the next Monday, the support level really broke as prices slid down to the $450.00 level on the spot market (current daily price at which gold can be purchased).

The $450.00 area then became the new support level. Several times in the next few months the price of gold would test, and hold, this support point. And then, in late July, it broke through $450.00, commencing a dive all the way down to $388.50 on August 3, 1981 (see Chart #20).

Now the $388.50 price became the support level. Over the course of the next four months, it was tested and retested. Every time it held, until the week of January 15, 1982 (see Charts #21 and #22).

Each of these *breakouts*, or penetrations of the support level, led to new low prices, considerably down from their former levels. In each case, an investor *selling short* as soon as the support level was penetrated would have fared very well. The lesson here is that once the support level is broken, prices drop very fast, in these cases $30.00–$60.00 within a week, before the next support level is defined.

Breakouts in the opposite mode were common during the bull market of 1976 through 1980. To illustrate, observe Charts #8 through #15. In Chart #8, a resistance level of close to $170.00 was defined in the December 1977 contract, specifically on November 9, 1977. During the week of January 6, 1978, that resistance level was penetrated on the upside, and prices kept rising to around the $190.00 level the week of March 10, 1978. At that time $190.00 became the new resistance level. After prices declined substantially for seven weeks, they rose soon after to test and thus define this $190.00 level twice, once the week of June 2 and again the week of June 23, 1978. Each time prices did not penetrate. Finally the $190.00 resistance level was penetrated the week of July 21, and prices skyrocketed close to $250.00 by November 3 week.

Following the $250.00 level of November 3, prices plummeted for several weeks. It was not until the week of February 9 that $250.00 was surpassed, but prices remained quite close as they defined a resistance level of $258.80 in the April 1979 contract. Three times prices touched in this area, and each time they held fast. During the week of March 30, they again tested $250.00–258.80, and again penetration failed. Finally prices *broke through* $258.80 the week of May 25, 1979, and continued a phenomenal rise to the all-time high of $895.00 on January 21, 1980 (April contract of that same year). In the last swing, there were several other possible resistance levels, but each test of these new prices failed to hold.

As with the breakouts of the support levels during a bear market, the breakouts of resistance levels in a bull market frequently synchronize with sharp price movements in the direction of the breakout. These instances usually offer excellent opportunities to the investor going in the direction of the breakout.

Though the explanation of these technical terms took some time, and perhaps may not be of interest to the informed investor reading this book, it served many purposes. First, for those who wish to understand the subject thoroughly, and perhaps become wise investors, it is necessary to become acquainted with charts of gold prices. The more familiar one is with the history of the study, the more one will readily recognize reoccurrences of patterns or cycles, as they are bound to occur. In the study of cycles, history does indeed repeat itself. It is also necessary to note specific appearances of characteristics that will help define what type of a market is in effect. It is always easier to be right when one is going in the direction of the market, and not contrary to it. If it is a bull market, one must watch for opportunities to get in and go long. These will usually appear during secondary reactions. If it is a bear market, one must also watch for opportunities to sell short, and these will arise during rallies. There are many legs to both bull and bear markets; there is not just one downswing in a bear phase, nor just one upswing in a bull period. So one should not become obsessed with getting in only at the bottom of the bear and out at the top of the bull markets. Getting in on the secondary reactions or the rallies, and going in the direction of the primary swing at those points, will yield far more profit than the few times one might lose when the direction of the market changes from bull to bear and vice-versa. And even with the technical knowledge of left and right translation, successively higher crests and troughs for bulls, and successively lower crests and troughs for bears, the patient student will often be able to spot a change approaching.

In summary then, the first step is to define whether one is in a bull or bear market. A bull market occurs when prices are increasing over a long period of time, and a bear market occurs when the opposite is true, as prices decline over a period of time. Other points to help define bull and bear markets are as follows:

BULL MARKET

1. **Each successive crest of a cycle of a similar type (peak in price) is usually higher than the last.**
2. **Each successive trough of the same cycle-type (bottom) is usually higher in price than the last. These are also known as secondary reactions in a bull market. The price objective (see later chapter) is usually a 40-60% retractment from the primary bull swing.**
3. **Right-translation is frequently in effect. The crest usually occurs *after* the middle of the cycle, which is three or more weeks after the initial trough and usually one to two weeks**

before the next trough, in the case of major trough cycles in gold.

4. Breakouts of resistance levels frequently occur and represent excellent opportunities to go long.

BEAR MARKET

1. Each successive trough of the same cycle-type (bottom, low) is generally lower than the last.
2. Each successive crest of the same cycle-type (top, peak) is usually lower than the last. This is also known as a rally and usually follows a 40-60% retractment in price (see later chapter), usually closer to 40%.
3. Left-translation is frequently in effect. The crest occurs before the middle of the cycle and usually one to two weeks after the trough, in the case of major trough cycles in gold.
4. Breakouts of support levels occur frequently and represent excellent opportunities to sell short.

CHAPTER THREE

CYCLES THEORIES IN GOLD PRICES

A cycle is the period of time it takes a phenomenon to repeat itself. In market prices, such as gold, the basis of measurement is usually in terms of troughs, or lows. Though cycles in crests, or highs, have also been identified, they are generally less common, less predictable than cycles measured in troughs.

There are also many cycles within cycles. For instance, in the study of astronomy, it is well-known that every 29 days there is a new moon cycle. It is also known that a solar eclipse occurs with regularity every sixth new moon cycle (sometimes it also occurs on the fifth new moon, at which point it is possible that neither is a *total* solar eclipse). Thus, we have a 29-day cycle, and a 6-month cycle, and six of the 29-day cycles make up one 6-month solar eclipse cycle. Every 19 years the solar eclipse might repeat itself in the same relative position in the heavens as seen from Earth. This is then known as an *annular solar eclipse.* For example, a very predictable annular eclipse is that which occurs close to the winter solstice every 19 years. The last one happened December 24, 1973, and the next will be December 24, 1992. But, if one looks back in history, an annular winter solstice eclipse took place December 24 (give or take one day) every 19 years (i.e. in the twentieth century, December 25, 1954, December 25, 1935 and December 24, 1916). An interesting side note is that real estate values run in 19 year cycles with the bottom in prices generally being close to the periods of the annular winter solstice solar eclipse.

The illustration demonstrates one very obvious point: there are minor cycles within greater cycles which themselves may be in greater cycles yet.

And, of course, the number of cycles involved in greater cycles may be infinite.

The study of cycles relating to market prices is not new. There are literally thousands of essays, articles and books on the subject. In fact, there is even a Foundation for the Study of Cycles[3], and efforts to create college curriculums with degree programs in cycles' analyses have been initiated.

Of interest in this book is the study of cycles related to gold prices. In a recent report called the ADEN GOLD STUDY[4], the authors Pamela Aden-Ayales and Mary Anne Aden-Harter show remarkable correlations of gold prices with such cycles as interest rates, value of the Eurodollar, inflation rate velocity index, and even indirect relationships to unemployment and crime cycles. As will be seen in other chapters, prices of gold can also be correlated to planetary cycles.

It is true that all these, and other, realities can affect, or may even cause, fluctuations in the price of gold. But simple observation of gold prices also reveals that cycles of a fairly regular nature exist, as if gold has a unique rhythm of its own.

BRESSERT CYCLES

As mentioned earlier, the traditionally accepted manner of cycles' measurement is trough to trough. Between the two troughs defining the beginning and end of a cycle is a crest (see Figure 3). Also noted earlier was the concept of translation, right versus left. Translation was defined as "right" if the crest appeared *past* the midway point between the troughs, characteristic of a bullish direction in prices. Left translation was defined when the crest appeared *before* the midway point between the troughs, typical of a bearish direction in prices.

Numerous studies have been reported on various durations of cycles present in gold prices. Among the most outstanding of these studies is that conducted by Walter Bressert.[5] In one of his reports, several important cycles evident in gold prices were outlined. These include:

* 5½-year Cycle
* 73-week Cycle
* 19-week Primary Cycle

3. Foundation for the Study of Cycles, 124 S. Highland Ave., Pittsburgh, PA 15206
4. Aden-Ayales, Pamela, and Aden-Harter, Mary Anne, ADEN GOLD STUDY, Adam Smith Publishing, 1981.
5. HAL Commodity Cycles, Vol. 7, No. 3, Jan. 22, 1981, HALCO, Dallas, TX.

* 6-week Cycle
* 21-day Trading Cycle

Review of gold prices since 1968 supports Bressert's findings. To facilitate understanding of geocosmic signatures related to gold price cycles, each of these and other cycles will be described and labeled.

The 5½-year trough cycle has been identified by both Bressert and the Aden sisters. Since gold has been available in the market place as a commodity for purchase without price controls only since 1968, there is very little historical data to reliably justify this as a significant cycle. In fact, the only two 5½-year trough cycles possible since then have been in late 1969, early 1970, and again August 25, 1976. Another may be forming now, in mid-1982. Thus far, these cycles seem to be expansions of 5½ years, perhaps to even as much as 6½ years.

The reasoning behind a 5½-year trough cycle in gold is the belief that it parallels the cycles of silver. Since data on silver prices is available over a period of several centuries, its 5½-year trough cycle can and has been historically documented by the Foundation for the Study of Cycles.[6] Also, silver's smaller cycles have been seen to coincide remarkably close to gold's since 1968, so there is reason to believe that their longer cycles will also synchronize with one another.

Within each 5½-year cycle are usually four 73-week troughs. Since 1973, these have occurred at the following intervals:

Late June, 1974
January 21, 1976
June 14, 1977
November 30, 1978
May 1, 1980
August 3, 1981

Bressert states that this cycle is comprised of two sub-cycles: a 32-week and 41-week cycle. Note that the 5½-year trough did not coincide with the 73-week cycle, but rather with the 32-week sub-cycle within it (see Figure 6).

One may have already noticed that these cycles are not exact in their timeliness. They occur during a time band *which averages out* to the amount of time given to their name. For example, we have already seen how the 5½-year cycle actually took 6½ years to unfold between early 1970 and August 25, 1976. And even as this book is being written, it has been nearly six years since the last 5½-year trough. This is because cycles

6. *Cycles Magazine*, October 1974, Vol. 25, No. 9 by Gertrude Shirk, pages 197-204, Foundation for the Study of Cycles, Pittsburgh, PA.

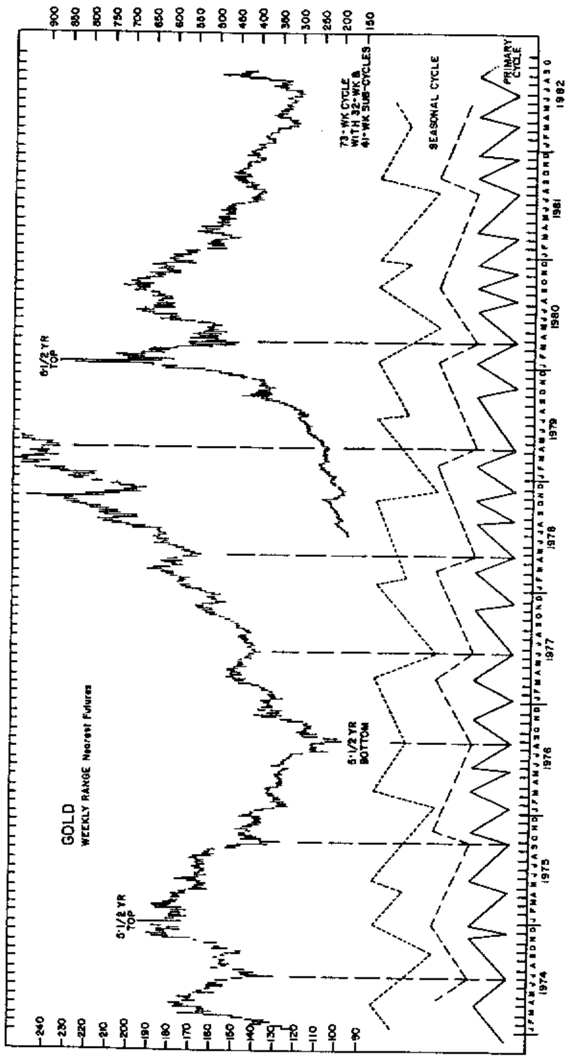


Figure 6: The 73-week Bressert Cycle with the component 32-week and 41-week cycles.

expand and contract, they seem to inhale and exhale at different rates, just like the human beings whose behavior actually regulates these market cycles. Sometimes we breathe very fast, even pant. Other times we breathe very slowly, as if pondering something for awhile.

The Bressert Cycles listed thus far are noteworthy and consistent. However, the greater portion of this book will focus more upon his next two cycles, the **Primary and Major Troughs.**

Within the 73-week cycle, there will usually appear four 19-week Primary Cycles. In this book, these will be abbreviated as PB, short for Primary Bottom. Since May of 1975, twenty primary troughs have occurred. Sixteen of these (80%) have happened at 16–23 week intervals. All of them have occurred between 12–23 weeks. This is the most significant of all cycles available in the study of gold prices. There is plenty of data to support its existence, and its consistency to date is remarkable.

The following is a list of **primary trough cycles** that have occurred since May, 1975. In parentheses are the number of weeks elapsed since the one previous to it.

June 2, 1975	
September 23, 1975	(16)
January 21, 1976	(17)
May 26, 1976	(18)
*August 25, 1976	(13)
January 10, 1977	(20)
June 14, 1977	(22)
November 21, 1977	(23)
April 25, 1978	(22)
August 23, 1978	(17)
November 30, 1978	(14)
April 16, 1979	(20)
August 6, 1979	(17)
November 1, 1979	(12)
March 18, 1980	(20)
August 11, 1980	(21)
December 12, 1980	(17)
March 4, 1981	(12)
August 3, 1981	(22)
November 23, 1981	(16)
March 15, 1982	(16)

*The end of the Bear market, beginning of Bull Market, 5½-Year Trough. Notice that it was a short cycle, only 13 weeks long. This may be a characteristic of a changing market: the last primary cycle is shorter in length than usual, i.e. less than 16 weeks.

The six-week Bressert Cycle will henceforth be referred to as a **Major Cycle**, abbreviated MB for Major Bottom. In most cases, there will be three major troughs within a 19-week primary cycle, in which the third major trough is actually the next primary trough. According to our research, this Bressert major cycle appears with approximately 80% regularity at 5–7 week intervals. Sometimes this cycle will expand to eight weeks, and very infrequently it may contract to only four weeks. When given a 5–8 week interval, significant troughs occurred in 85.5% of cases studies (1975–1982). If the major troughs with a price swing of less than 5% were omitted, then the frequency of occurrence declined to 67.3%.

There is another cycle Bressert has identified that frequently unfolds within the primary cycle, known as the **One-Half Primary Cycle**, or "*10-week slash.*" As the name implies, this cycle occurs close to the middle of the primary trough cycle, or about 8–12 weeks following a primary trough. The 8, 11, or 12 week trough may coincide with the first or second major trough cycle of the primary phase, and therefore may be interchanged in some instances. In the context of this study, such cycles were considered **½-primary troughs** if they occured at the given time interval and represented the only trough of significance between two primary troughs. This was usually the case in those instances where the primary trough cycle was 16 weeks or less. In other instances, an 8, 11 or 12 week trough was assigned the ½ primary trough status if its retractment level in a bull market represented a downturn of over 50% from the previous primary upswing, or if its price in a bear market was lower than the previous primary or major trough. Given these criteria, then, there were 14 ½-primary troughs between May 25, 1975 and May 28, 1982 (70% frequency). These were as follows (parentheses represents number of weeks after previous primary trough):

August 14, 1975	(10)
*December 8, 1975	(11)
*April 16, 1976	(12)
*July 20, 1976	(8)
August 16, 1977	(9)
February 9, 1978	(11)
June 28, 1979	(10)
October 8, 1979	(9)
May 22, 1980	(9)
*February 2, 1981	(8)
May 7, 1981	(9)
*September 28, 1981	(8)

*January 20, 1982	(8)
*May 10, 1982	(8)

*These may also be considered 5–8 week major troughs. In this study, they are considered ½ primary troughs because 1.) they are the only noteworthy trough between two primary troughs, and hence worthy of the ½ primary cycle label, 2.) their downswing in a bull market exceeded a 50% retractment of the previous upswing, and/or 3.) their price was lower than the previous primary or major trough in a bear market.

It is possible to have a couple of different patterns, then, within one primary trough cycle (see Figure 7). For instance, there may be only one good-sized trough within the cycle, as is often the case when the primary cycle is sixteen weeks or less. There may be two good-sized, fairly consistent types of cycles within the greater cycle. Or there may be two good-sized troughs in which the second is disproportionately steeper than the first. There may be three troughs within the cycle, and the second may be steeper than the first or third, or all three could be evenly graduated. When the second is steeper than the first or third, this qualifies as a Bressert "sheer" cycle, for it usually happens at the 9–11 week interval, and only 3–4 weeks after the first major trough. It appears to "sheer" the entire cycle pre-maturely. In most cases, though, there is one or two easily observable troughs, and sometimes three, between two primary troughs, and these will be considered as major troughs, or ½ primary troughs, according to the criteria stated above.

The last cycle to be analyzed in this series is the **21-day Bressert Trading Cycle.** TB will be the abbreviation used for this cycle throughout this book, as it stands for Trading Bottom. This is a much more elusive and perhaps not-so-important cycle, but tends to occur midway between the troughs of a major cycle. In many cases, it is a midway trough between two crests that happen within the major cycle (see Figure 8).

Throughout our analysis of gold cycles, the presence of trading cycles has varied a great deal. Sometimes there was only one trading trough between the major troughs. In other instances, two and even three trading troughs were noted, especially when the major cycle expanded to eight weeks. Sometimes the trading cycle was just a one-day drop in prices, while in other instances it may have taken a swing down lasting three and even four weeks. In many cycles observed, price decreases at the end of a trading trough were quite substantial from the immediately preceding crest, perhaps as much as 10% of the crest price. And in other cases, the rate of decline in the downswing was very little, less than 5% from the price of the crest.

In this book, these variations in price movements of trading cycles were accounted for in the statistical analysis. If a trading trough represented a

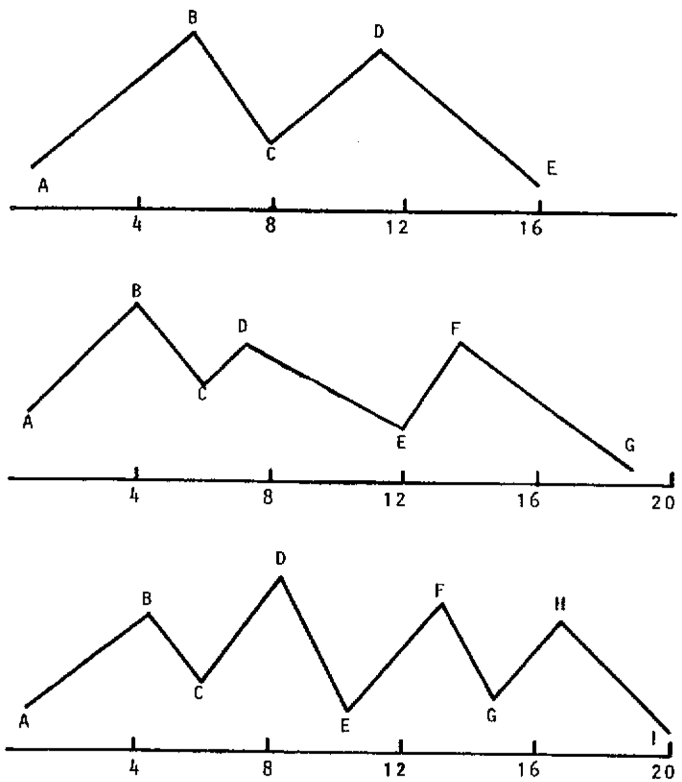


Figure 7: Three examples of different patterns within a primary trough cycle. Each slash mark on the horizontal date line represents four weeks. In the top graph, a ½ *primary trough* is the only sub-cycle within the 16-week primary trough cycle. It occurs at point C, in the eighth week. The middle graph depicts two *major troughs* (C and E), each at about six week intervals, within the 19-week primary trough cycle. The bottom graph illustrates a *major trough* (C) at the six-week interval, followed by a ½ *primary trough* (E, a *10-week slash*) at the ten-week mark, followed by another *major trough* at the 14-week interval (G), and finally the next primary trough 20 weeks following the beginning point of the whole cycle (I).

swing down of over 7% of the ending price, it was labeled TB**; over 5%, TB*; and under 5%, simply TB.

The same reasoning was applied to major cycles. If a major trough consisted of a swing down of less than 5% of the ending price, it was labeled -MB, suggesting its strength was not as powerful as most major troughs.

To attain a clearer understanding of these cycles, let us "walk through" an example, labeling each of the greater and lesser cycles present. Returning to Chart #12, the April 1979 contract for example, a primary trough cycle is realized on November 30, 1978. The next primary cycle occurs 20 weeks later, April 16, 1979, as seen on Chart #13. Within this primary cycle there are three major cycles, the third one also being the next primary trough. The first of these is realized on January 15, 1979, seven weeks after the primary bottom. Seven weeks later, March 5, the next major trough unfolds. And six weeks later, the primary trough completes the cycle.

Now notice the first major cycle within this primary cycle, from November 30, 1978 - January 15, 1979. Immediately after the primary trough, prices began rising until December 19, at which time they dropped, reaching a trading trough December 21. They rose again until the crest of January 2, then dropped the next nine trading days to complete the major cycle. The trading trough was three weeks after the primary trough, and followed right after what is known as a trading crest. A greater crest followed, the crest expected within the major cycle, at the five-week interval. This crest was past the midway point of the cycle, thus qualifies

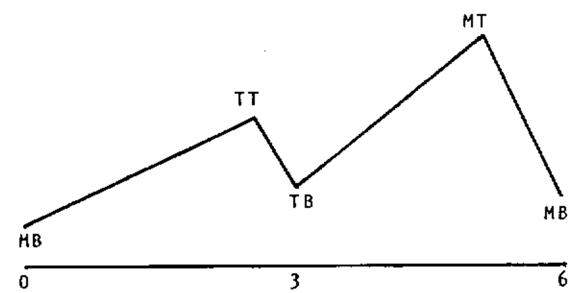


Figure 8: Example of a trading trough within a major trough cycle. TB represents trading bottom, which occurs in the third week of the six-week major cycle. It also happens between the two crests, represented as TT (trading top) and MT (major top).

as a solid example of right translation, indicative of a bull market, which indeed it was.

Now in the next major cycle within this greater primary trough, another substantial trading trough is realized two weeks after the major trough, on February 2. Prices immediately rose to a good-sized crest on February 7, then dropped sharply to another trading trough February 9th. Prices rose sharply again after that to another crest February 22, then dropped steeply to the major trough on March 5 to complete this cycle. Hence this cycle witnessed two trading troughs—one at the second week interval and another at a third. It also contained three crests. The greater crest was the last one February 22, again five weeks after the start of the major cycle, and well past the midpoint, again confirming the presence of the bullish right-translation.

The final major cycle in this primary cycle found prices rising through March 15, then retracting the next week to what might be considered a weak trading trough on March 20. However, a stronger crest emerged March 26, the third week, and was followed by another rather weak trading trough four days later. Prices rose only slightly to April 4th before plunging to the major and primary trough on April 16th. Again there were two instances that might be considered trading troughs within this major cycle, one at the second week, another in the third. What is important to note, though, is that the crest of greatest significance occurred in the third week this time, right in the middle of the cycle, indicating a shift from the previous two which were obviously of a right-translation nature. Another crest followed this one, but it wasn't as strong, so this continued the possibility that the market might actually be reversing from bull to bear. And in fact the shift from the right to the center of the crest did coincide with a trough (primary) that was lower than the former.

The later part of this example points out the importance of watching each indicator closely. These indicators are constantly entering into and out of the picture, continually shaping and molding the direction that prices could take. In this illustration, one indicator implied that the market might be changing courses. The move from a five-week right translation to a three-week crest gave rise to the possibility that 1) the expected primary trough could occur sooner than seven weeks from the previous major trough, or 2) at a price lower than the former major trough level. When the later trading crest failed to meet the prices of the earlier one, this lent more support to a forthcoming severe drop in prices. Both of these points happened, of course. The primary trough was realized at the six-week mark, representing a shift from right to central translation, but not enough to qualify as being bearish in itself. And, prices did drop to a further level than the previous major trough, suggesting bearish overtones. However, the market did not continue bearish, and the first indicator of this occurred April 19 as prices rallied over 60% of the preceding swing down.

Without elaborating on the issue, suffice it to say that there also exists yet a smaller trading cycle approximately every 11 days. In comparison to cycles just described, it is generally not powerful, not always in effect, but often enough to account for those instances of two and sometimes three significant trading troughs which are often seen to occur within the five-seven week major cycle.

CREST CYCLES

The existence of cycles based upon crest occurrences is generally not as reliable as troughs. This is most true when the time frame being considered is less than two years. Beyond that time orb, crest cycles are generally found in lengths of time comparable to trough cycles in almost all economic markets. For instance, several cycles' analysts have noted a 3.33, 4.1 and 9.2 year rhythmic cycle in stock market prices.[7] In other words, consistent trough *and* crest cycles of these durations tend to be realized, given different starting points of course. For instance, in the stock market, the Dow Jones Industrial Averages achieved 4.1 year crests in mid-1957, late 1961, early 1966, late 1968, late 1972, late 1976, and early 1981. 4.1-year troughs fell in late 1957, mid-1962, late 1966, mid-1970, late 1974, early 1978, and probably mid-late 1982.[8]

A 5½-year crest cycle is suspected to be present in gold prices too, just as a trough of this duration is suspected. Again, though, not enough evidence is present since price restrictions on gold purchase have been lifted only since 1968, so the basis for this is upon gold's similarity to silver price cycles. To date, 5½-year crests in gold were achieved in early 1969, January 1975, and January 21, 1980.

Crests cycles of a lesser duration, though, are quite elusive. According to straight cycles' theories, a good-sized crest should occur within every primary trough cycle (see Figure 9).

A quick glance through the charts in the back of this book reveals this to be true. However, upon closer analysis, one will find very little consistency in the duration between such crests. Sometimes they happen in the earlier part of a primary cycle, sometimes later, and sometimes they are very hard to spot at all. If the idea that primary or powerful crests need to unfold *between* troughs of a primary cycle is excluded, and might indeed have a cycle of their own, some interesting findings emerge.

7. *Catalogue of Cycles: Part I—Economics* by Louise L. Wilson, Foundation For The Study of Cycles, Pittsburgh, PA 1964
8. *Moody's Handbook Of Common Stocks*, Moody's Investor Service, New York, 1982, pg. 26a.

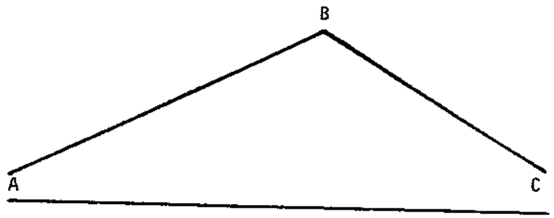


Figure 9: Example of a good-sized crest within a primary trough cycle. The beginning and end of trough cycle are points A-C, while B is crest within cycle.

Since May 1975, there is a strong indication to support a 23-week primary crest cycle (PT for Primary Top). This cycle is not as consistent as the 19-week primary trough one, and in fact does not always correlate with what might be judged as a primary crest. In some instances there is indeed a good-sized crest at this interval, but a much stronger one perhaps a few weeks before or after, but out of the range of expectation. When this happens, or when a stronger crest emerges outside the expected 18–26 week interval, it has been seen to be the start of yet another series of crest cycles with the same duration period: 18–26 weeks. Thus in our study period, May 30, 1975 - May 28, 1982, there is a period in which there were a pair of crest cycles in effect at the same time with the same characteristic 23-week duration. The dates below list the primary crest cycles in effect during this research project. Note that between August 5, 1977 through March 27, 1981 a dual cycle existed. The number in parentheses indicates the number of weeks from the last primary crest of its series.

July 29, 1975	(22)		
December 19, 1975	(20)		
June 1, 1976	(24)		
November 15, 1976	(24)		
March 23, 1977	(18)		
*August 4, 1977	(19)	*August 4, 1977	(19)
November 9, 1977	(14)	*January 25, 1978	(25)
March 8, 1978	(17)	*June 20, 1978	(21)
August 16, 1978	(23)	November 2, 1978	(19)
February 22, 1979	(27)	*March 26, 1979	(21)
July 24, 1979	(22)	October 2, 1979	(28)
January 21, 1980	(26)	*March 25, 1980	(25)
July 8, 1980	(24)	September 23, 1980	(26)
*November 20, 1980	(19)	*March 26, 1981	(26)
March 26, 1981	(18)		
September 21, 1981	(26)		
April 16, 1982	(25)		

*Refers to a ½ Primary Crest in the author's judgment.

In the first series, there are 17 crest cycles lasting an average of 21.65 weeks. In the second set there are nine crest cycles with an average duration of 24.1 weeks. Fourteen of the seventeen crests in the first series occurred between 18–26 week intervals (82.4%). Eight of the nine crests in the second set occurred between 19–26 week intervals (88.9%). Combining the two series together, 84.6% of these powerful crests were achieved at 18–26 week intervals. All of them unfolded between 14–28 weeks apart from one another, at an average interval of 22.9 weeks.

It is possible that all of the crests in the second series could be considered ½ primary crests, and all in the first series full primary tops. However, to do so would mean that the powerful crests of November 2, 1978, October 2, 1979, and September 23, 1980 would be under-rated in comparison to obviously weaker crests nearby, thereby affecting an important rating system outlined later in this work, a rating system designed to most accurately assess the strength of cycles associated with other variables soon to be discussed. This was not necessary to do in the case of primary troughs. True, there were some very powerful ½ primary troughs uncovered. But in no cases was it essential to value them as more powerful than the primary troughs. Our weighted value system, then, should be as consistent with the crest cycles.

There are no consistent *major* crests appearing in this seven-year time period (1975–1982). If a significant crest emerged 6–14 weeks out from a primary crest or ½ primary crest, and represented a swing of greater than 5% of the crest's price, it was judged to be a major crest (MT, for Major Top). In some cases there would be two major crests within a primary crest cycle. In this case, the second major crest might be 6–14 weeks after the first one. In no instances do more than two major crests appear with a primary crest cycle in our analysis, unless the third was also considered a primary crest.

There are several instances of trading crests. These are present in the normal unfoldment of the major trough cycle. Usually there are at least two trading crests (TT for Trading Top) in a six-week trough cycle, and frequently more. In those instances where the trading crest consisted of an upward swing of greater than 7% of the price at the start of the crest, it is indicated as TT**; over 5%, TT*, and under 5%, TT. (See Figure 8 for example).

There is one more point to keep in mind when studying cycles. Each cycle is a compendium of all lesser cycles. For instance, a primary trough is also a ½ primary trough, major trough, and trading trough, all in one. Every major trough is also a trading trough. This is essential to understand, particularly in later sections of this book in which trendlines will be discussed. For purposes of clarity in measurement, cycles will usually be labeled according to their longest duration, not their shorter time spans. Hence a 19-week cycle will be referred to as a primary cycle, even though technically it is also a major and trading cycle.

OTHER CYCLICAL TERMINOLOGY

Throughout this book the term "significant cycle" will pertain to any cycle so far discussed. Even a minor trading cycle consisting of a less than 5% swing, if it occurs "on time," will be considered significant.

The term "prominent" will refer to a cycle whose swing in prices represents a change of greater than 5% of the price at the beginning or ending trough. The word "minor" will refer to those whose swings are less than this. Thus, a prominent trading crest means that prices rose over 5% in the swing up to the end of this trading crest. A minor trading trough means the same thing in reverse, except that the price variation in the swing down was less than 5%. Though it might be confusing, a non-prominent major trough refers to a six-week trough in which prices failed to drop more than 5% in their swing down. This will be abbreviated with a minus symbol in front of initials, i.e. -MB.

In many cases the student will notice a very powerful trading cycle unfolding very close in time to a primary or major cycle, and achieving a price very close to that of the primary cycle. These are known as *double tops* or *double bottoms* to the dominant crest or trough, respectively. In our analysis, these trading cycles will be given greater value for being a *double top or bottom* if their prices are within one percent of the primary cycle price. They will be identified as DB (Double Bottom) or DT (Double Top). The values for each of these cycles and other price movements will be explained further in Chapter Six.

PART TWO

THE COSMOS

CHAPTER FOUR

BASIC GEOCOSMIC PRINCIPLES

The last two chapters focused upon technical and cyclical terminology. Without a grounding in those two studies, the correlation between planetary, geocosmic cycles to the price of gold is at best piecemeal. Likewise, the practice of technical and cyclical analysis without knowledge of geocosmic cycles could result in a failure to identify more closely actual crest and trough time objectives in the market. True, it is of great value to know that 80% of the time the price of gold will define a significant bottom every five to eight weeks, and that in most of those cases a crest will either *follow* in one to two weeks (in a bear market) or *precede* it by one to two weeks (in a bull market). But five to eight weeks covers a lot of trading days, 20 to be exact, and much can happen in that time.

An understanding of geocosmic principles can be of great aid to the investor who wishes to define more accurately the time element of a significant move in the price of gold. The purpose of this chapter, then, is to introduce the cycles' analyst to basic principles of geocosmic study, principles that are not difficult to grasp, but necessary to know in order to experience the greatest level of appreciation for synchronicity between two disciplines. Before beginning an explanation of these principles, let us take a moment to overcome what might be a barrier in the minds of many investors who are unfamiliar with geocosmic study. The term geocosmic refers to celestial movements of the nine planets as seen from Earth. Many might refer to this as the study of astrology, but since that word has come to derive a connotation far from its actual meaning, it has been avoided thus far. Today's connotation of astrology implies the practice, or knowledge, of *sun signs*. It is considered a pseudo-science by academia, the work of the devil by fundamentalist Christians and vagrancy by laws in many states. Those who practice astrology are called astrologers, but to the general public, they are considered fortune-tellers whose role is to entertain, and thus not to be taken too seriously. This view of astrology and astrologers did not arise overnight; it has been fostered over several centuries, to the point that it is now assumed to be true.

It is no wonder, then, that the reader who is unfamiliar with planetary cycles research might be a bit uncomfortable. Academia, science, religion, politics and the general realm of society have defined such studies as either taboo, false, illegal or absurd. No one in their "right mind" believes there is any relationship between planets, cycles of planets and such things as human (or organic) experience. And now, here is a book to suggest that just such a relationship exists between planetary cycles and the price of gold!

Of course everything mentioned in the last paragraph is accurate. However, it is not true, to borrow a phrase from a recent movie advertisement. The situation, being what it is, accounts for the fact that *no one* (or very few persons) has taken the time to seriously research a possible correlation between the two studies.

Planets do move about the Sun in cycles known as orbits. Planets do make precise mathematical relationships with one another at easily measured intervals. And observable effects can be witnessed during these mathematical relationships of planets, which are known as *aspects*. In fact, many studies statistically demonstrating relationships between planetary cycles and human (as well as plant and nature) experiences have been conducted.[9] For further elaboration, the reader is encouraged to go into any bookstore carrying astrological publications and ask to see the works of Michele and Francoise Gaughlin.[10]

The point is: no, or very little, research has been conducted, or published on the relationship of market prices to planetary cycles because the idea has not had much appeal to "intelligent" people. "Intelligent" people tend to stay away from areas they believe are taboo, false, illegal or absurd.

However, such beliefs are not founded on fact and certainly not upon actual experience. To demonstrate, simply ask one who berates astrology or planetary effects, what he or she really knows about the subject. Ask if that critic has ever studied, or examined this subject to *any* degree. Invariably, the answer will be no. So where does the critic get the basis for such belief? Not on fact and not on experience. It is simply something that

9. Phenomena Magazine, 1977–78, Toronto A, CANADA
10. *Birth and Planetary Data*, Series A (Vol. 1-6), Series B (Vol. 1-6), Study of Relationships Between Cosmic and Psychophysiological Phenomena, 1972, Paris, France

has become part of the collective belief system, not questioned, not challenged, just accepted.

At this point the author would like to offer a statement: the study of planetary cycles and their corresponding relationship to human experience (which include economic and monetary markets) is valid, and will yield impressive results. All that is required to see the truth of this statement is simple observation. Perhaps openmindedness and a little courage to go against the collective beliefs of society would help too. The very bottom line should be: does it work? That it might go against one's religion (it doesn't, but certain interpretations of scriptures—and not the original interpretation—might suggest otherwise), academic upbringing, cultural beliefs and the wisdom of one's peers should all be secondary to the fact that it works. As a side note, it is interesting to observe that none of these factors stopped W. D. Gann from applying astrological principles to the market. He is well known for making a vast fortune in trading commodities in the 1950's, using astrology for timing, or so it is said.

Basic Geocosmic Principles

The first step in applying geocosmic study to market analysis is to know the language. As the name implies, planetary cycles research is a study of the planets and their cycles. Since planets (which for convenience will include the Sun and Moon) have symbols, and since these symbols become easier to read than the words, it is important for the reader to commit to memory these glyphs. It is also useful for the reader to commit to memory the order of the planets as given here, for most of the ephemerides (tables of planets' position) give listings in this order.

☉ - SUN
☽ - MOON
☿ - MERCURY
♀ - VENUS
♂ - MARS
♃ - JUPITER
♄ - SATURN
♅ - URANUS
♆ - NEPTUNE
♇ - PLUTO

Planets are said to "be in signs." Actually, they aren't really, but it is a convenient way to measure or locate planets. The orbit of planets around the Sun, and even the Moon about Earth, is seen against the backdrop of millions of stars. Certain clusters of stars make up constellations, and a band of these constellations known as the *zodiac* serves as a specific background for the planets orbiting around our Sun. Thus, if one looked through a telescope and saw Neptune in the beginning of 1982, one would also observe that beyond Neptune were a cluster of stars which comprise the constellation Sagittarius. Therefore, it could be said that "Neptune is in Sagittarius," meaning that Neptune is located in the foreground of the constellation Sagittarius.

Each constellation of the zodiac contains 30 degrees. The twelve zodiac signs together comprise 360 degrees. All the planets orbit around the Sun, and the Moon orbits around the Earth in a 360 degree circle (actually it is more of an ellipse). During that orbit, any planet, or Moon, "goes through" all twelve signs, or zodiacal constellations. Signs and constellations of the zodiac are interchangeable. A planet is thus located as being in a specific degree, 0 through 30, of a specific sign. For instance, when Mars enters Capricorn, it is said to be in 0 degrees of Capricorn. And, just before it leaves Capricorn for Aquarius, it is said to be in 29 degrees of Capricorn. The terms "first degree" or "thirtieth degree" respectively "of Capricorn" would also be correct.

It is now important for the reader to commit to memory the twelve signs of the zodiac and their order. Planets proceed in an orderly fashion through the zodiac beginning with one sign, then going to the next, and so on, except in the case of retrogrades, which will be discussed shortly.

♈ - **ARIES**
♉ - **TAURUS**
♊ - **GEMINI**
♋ - **CANCER**
♌ - **LEO**
♍ - **VIRGO**
♎ - **LIBRA**
♏ - **SCORPIO**
♐ - **SAGITTARIUS**
♑ - **CAPRICORN**
♒ - **AQUARIUS**
♓ - **PISCES**

There are two perspectives to viewing the planets' positions (actually more if tropical versus sidereal zodiacs were to be discussed). One is known as **heliocentric**, and gauges planetary positions from the Sun. The other is **geocentric**, and measures the position of planets as seen from Earth. The two perspectives do not yield the same planetary positioning, though they are very close in the case of the outermost planets—Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. The planets closer to the Sun will appear to be in greatly different positions when viewed from the Sun instead of Earth. Also, viewed from Earth, the Sun, not the Earth, appears to move through the zodiac.

Throughout this book the **geocentric** approach will be used. From an experiential point of view, the self, and hence Earth, is the center around which all else unfolds. The markets, the business, the economics are all occurring on Earth, and hence *its* relationship to celestial bodies and not the Sun's, should be the basis of measurement.

Tables identifying geocentric positions of planets (and the Sun and Moon, which from this point on will be assumed in the same context as planets) at any given time are known as **ephemerides**. Every reader should have an ephemeris; it is the basic tool in geocosmic study. Ephemerides are usually issued in single year, 5-year, 10-year, 50-year or 100-year segments. For purposes of this book, the reader should acquire ephemerides covering the years 1975–1982, since this is the time period applying to charts included herein. To be safe, though, the one most recommended is THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR THE TWENTIETH CENTURY: 1900 to 2000 at Midnight, by Neil F. Michelsen (see bibliography). THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR 1971–1980, and THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR 1981–1990 are also recommended because they have more complete **aspectarians** (tables measuring aspects between planets and their precise time). Tables from both of these books will be used throughout this text. For one who is unfamiliar with the term **aspects**, and not too energetic about mathematical calculations (simple ones), the latter two ephemerides will simplify the work since they contain detailed **aspectarians**. These and other ephemerides may be obtained through the publisher of this book or any bookstore carrying astrological books.

A few examples at this point will help the novice gain familiarity with the ephemeris. These examples will use THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR THE TWENTIETH CENTURY, Midnight, as its source. First, notice that the ephemeris is in chronological order. Every page proceeds to the next month, and every few pages proceed to the next year. The dates of the month are in the far left column and an initial indicating what day of the week appears next to the date itself (See Figure 10). The next column is marked "SID.TIME." For our purposes, this column is unimportant. The next column contains the symbol for the Sun (☉) and underneath it are symbols for degrees, minutes and seconds of arc in space (° ′ ″ respectively). Underneath each of these are numbers, correlating to the degrees, minutes and seconds of the Sun at midnight, Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). Also, between the degree and minute numbers will be a glyph representing a sign of the zodiac.

As one follows across the date to the next column, there is the symbol for the Moon, and below it are the same symbols for degrees, minutes and seconds, as well as the glyph of a zodiac sign.

The next column has a symbol for the TRUE NODE—north node of the Moon. In the course of this work, we will not be using this column.

Next columns contain, respectively, glyphs for Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto—the same order given a few pages before.

Now let us look at a specific example—see Figure 10. The months chosen are January and February, 1982. Notice first that January 1, 1982 is a Friday. At midnight on that date, GMT, the Sun is 10 degrees, 14 minutes and 30 seconds of Capricorn. We will not be concerned with seconds and, for the most part, it will be sufficient to round minutes off to the nearest degree (there are 60 minutes in a degree). Thus, it is more convenient to say that on January 1, 1982, the Sun is 10 degrees of Capricorn.

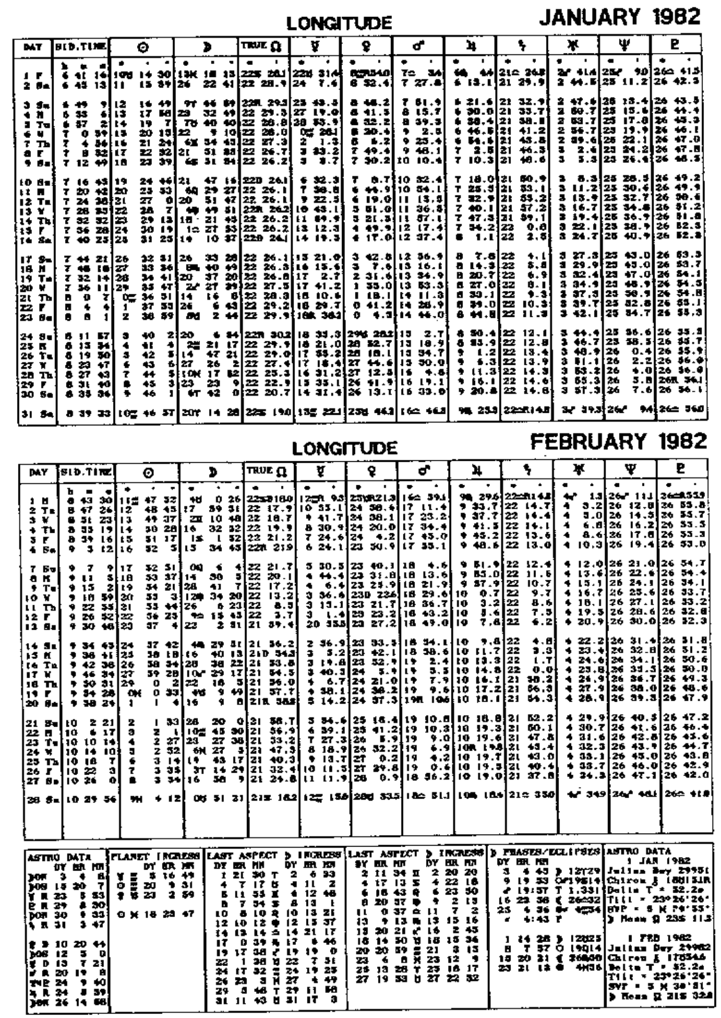
In the same manner, then, the Moon is 13 degrees of Pisces, Mercury is 23 degrees of Capricorn (after rounding off to the next degree since there were over 30 minutes), Venus is 9 degrees of Aquarius, Mars is 7 degrees of Libra, Jupiter is 6 degrees of Scorpio, Saturn is 21 degrees of Libra, Uranus is 3 degrees of Sagittarius, Neptune is 25 degrees of Sagittarius and Pluto is 27 degrees of Libra.

Before going any further, the reader should be certain that all this is observed and understood. It is not difficult, but so very important. Going too fast at this point could cause great frustration later on. To apply geocosmic principles to the market, one must first know how to read an ephemeris.

Retrograde and Direct

Going back to the example, notice that under the symbol for Venus on January 1, the notation is 8≈R54.0. What is R? R, or R_x is the abbreviation for **retrograde**. All planets, but not the Sun and Moon, have periods of time when their motion is *retrograde* as seen from Earth. *This means they appear to be going backwards through the zodiac.* In fact, if the reader will look at the position of Venus on the following days, it will be observed that Venus went backwards, and not forward like the other planets. Every day, the degree number decreased, until January 24th, when Venus re-entered the sign preceding Aquarius, Capricorn.

The idea of retrogradation is not hard to explain. Imagine yourself in a car going 50 mph. Ahead of you is another car, going slower. As you


LONGITUDE JANUARY 1982

LONGITUDE FEBRUARY 1982

Figure 10.

approach and pass the other car, it *appears* to be going backwards—it gets farther and farther behind you. Yet, the car isn't going backwards at all, it's going forward but at a different rate of speed than you. Planets do the same thing. They all move in orbit around the Sun but at different rates. When one of them reaches a certain point in its orbit in relationship to the Earth, it will appear to us that this planet is beginning to move backwards, or retrograde.

Retrograde periods are very important in geocosmic study. The principles represented by that planet seem to reverse; they retreat from their present direction. In the market world, investors tend also to retreat, reverse, from their present course at the time of a retrograde planetary motion.

Returning to the ephemeris, look under the Mercury column for January 6, 1982. Notice that Mercury changed signs on that day, moving from Capricorn into Aquarius.

Now, look under Mercury on January 23. Observe the R, or retrograde symbol again. On that day, Mercury turned retrograde. It is also interesting to note that during that week, gold prices hit a new low and defined $360.00 (spot) as the support level. For the next trading cycle, which began that week, the price of gold rallied.

On January 29th, Pluto went retrograde (see ephemeris). Look under the Pluto column and notice the accompanying R for that date. Note from the gold price charts that January 29 was the peak of the rally as prices began descending afterwards.

Now look at the February dates. On February 10th, Venus went direct. Under the Venus column for that day the letter D appears, which means direct. This signalled the end of the Venus retrograde period as once more it resumed its normal, or **direct**, motion forward through the zodiac. Notice that every day afterwards, Venus' position increased in degrees. Three days later, February 13, Mercury also went direct (see the D under Mercury for that date).

Direct periods, like retrograde ones, suggest a change in direction, or the resumption of the direction present before the retrograde. Now, notice on the charts for that period that although the price of gold peaked with a rally on January 29, a rally that began around the time Mercury went retrograde, January 23, the rally did not really end until the week immediately following the Saturday, February 12, the Mercury direct date. *On the very next trading day, the bear market resumed.* Furthermore, Mars and Jupiter both went retrograde February 20th and 24th, respectively, the last correlating to the date that the $360.00 (spot price) support level was penetrated, thus bringing on a new breakout, and much lower prices.

Aspects

As important as retrogrades and directs are to the study of gold prices, there is another geocosmic phenomenon, or principle, just as important. This is the concept of aspects.

As planets orbit in their 360 degree circle around the Sun, they come into different mathematical relationships with one another, as seen from Earth. For instance, there are times when two planets come very close to one another, as they appear to be in the same part of the heavens. This is known as a **conjunction** aspect. At other times, these same two planets may appear to be in opposite sections of the sky. When one is rising in the east, the other is setting in the west. This phenomenon is known as an **opposition** aspect.

Aspects are certain mathematical relationships, measured in degrees, that sometimes occur between two planets. There are many types of aspects which are divided into two groups: major and minor. In the study of gold prices related to planetary cycles, the concern will be with all the major aspects, and to a lesser degree, some of the minor ones. Most will be in multiples of 45 or 60 degrees.

Before defining the different types of aspects, let us first learn how to measure distances between planets. Once the distance is known, the aspect can be determined.

There are 360 degrees in the circle, or orbit, which planets make around the Sun. This orbit is divided into 12 sections, known as the zodiac, each containing 30 degrees. The zodiac retains a specific order, so this distance from a specific point in any one sign is a constant from a specific point in any other sign. For example, 5 degrees Aries (the first sign) will always be 60 degrees apart from 5 degrees Gemini (the third sign). It will also always be 60 degrees away from 5 degrees Aquarius (the eleventh sign), because Aries is two signs (30 degrees each) from Aquarius. The reader should visualize the zodiac as a circle, wherein the first sign, Aries, can also be viewed as the thirteenth sign, twenty-fifth sign, or whatever number wherein 12 can also be added for subtraction purposes.

The distance between any two parts of the zodiac is more easily measured when the zodiac is converted into total degrees, as in Figure 11.

0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°	360°
♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓	♈

Figure 11.

For subtraction purposes, 360 degrees can be added at any time. Thus, 0°♈ is both 0° and 360°, 0°♉ is both 30° as well as 390°, 0° ♊ is 60° and also 420°.

Let us assume that the ephemeris lists the ☉ on January 1, 1982, as 10° ♑. What is the total number of degrees, starting from 0°♈ to 10°♑? Looking at the chart in Figure 11, one can see that 0°♑ corresponds to 270°. 10°♑ would thus be an additional 10°, or 280°.

Now on the same day, notice that ♂ is 7°♎. In straight degrees, what does this correspond to? 0°♎ =180°, plus 7° =187°. Simply take the degrees corresponding to the sign the planet is in, add the degrees the planet is in to this sign degree, and the result is the total number of degrees into the zodiac, starting from ♈, where the planet is located.

The next step is to determine how many degrees separate two planets from one another. This becomes the factor which decides whether or not the two planets are in **aspect** to one another. In the example above, we now wish to know the distance between ☉ and ♂. The answer is the difference between 10°♑ and 7°♎, or, 280°–187° = 93°.

Again, the reader should thoroughly understand this technique of measuring distance between two planets before continuing onwards. It is not difficult to grasp, it is simple mathematics, but very important to the task at hand.

Let's try another example. Determine the distance between the ☉ and ☽ on January 5, 1982. On that day, at midnight, GMT, the ☉ is 14°♑, and the ☽ is 8°♉. In straight mathematics, it would be:

$$\begin{array}{rl} \odot = 14°♑ = & 284° \\ -\ ☽ = 8°♉ = & \underline{\ 38°} \\ \text{Distance} = & 246° \end{array}$$

This example brings up a very simple and necessary consideration: **The shortest counter-clockwise distance between planets is always used for measurement.** Since the circle contains only 360°, the shortest distance will always be less than 180°. Thus, if our answer is over 180°, we must subtract it from 360° to arrive at the shortest arc between two planets in a circle. In the example above, then, 360°–246° = 114°. So, even though the ☉ and ☽ are 246° apart—☽ to ☉ in a counter-clockwise direction—they are also 114° apart—☉ to ☽ in a shorter arc, counter-clockwise direction.

In summary, then, the rules for calculating the distance between planets are:

1. **Convert planet's zodiacal position to total degrees (as shown in Fig. 11).**
2. **Subtract the greater from the lesser.**
3. **If the result is over 180°, subtract it from 360°.**

Now the reader is prepared to identify aspects. As mentioned, aspects are specific mathematical relationships that sometimes occur between planets to one another. The **major aspects** and their glyphs, which appear below, should be committed to memory.

MAJOR ASPECTS

NAME	SYMBOL	DISTANCE APART
CONJUNCTION	☌	0°
SQUARE	□	90°
TRINE	△	120°
OPPOSITION	☍	180°
MINOR ASPECTS		
SEMI-SQUARE	∠	45°
SEXTILE	✱	60°
SESQUIQUADRATE	⚼	135°
QUINCUNX	⚻	150°

The minor aspects have also been given and will be referred to only occasionally. It is not necessary to memorize them for this study. The major aspects, though, will be given a great deal of attention.

The **conjunction** is the most powerful aspect in the study of planetary cycles. It occurs when two planets are in the same part of the sky (same longitude but not necessarily same latitude), thus the distance between any two planets in conjunction is zero degrees. An orb (variation) of one degree may be allowed in all aspects. Conjunctions will occur in the same sign or very end and very beginning of two consecutive signs.

To illustrate the **conjunction**, notice the placements of the Sun and Venus on January 21, 1982. During that day, they both passed 1°♒, same degree, same sign. A quick glance of the gold charts indicates that date as the beginning point of a rally, which we already attributed to ☿R_x at the same time (Mercury retrograde is more important).

The **square** is another powerful aspect and is generally considered difficult and tension-forming. The conjunction is neither positive nor negative in itself, just powerful. However, when Saturn is involved it is viewed as more difficult. Two planets that are 90 degrees apart are in a square aspect. **They will be three signs from each other and in the same degree.**

As an example of a **square**, notice the positions of the Sun and Saturn on January 12, 1982. During that day they formed a **square** to one another at 22°♑ to 22°♎. ♑ and ♎ are three signs apart. Observation of the gold charts will reveal that it was only the day before, January 11, that the price of gold broke the $390.00 support level.

There are two classifications of squares: waxing and waning. A **waxing square** is one in which the fastest moving planet (when it is in a direct motion) is moving farther away from the slower moving planet. In other words, every day following the exact square, the planets become farther and farther apart—they are moving away from the conjunction and toward the opposition (another aspect to be described shortly). The January 12, 1982 relationship between the Sun and Saturn is a waxing square because every following day the distance between the two planets becomes greater.

A **waning square** is one in which the fastest moving planet is drawing closer to the slower moving one (again, assuming the faster planet is in a direct motion). Every day following the square, the distance between the two planets becomes less and less. An example of a waning square appears between the Sun and Moon on January 17, 1982. The Moon is 27°♎, and the Sun is 27°♑ (actually 26½° each). They are in a square aspect. However, the next day, the Moon, which is faster moving, has advanced to 9°♏, and the Sun to 28°♑. The distance between the two has now lessened from 90° to 79°. This is therefore a waning square, for every day thereafter they will come closer and closer to 0°. Once they become 0°, they will form a conjunction and then they will begin to separate, or wax, every day thereafter. After they form an opposition (180°), they will begin to wane (come closer to one another) every day thereafter. Therefore, planets moving from a conjunction to an opposition constitute a waxing period; the duration of time from an opposition to a conjunction correlates to a waning period.

A **trine** is considered the softest of the major aspects. Its nature is to blend and harmonize, thus representing a time of ease and flowing. Don't be confused by these terms. Gold prices don't always rise during times of ease, nor do they decline under times of tension. Frequently, the opposite is true. What is important to understand is that *changes take place during aspects*, changes that usually affect the price of gold. When two planets form a trine to one another, they are 120° or four signs apart.

On January 4, 1982, Venus and Mars trined one another (♀R_x at 8°♒ and ♂ at 8°♎). Notice they were in the same degree and four signs apart. Gold prices on the next day achieved a trading top—the crest of the cycle which began the week of January 1, 1982.

As with the square, there are also **waxing and waning trines.** Again, a waxing trine is one in which the faster moving planet is headed in the direction of an opposition to the slower moving one. In its direct motion, it will increase its distance daily from the slower moving body. An example of a waxing trine occurs January 13, 1982 between Mercury (the faster planet) and Mars (the slower). On that day, Mercury moves very close to 12°♒, and Mars close to 12°♎, the difference being, of course, 120°, or a trine. The next day the difference between the two increases to 121°—they are waxing (separating) farther and farther apart.

Now notice something. On January 28, 1982, Mercury is retrograde at 16°♒ and Mars is direct at 16°♎. Again, they form a trine to one another. However, the next day the distance between the two is *less* than 120°, because Mercury is retrograde—going backwards through the zodiac. This is still referred to as a **waxing trine** because Mercury is still basically headed in the direction of its opposition, not conjunction, to Mars. Remember, if the faster moving planet *in its direct* motion is moving away from the conjunction and toward the opposition to the slower moving planet, it is a waxing aspect.

Likewise, a waning trine is one in which the faster moving planet, in its direct motion, is moving toward a conjunction to the slower moving planet. The distance between the two planets is usually decreasing daily. An example of a waning trine appears between the Sun and Moon on February 13, 1982. The Sun is 24°♒ and the Moon is 22°♎. During that day, the Moon will cross 24°♎, thus forming a trine to the Sun. The Moon will continue through Libra and into Scorpio while the Sun is still in Aquarius, thus narrowing the distance between the two lights.

It is necessary to mention the distinction between waxing and waning aspects because in the research findings, there oftentimes appears to be a difference in relationship to gold prices based upon this factor.

Oppositions are also very powerful and are present when two planets are 180° apart or six signs away from one another. The general nature of an opposition is conflict from outside.

An example of an opposition is the full moon of January 9, 1982. Full moons are always opposition aspects between the Sun and the Moon. When one is rising, the other is setting. On that date, the ☉ was in 19°♑ and the ☽ passed 19°♋. ♋ and ♑ are six signs apart. That happened on a Saturday, and on Monday, the next trading day, the breakout of the $390.00 support level ensued. Remember, this was also the time that the Sun and, hence, the Moon, squared Saturn. It was also a lunar eclipse, or eclipse of the Moon, which is the most powerful of all the full moons.

The reader should at this time become familiar with aspects—what they are and how to determine when they are in effect. Spending a few moments analyzing the ephemeris, looking up periods of conjunctions, squares, trines and oppositions between planets will help solidify this most important concept in geocosmic study.

Now that the technique of aspect-finding has been covered, the reader may be disappointed to hear that there is an easier way. One can simply look under the section of ASPECTARIAN, which is found on the bottom of the page, or in the back section of most ephemerides. Aspectarians give the precise time of the precise day when any two planets form an aspect to one another. Remember, though, the time is Greenwich Mean Time, which is five hours *later* then Eastern Standard Time and eight hours *later* than Pacific Standard Time. So why go through all the steps of calculating aspects? For two reasons: first, the exercise helps the reader become even better acquainted with planetary movements and the use of an ephemeris, and secondly, once the student really grasps the calculations, it is just as simple to tell from a glance at an ephemeris whether or not an aspect is in effect. Looking at an ephemeris becomes a task as simple as reading a newspaper, looking at a watch or reading a thermometer. And there may be occasions when the student does not have the benefit of an aspectarian at hand, but only an ephemeris.

Now, let us become acquainted with the **aspectarian**. For purposes of illustration, look up March, 1981, in THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS 1981-1990 (see Figure 12). On the bottom of the page is the section marked "ASPECTARIAN." Next to every date for the month is a listing of astronomical phenomenon (including aspects), in order of their occurrence. The time (GMT) is given next to the phenomenon (remember to subtract five hours from this time if you wish to convert to EST). As you glance down the columns, you will readily notice that most of the aspects given involve the Moon. You will also notice many symbols and aspects which were not listed; these are minor and can be ignored for now. The reason the Moon is listed so frequently is that its rate of motion around the Earth is much faster than any planet's around the Sun. The Moon has a daily motion of approximately 12-15 degrees. Mercury, the "fastest" planet, on the other hand, has a motion that seldom exceeds two degrees per day. Thus, the Moon will be involved in many more aspects to planets than the planets will to one another.

The aspects involving the Moon are relatively unimportant in the study of planetary cycles' correlations to gold prices. There are some exceptions, such as lunar and solar eclipses and certain other new and full moons (aspects between Sun and Moon) which will be discussed later.

Looking at the aspectarian for March, 1981, notice the first aspect is ☉∠☽ (Sun semi-square Moon), 5am13. That occurred on Sunday, March 1. Converted to Eastern Standard Time, the aspect would have occurred at 12:13 AM, for EST is five hours earlier than GMT.

Now proceed down to Wednesday, March 4. Note the fifth entry, ♃ ☌ ♄, 7am14. At 2:14 AM, March 4th, EST, Jupiter conjuncted Saturn, a very major aspect between two very major planets. On gold chart #19, one can observe that gold prices realized a primary trough that day, and began a major trend reversal upwards.

From that same gold chart, notice that the rally ended March 26. Now looking at the aspectarian for one day either side of March 26, one will see that several aspects between planets unfolded then, including the following:

March 25	March 26	March 27
♂ ☍ ♄ 1PM42	☉ ☍ ♃ 5AM54	☉ ☍ ♄ 4AM53

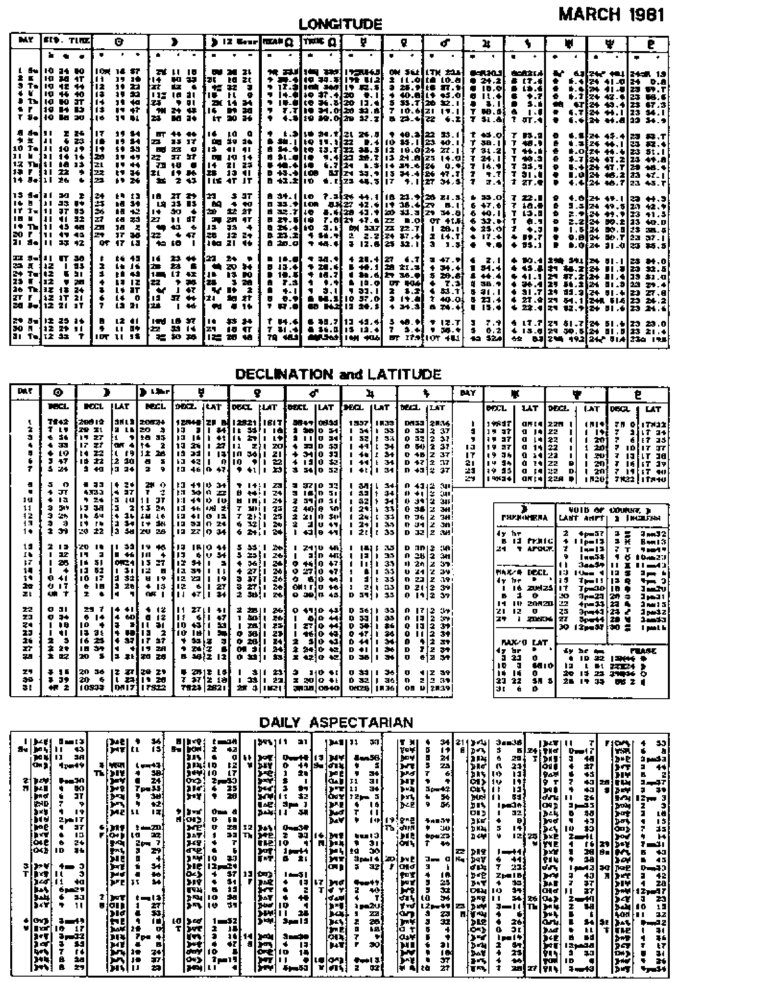


Figure 12.

Each of these are considered major aspects by major planets, which in this study is one of the indices for identifying powerful time bands in gold price movements and cycles.

Once the reader fully understands these few and simple geocosmic principles, the study of correlating them to cycles in the price of gold or any market is a more easily verifiable pursuit.

PART THREE

THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CYCLES OF THE MARKET AND THE COSMOS

CHAPTER FIVE

INTRODUCTION TO GOLD CHARTS AND GEOCOSMIC PRINCIPLES

In the back section of this book are 23 charts of gold prices. They are the foundation upon which this study is built and there are several features which the reader needs to know in order to understand them. Some have already been explained in the preface.

First, these charts contain the daily high and low prices for gold futures' contracts as listed on the New York Commodities Exchange, more conveniently known as the COMEX. The prices do not reflect the daily current or spot prices of gold, which are quoted daily in such places as London, Hong Kong, Zurich, Frankfort, Paris or New York. At some point, towards the end of each graph, they do closely approximate the current price of gold. This is the case when the dates (month) on the graph coincide with the month of the contract, listed on the top of the graph.

Every contract traded on any futures' exchange, like the COMEX, is called a futures' contract. When the seller of a contract elects to deliver on a contract, or a buyer elects to take delivery, the futures' contract is closed out. Then gold enters into what is known as a *cash market*, and its value is based upon spot prices. But until delivery takes place, the price is always a futures' price, unless there is an offsetting trade.

All these graphs are hand-drawn. The sources for these prices are the Wall Street Journal, The Commodities Exchange Yearbooks 1977-1980 and personal records of Walter Bressert of HAL Commodities.

The particular contracts that appear in these charts have been chosen to correlate with dates closest to the next Mercury retrograde period. In Chart

#1, for example, Mercury turned retrograde May 29, 1975. The next Mercury retrograde cycle did not begin until 120 days later, September 26, 1975. Therefore, the October, 1975 contract was chosen because it is the one that most closely follows the next, or 2nd, Mercury retrograde (i.e. October follows September). Major contracts for gold are due every other, even-numbered month beginning in February. There are thus 23 charts because there have been 23 retrograde Mercury occurrences between May, 1975 and May, 1982. The 24th takes place September 19, 1982.

There are very few geocosmic cycles that did not occur during the period covered by these graphs. True, some occurred only a few times, too seldom perhaps to make any solid conclusions. For that reason, a graph of the weekly range of gold prices precedes the 23 charts of daily gold prices, and these weekly prices go back to the time when gold started trading on a futures exchange (Winnepeg, 1974). Therefore, those planetary cycles which are longer in duration, and hence appear only a few times during the time period of the daily-priced graphs, can be traced back somewhat further on the weekly charts which should yield fairly reliable data for research conclusions. Further updates of successive 19-week futures prices in graph form will be made available through the publisher (see back of book).

Geocosmic Signatures and Gold Price Cycles

Very little needs to be said at this point concerning the correlation of geocosmic cycles with prices of gold. The results of the research study are described in great detail in the following chapters.

Basically, there are two divisions of planetary cycles: MAJOR and MINOR PLANETARY CYCLES. The next section contains chapters on the major planetary cycles, those which have been found to correlate with the most powerful cycles in gold prices, with the most consistent frequency. The minor planetary cycles have been omitted in this work, but in most cases, they will be seen to accompany major planetary cycles when significant movements in gold prices unfold.

The basic conclusion from this research, and hence the primary hypothesis of this study, is: **A combination of three or more major planetary cycles will tend to be present within six trading days of a gold price cycle culmination, and this will happen with a frequency of about 90%.**

In other words, when a significant top or bottom in gold prices is achieved, or a breakout of a previously defined support or resistance level unfolds, at least one major planetary cycle is present, and two other major ones accompany it within one week (all three occurring within a 12-day trading span or less). One of these geocosmic signatures will tend to

happen within three trading days of the midpoint of these planetary signatures. Usually the range of time is much less—within one trading day of one of the signatures.

There are several corollaries to this hypothesis.

1. **Major and primary cycles** in gold prices do not usually occur unless at least one major geocosmic signature is present within four trading days, and usually less than two.
2. **Breakouts** of support and resistance levels do not usually occur unless at least one specific type of major geocosmic signature is present within seven trading days.
3. Minor geocosmic cycles by themselves do not concur with major and primary gold cycles, nor time of breakouts. (They may concur with minor cycles in gold prices.)

All of these corollaries support a basic alternate premise, that in order for something major (i.e. major or primary top or bottom, or breakout) to happen with the price of gold, at least one major geocosmic signature (planetary cycle) should be present. If that is so, and also if two other major geocosmic signatures are present within seven days, then there is a high probability that a significant cycle or breakout in the price of gold could occur within three trading days of the middle of these planetary aspects.

Interpreting the Findings

The results of the research study are in the next several chapters. As data was sorted into several different categories in an effort to reveal both the consistency and strength of each signature, this section on delineating the material became necessary.

First, there are two different types of findings. The most obvious involves the 35 planetary signatures. These include eight retrograde planetary motions, seven planetary direct motion periods and several aspects between 20 pairs of planets. The only geocosmic signatures considered noteworthy were those in which prominent gold price cycles occurred during a defined **central time period** with a regularity of at least 70%, unless otherwise stated. The **central time band** consisted of three or less trading days either side of the date of the planetary event, although there were a couple of exceptions where four days may have been allowed. In cases of retrograde and direct dates, the orb may have been extended to five trading days. In every instance, the intent was to ascertain which gold price cycle, if any, may have been associated with the planetary signature. In many cases, a gold price cycle culminated within a day of an aspect or a change of planetary motion. Also, in many cases, there was a significant movement of prices on the day of the geocosmic pattern toward a price cycle that may not have climaxed until a few days later or earlier. If the climax was within the defined central time band, which varied from three to five days, depending upon the signature being analyzed, it was considered very important.

In the case of planetary aspects, additional data was given for periods of time slightly outside the central time band. Since planetary energies do not always translate into effect (or cause or synchronicity) exactly at their time of mathematical relationship, wider "orbs" may have been allowed. An "orb" is a measurement of time or distance away from the exact, or actual, event. Thus, the central time band has an orb of three days, and in some instances, as many as five days. But in the analysis of planetary signatures, an additional category allowing orbs of six to ten days may have also been provided. The benefit of this is to allow the student to see the volatility that might be present within a greater time frame surrounding particular aspects. For example, an aspect between the Sun and Uranus may coincide with a primary trough the next day, which fits into the central time band. However, seven trading days later, a major crest may appear which is outside the central band. Given this later data, the student can see the sharp rise and change of direction that must have accompanied this signature. In addition, during a "cluster period" of several aspects, the cycle culmination date could be further away from the first or last signature than the defined *central time band*, but still qualify as significant.

As an example, consider the ½-primary trough which occurred July 20, 1976, at $105.20. This does not occur during the central time band of the two very powerful signatures (Sun waning square to Uranus and Uranus direct), but within eight trading days of each. Knowing that the aspects correlate to a powerful trough is valuable information. However, it is even more helpful if the student realizes there was a sharp reversal in direction, corresponding with another powerful cycle in a very short amount of time. This is typical of Uranus signatures and by providing both a central time band and another wider-orbed time band, the characteristics of each signature can more clearly be judged.

As mentioned, this is only one type of data being analyzed. Another involves time windows which seem to occur at consistent intervals *after* a retrograde or direct planetary event. These time windows are similar to the Bressert trough cycles and crest cycles in the respect that they cover a period of time after a specific event. With Bressert cycles, primary, major and trading troughs are always measured from the preceding occurrence of a major or primary trough. In a sense, they are time windows.

Time windows in geocosmic study appear a specified number of weeks after a planet retrogrades, or after it returns to direct motion. For example,

a prominent crest tends to occur regularly eight to ten weeks after Mercury goes direct. A prominent trough occurs even more consistently 12–14 weeks after Mercury turns direct. Reasons for the appearance of time windows in reference to planetary cycle dates is not totally understood. Perhaps a change in planetary directions creates some sort of wave phenomenon, in which crests occur at certain time intervals followed or preceded by lulls or troughs, and after a certain amount of time, cycles return to normal. Perhaps, as most likely in the cases of Uranus and beyond, they are actually seasonal cycles. Whatever the reason, these time windows have been identified and found to occur on a very consistent basis with retrograde or direct motion dates as their only foundation.

In the case of the 35 planetary signatures, the dates of each are given individually in the breakdown. This is followed by an abbreviation of the type of cycle present within a central time band as just described. In parentheses is a number representing the number of days before (-) or after (+) the date of the aspect in which the gold cycle unfolded. For example, in the case of Venus conjunct Saturn on July 19, 1976, followed by the ½-primary bottom on July 20, the tabulation under the conjuction of Venus-Saturn section looks like this:

7/19/76 ½PB(+1) MT(+7)

The date is given first, followed by the most powerful cycle in effect during the central time band, and in parentheses, the number of days after (+) or before (-) the aspect in which the cycle culminated. If another cycle appears within a few days outside of the central time band, it will also be given in the next column(s). Thus, MT(+7) refers to the major crest which occurred seven trading days after Venus conjuncted Saturn. A brief description might then follow which provides even further insight into the nature of the association between the gold price cycle and the geocosmic signature in effect.

The abbreviations of gold price cycles or movements used in these analyses, and their weighted values used in this work, are as follows:

PB - Primary Bottom (-5)
PT - Primary Top (+5)
½PB - ½-Primary Bottom (-4)
½PT - ½-Primary Top (+4)
DB - Double Bottom close to a Primary or ½ Primary Bottom (-4)
DT - Double Top close to a Primary or ½ Primary Top (+4)
-BO - Breakout of a support level (-4)
+BO - Breakout of a resistance level (+4)
MB - Major Bottom (-3)

MT - Major Top (+3)
-DB - Double Bottom close to a Major Bottom (-3)
-DT - Double Top close to a Major Top (+3)
TB** - Prominent Trading Trough, price swing greater than 7% of ending price (-2.5)
TT** - Prominent Trading Crest, price swing price greater than 7% of beginning price (+2.5)
-MB - Major Bottom, but price swing less than than 5% of ending price (-2)
-MT - Major Top, but price swing less than than 5% of beginning price (+2)
TB* - Prominent Trading Trough, price swing greater than 5% of ending price (-2)
TT* - Prominent Trading Crest, price swing greater than 5% of beginning price (+2)
-G - Gap down in price (-2)
+G - Gap up in price (+)
TB - Non-prominent Trading Trough (-1)
TT - Non-prominent Trading Crest (+1)

Most of these cycles and phenomena have already been discussed. However, a couple of new terms have been added and explanations in the determination of others are in order. The letter 'G' symbolizes a gap in prices. When the price of gold opens at a lower price than was realized during the previous day's entire trading, and never recovers to the previous day's trading range, a space, or gap, is created in the charts. This is known as a *gap down* in prices and is considered a very bearish indicator, for, in many cases, prices drop very sharply during the next few trading sessions. In Chart #1, there are several examples of gaps down. One of these is September 17, 1975. The day before, prices traded in the $146–148.30 range. However, on the 17th, prices opened lower than the previous day's lowest price and never recovered to that level, trading instead in the $141.50–143.70 range. During the next four trading sessions, prices continued to drop sharply to the primary bottom price of $127.40 on September 23, 1975. It is not uncommon for a breakout in prices to be a gap either, as in the case of September 1, 1975. That day represents a gap down in prices because the trading range never overlapped with the previous session's trading range. It was furthermore the day that prices penetrated the support level of $160.00 by a sizable margin, thus also qualifying for a breakout classification.

The same principle holds with *gaps up* in prices. If a current day's trading is in a range that is higher than any price traded during the previous day's session, a space or gap upwards is noted on the charts. This

is a very bullish indicator and often coincides with sharp and short rises in gold prices. An example appears at the beginning of Chart #2, on September 24, 1975. There is a gap up from the trading range of the prior day and prices continued to accelerate steeply during the next six sessions to achieve a ½ primary crest October 2, 1975.

Gaps in prices do not appear to be as strong as breakouts. In many cases their resultant effect is very short, less than one week. In some cases, prices reverse almost immediately afterwards. Yet they are important, suggesting something powerful at work that day and frequently correspond to a geocosmic signature.

Double tops and double bottoms have already been discussed. However, a rule of measurement has not been given. In this project, a cycle is considered a double cycle if its price is within one percent of the primary, ½-primary or major cycle which occurred around the same time period (less than six weeks).

Relative Strength

The number in parentheses after each cycle type represents a weighted value, or score, ascribed to each. The intent is to provide a measurement of different strengths amongst the different cycles. For instance, all **primary cycles** are rated a value of **five**, the highest score, because they are the most powerful cycles. A (+) value is given for crests and a (-) value for troughs in order to distinguish them from each other. Therefore, a +5 is associated with a primary crest cycle while a -5 refers to a primary trough.

One-half primary cycles are rated a value of four. So, too, are **double** cycles to either the primary or ½-primary types. Because a **breakout** of a support or resistance level that has been in effect for at least one year is such an important and powerful phenomenon in the market, it also is ascribed a value of four (-BO = breakout downwards of support level, and +BO = breakout upwards of resistance level).

Major cycles and their *double* tops or bottoms are valued at a score of three while **prominent trading cycles** in which the price wave represents a price change of greater than 7% are rated 2.5. If the trading cycles' price change is 5–7%, it is still considered prominent, but given a score of only 2. If its swing is less than 5% of its lowest price (ending price if TB, beginning price if TT), it is considered a significant trading cycle, but non-prominent, and receives a rating of only one point.

Values of two points are also given to **major cycles** whose price waves are less than 5% of total price and also to **gaps** in prices. Each of these are important points in gold cycles but considerably less than their respective counterparts, the major cycle and breakouts.

Relative averages have been computed for each of the geocosmic signatures analyzed in this report. By adding the scores of all the gold price cycles present during time bands surrounding each geocosmic occurrence, and dividing by the number of cases involved, a relative strength score for each signature has been obtained.

In this study, a relative strength score of 3.00 or greater is considered noteworthy, and will be followed with an asterisk (*). A score of 4.00 or greater is considered very powerful and will be followed by two asterisks (**). Anything above 4.00 suggests the probability of a cycle on the order of a ½-primary type or greater.

Relative averages may be broken down into three categories: total, crest and trough. In the case of total, no distinction is made between a plus or minus score. The concern is merely to measure the strength of cycles—all cycles—that may be present during a specific geocosmic signature. A crest category only measures the power of crest cycles which unfolded during a particular geocosmic time frame. The reverse is true with trough categories.

Relative Consistency

Following relative strength, another division of analysis appears with each signature known as *relative consistency*. The intent here is to measure the frequency of occurrence of a cycle that may be expected during each geocosmic signature. Only those signatures which have correlated with a cycle in gold prices at least 66.7% of the time in the past are noted. For instance, if a significant cycle in gold occurred five out of seven times the Sun formed a waxing square to Uranus, or 71.4% of instances observed, that is considered somewhat reliable, at least enough to warrant further study. If, however, prominent cycles at the time of Neptune direct have been noticed in only three of seven cases studied (42.9%), this is not considered a reliable correspondence, and no further analysis followed.

In order to keep the relative consistency score on a par with relative strength, the percentage of frequency of occurrence is multiplied by five. Thus, a score of 3.33 means the frequency of occurrence is 66.7% in the cases observed, or enough to be considered noteworthy (.667 × 5 = 3.33). An asterisk will appear after such scores (*). In those cases where a signature correlates to a prominent gold price cycle in over 90% of instances studied, or in which the relative consistency score is over 4.5, two asterisks appear (**), implying its very high reliability factor.

Once more, this category is divided into sections of total, crest and trough. The total section records the presence of any cycle, crest or trough, during each signature. Crest or trough, of course, measure the frequency of occurrence only of their respective types.

A further division has frequently been made which involves the width of time orb and the prominence of a cycle present. For example, one column in this section might be titled **All Cycles**. This takes into account the presence of *any* cycle during the central time band of a geocosmic signature, regardless of strength. The next column might be titled **Prominent Central** and will account only for cycles of at least a prominent trading strength (i.e. scores of two or more) which appeared during the central time band. Next to that column may appear another column titled **8-Day Prominent**. This refers to only those cycles which are at least prominent in nature (scores of two points or more) that occurred within a period of eight trading days from the planetary signature, and possibly make up part of a "cluster" that coincides with the most powerful cycle in effect.

Only the last two columns, or those involving prominent cycles only, are considered of great importance. The **All Cycles** column is presented in order to further reveal the possibility that a particular signature might correlate to a crest or trough cycle, even though its effect is small. In the analysis of signatures in the back of this book, only scores involving prominent cycles are used.

Also, one should note that gaps were not included in the calculations of relative consistency, even though they were in relative strength. This is because gaps may be very short in time, and not really consistent with a cycle being formed. Breakouts, on the other hand, are consistent with the cycle-type being formed, and are included in the relative consistency measurement.

C/S Index

A third subdivision appears in most of the analyses which takes into account a combination of the relative strength and relative consistency scores (C/S Index). This score is determined simply by adding the average of each, thus achieving a combined total for each category. These categories are the same which appear under the Relative Consistency section. Thus, in the vertical columns, there may be three parts: All Cycles, Prominent Central and/or 8 (or more or less)-Day Prominent. The horizontal divisions may include titles of: Total, Crest and/or Trough. Plus scores will accompany the crests, minus score the troughs and neither will accompany the total score. Of most importance here are scores of over 6.50. This represents a score slightly greater than the combination of the lowest possible significant scores for both relative strength (3.00) and relative consistency (3.33). Scores higher than this will have an asterisk next to them (*). It is possible for a signature to have a C/S score higher than 6.50

and hence an asterisk, even if one of the other two categories are not of a significant level. This frequently happens when non-powerful cycles appear consistently during a planetary signature (Relative Consistency is high but Relative Strength score is low).

Scores of over 9.00 are considered very noteworthy, and will be followed by two asterisks (**). This suggests that powerful cycles in gold prices occur very consistently during a specific geocosmic signature.

Important Criteria Difference Between Time Windows and Other Geocosmic Signatures in Computations

As mentioned, the 35 geocosmic signatures and time windows are broken down into three major categories: Relative Strength, Relative Consistency and C/S Index. Each of these categories is broken down further into two groupings based upon either time intervals (only in the case of the 35 geocosmic signatures) or cycle type (i.e. crest, trough or total).

A typical table depicting the scoring of one of the 35 geocosmic signatures would look like the following:

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total			
Crest			
Trough			
Relative Consistency	**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total			
Crest			
Trough			
C/S Index			
Total			
Crest			
Trough			

In the Relative Strength category, two columns might appear: Central Period and 8-Day Period. As indicated, Central Period will contain the average weighted values for any cycle which appears within a short time of the particular aspect date. The width of this time orb is usually three days either side of the event unless otherwise stated. The level of prominence does not matter—any and all cycles present within the central time band are included in the scoring of Relative Strength for the 35 signatures. This is not true in the case of time windows, as will be discussed shortly, nor is it true in the case of the 8-Day Period section.

Sometimes only one column appears next to Relative Strength. There may be no 8-Day Period next to it. This means that the most important cycle occurred only during the central time band. Cycles occurring outside of it were not as powerful and, therefore, lent no further understanding to the nature of the signature's association with gold price cycles.

However, in most cases, there is another column. It may be anywhere from a five to eleven day period (8-Day Period is most frequent). The number of days simply means the number of days away from the geocosmic event in which another cycle in gold prices tended to occur that was not already covered in the central time band. In most cases, another type of cycle in gold prices happens within a certain number of days before or after the central time band, and it is helpful to know what type of a cycle this is, and how powerful it tends to be. To illustrate again, under the Venus/Mars waxing trine, an eleven-day period is allowed next to the central period. In this particular case, prices started moving sharply toward a primary crest eleven days after the occurrence of one Venus waxing trine Mars date. To exclude this column, or even shorten its orb to say, eight days, would have totally missed the importance and impact of this specific case and would have consequently resulted in a score much lower and, hence, not reflective of the nature of this signature.

In this five to eleven day column next to the central period column, only cycles with a weighted value of 2.0 or greater were considered, except in the case of gaps. Even though gaps are considered powerful enough to be rated two points, it is believed that they should occur very close to the date of the aspect to be useful in the measurements of this study (i.e. within the central time band). However, any other cycle of at least a prominent level, or with a weighted value of 2.0 or greater, was used in the computation of this later Relative Strength column.

There may be as many as three columns next to the Relative Consistency and C/S Index categories. The All Cycles column includes the measurement of any cycle, whether or not of a prominent level, that might have occurred during the central time band. The next column, Prominent Central, includes only those cycles with a score of 2.0 or greater, not including gaps, that occurred within the central time period. The third column is a 5–11 Day Prominent one, the same number of days orb as used in Relative Strength. Once more, only prominent cycles whose weighted values were at least 2.0 or greater were used, except in the case of gaps outside the central time band.

Whichever columns are used with Relative Consistency measurements are also used in the C/S Index calculations. As mentioned earlier, C/S simply adds the scores of Relative Strength to Relative Consistency, for the same time band, to achieve a composite weight of strength plus consistency of occurrence. Both All Cycles and Prominent Central columns of the

Relative Consistency category are added to the Central Period of the Relative Strength category, in order to achieve scores listed under the All Cycles and Prominent Central of the C/S Index category, respectively.

The set-up under the time windows is slightly different. Here, there are two columns: Crest and Trough. Under each appears the total number of each type of cycle that culminated during a specific time band. For instance, 13-15 weeks after Pluto retrograde, seven troughs occurred in seven instances, and seven crests occurred in seven instances. The types of troughs and types of crests would be given quantitatively, as will be shown shortly.

Next, Relative Strength, Relative Consistency and C/S Index scores are given for each column. The Relative Strength average value is based upon the total weighted values of any cycle present during that particular time band that has a score of 2.0 or more, with the exception of gaps. That total is then divided by the number of cases used in the analysis.

The Relative Consistency score is derived by adding the number of instances in which a cycle whose weighted value is *2.5 or greater* occurs, and dividing that by the number of instances used. In other words, time windows do not include cycles of less than 7% price waves in the measurement of Relative Consistency. The reason for this is to identify which time windows are most purely of a crest or trough phenomenon. Only those time windows which most consistently exhibit powerful cycles of one or the other type are being considered significant in this study.

To illustrate, consider the 13-15 week post-Pluto retrograde time window. The set-up will be as follows:

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	1 DT
		1 ½PB	3 MT
		1 DB	1-MT
		3 MB	1 TT**
			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.86*	+2.78
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-8.86*	+6.36

In this example, one can see that seven troughs and seven crests occurred during this time band. All were prominent. However, the troughs were on the average much more powerful than the crests, as indicated in the Relative Strength for each, -3.86 versus +2.78, respectively. Also, of the seven crests, only five were powerful enough to warrant a value of at least 2.50. There was a non-prominent major crest and a less than 7% trading crest. These latter two were thus not included in the Relative Consistency

scores which measure only cycles with values of 2.50 or greater. All of the troughs in this time window were at least of a major cycle level of prominence (over 2.50), and hence the trough score was -5.00. The asterisks next to each indicates it is noteworthy, and the double asterisk means that it is very noteworthy.

Therefore, this analysis suggests that a powerful trough tends to occur consistently 13-15 weeks after Pluto retrograde. Crest cycles also occur but of a much less powerful nature.

CHAPTER SIX

THE MERCURY EFFECT

One of the most impressive correlations of gold price cycles to geocosmic study has to do with the planet Mercury. The 23 gold charts in the back of this book were created to correlate with Mercury retrograde periods, beginning May 29, 1975.

In astrological literature, Mercury is said to rule communication, mentality, intellect and a wide range of thinking processes. In its direct motion, Mercury travels rather fast. This is not surprising since it is the planet closest to the Sun, and hence has less distance to cover in a complete orbit. In fact, it takes only 88 days to do so (heliocentric perspective).

However, seen from Earth, Mercury "slows down" and goes retrograde about three times per year, or on the average, every 116 days (give or take 10 days due to the fact that planetary orbits are not exact circles around the Sun). The duration of its retrograde period varies from 20-25 days, and is simply known as "Mercury Retrograde." This term has become a common part of the modern astrologer's vocabulary, and is jokingly used to describe those times when everything seems to go wrong, or at least not according to plan.

Jokingly or not, this is frequently the case with gold prices. In many instances, a definite gold price trend could be identified during the Mercury direct periods. But within a couple of days of going retrograde, that trend seemed to reverse in many cases. It was as if the investment community said, "We've changed our minds. We want to sell (or buy) now." And, shortly after (and sometimes just before) Mercury returned to the direct motion, the previous trend returned.

To understand the "reversal of trend" effect of Mercury retrograde, let's

look at a couple of the charts. In Chart #1 in the back of the book, notice that the price of gold was declining rapidly at the time Mercury went retrograde. A primary bottom was achieved June 2, 1975, just two trading days after Mercury turned its direction. From that point on, there was a bit of an increase in prices as the trend seemed to reverse. It continued up for a short period of time after Mercury went direct, then returned to its pre-Mercury retrograde downward plight, well before the next retrograde Mercury period.

The second retrograde took place September 26, 1975. The preceding trend was definitely downward, as another primary bottom was realized September 23, 1975, just three trading days earlier. The trend of prices then reversed, moving upwards until a few weeks after Mercury turned direct. Once again, prices returned to their prior primary direction—down.

The third retrograde Mercury period commenced January 14, 1976, again with a primary trough only five trading days later. Once more the trend changed, and continued upward for awhile after the direct, then resumed its bearish course.

This principle of trend reversal does not take place with every Mercury retrograde, as many other current geocosmic factors in effect must be considered. Additionally, technical indicators enter the picture. For example, notice Charts #15 and #16, and specifically the 16th Mercury retrograde cycle. Prior to its occurrence on February 26, 1980, the price of gold was headed down, after a long bull market. The day before, February 25, the April, 1980 contract for gold had dropped below a $625.00 support level, down to about $618.00. However, at the time of the retrograde, prices rebounded back up over $650.00 and it appeared that the downward trend would reverse, that a real breakout had been averted. But not so, for one week later, on March 7th, during the retrograde, the price did in fact plunge below the $618.00 support, and a technical breakout followed. It is interesting to note, though, that the bottom of that breakout was March 18, 1980, just one day before Mercury turned direct. In fact, the price of gold made a rather dramatic comeback, with the August contract rising from $492.00 on March 19, 1980 to $605.00 only four trading days later! Shortly thereafter, it resumed its downward direction, which was in effect just prior to Mercury turning retrograde. The downward direction in this instance might be questioned, for each new bottom was in fact higher than the last. However, each new top was also lower than the last until the week of June 6, when it technically could be identified as a bull cycle again.

#1 Mercury Retrograde

5/29/75	PB(+2)	End of steep drop; slight rise followed, cycle reversed up next 8 weeks

9/26/75	PB(-3)	½PT(+4)		Sharp 7-day rise began -3 days; down cycle reversed, up next 6 weeks
1/14/76	-BO(+3)	PB(+5)		End of down cycle in 5 days, began 8-week rise
5/9/76	-DB(-2)	TT(+1)		Depressed market continued down next 3 weeks
9/8/76	DT(+2)	DB(-6)		Bear cycle reversed 90 days before; led to long bull market
12/28/76	MT(+4)	TB*(-6)	PB(+8)	After PB, cycle reversed back up for 10 weeks
4/20/77		DT(-5)	MB(+6)	Cycle reversed down 9 weeks beginning -5 days
8/22/77		½PB(-5)		Began 12-week rise -5 days
12/12/77	DB(0)	TT*(-3)		Cycle reversed up next 12 weeks
4/1/78	TT*(-1)	-DB(+2)		Sharp 4-week drop began
8/4/78	TB(-1)	TT*(-3)	PT(+8)	Sharp 2-week rise, then sharp drop
11/25/78	TT*(-1)	PB(+4)		Cycle reversed up next 12 weeks
3/15/79	-DT(0)	MB(-8)	½PT(+7)	Middle of 2-week rally before further drop
7/17/79	TB(-2)	PT(+5)		End of long rise, 2-week drop followed, then continued long rise again
11/9/79	MT(-2)	PB(-6)		Cycle reversal began -6 days, up next 12 weeks
2/26/80	TB**(-1)	TT**(+6)		Sharp drop continued to Mercury direct
6/28/80		PT(+6)	-DB(-5)	Cycle reversed +5 days, down next 5 weeks
10/23/80	TB**(0)			Middle of steep decline
2/8/81	MT(+2)	½PB(-5)		End of rally, resumed down next 3 weeks
6/9/81	MB(-2)	TT*(+1)	-BO(-4)	Continued steep 4-week decline
10/6/81	TT*(0)	½PB(-6)		End of rally, resumed down next 7 weeks
1/23/82	½PB(-3)	MT(+5)		End of rally +5 days, resumed down next 7 weeks
5/21/82	TT*(-2)	½PB(-9)		Middle of steep decline

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	2.83	4.18**
Crest	=	+1.52	+2.48
Trough	=	-1.91	-3.43*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.35*	4.13*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.04	+2.83	+3.91*
Trough	=	-2.93	-2.39	-4.57**

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.18*	6.96*	9.18**
Crest	=	+4.56	+4.35	+6.39
Trough	=	-4.84	-4.30	-8.00*

The results of the research correlating Mercury retrograde dates with significant factors in the price of gold are impressive. Within five trading days of that date, prominent tops or bottoms (this includes primary, major and trading cycles with a swing of over 5% of current prices) were realized in all 23 cases. And, in 18 cases, a prominent cycle was realized within three trading days or less.

Of the prominent cycles, 16, or 70%, were major or primary and appeared within six trading days or less of Mercury retrograde. Nineteen occurred within nine trading days. The average number of days between Mercury turning retrograde and the date of the most powerful gold price cycle present was 2.68 trading days.

In the cases of the prominent crests, the average variation from retrograde to price peak was 2.9 trading days. The increase in price from low to high within an upward trend (not exceeding eight trading days) around the Mercury retrograde period of the cyclic top ranged from 4.6% to 15.8%, the average being 9.1%. The average number of trading days between this low and high price was 4.8. That means that when a crest was achieved around the date of Mercury beginning its retrograde motion (and it happened 12 of 23 times), it happened on the average 2.9 trading days from the retrograde, and that within an average of 4.8 trading days either side of this top, the increase in prices averaged 9.1%.

Significant troughs in gold prices occurred at an average distance of 2.78 trading days from the date Mercury went retrograde. Decreases in prices one to nine days before or after this trough ranged from 2.4% to 20.1%. The mean number of days between the high price and this bottom was 5.5 days, and the average rate of decline in price was 8.9%. That means that when a powerful trough occurred around the date Mercury went retrograde (which happened 15 of 23 times), it happened within a mean average of 2.78 days, and that within an average of 5.5 days of this bottom, the price of gold dropped an average of 8.9%.

Conclusions: Mercury retrograde dates tend to coincide with significant gold price cycles. In 70% of the cases, it is likely to coincide with either a major or primary cycle within one week.

#2 Mercury Direct

6/22/75	DB(0)	MT(+7)	Began rise for 6 weeks, end of decline

9/18/75	DT(+3)	TB*(-7)		Down 1 week, up next, followed by 13-week drop
2/3/76	MT(0)	PB(-9)		Down 1 week, up next and held for 6 weeks
6/1/76	PT(0)	PB(-4)		End of rally, sharp drop next 7 weeks
10/1/76	MB(+1)			End of drop, rise next 7 weeks
1/17/77		PB(-5)	TT*(+6)	End of long decline, rise next 9 weeks
5/13/77	-MT(0)			End of rally, drop next 5 weeks
9/14/77	TB(+1)			Rise continued next 8 weeks
12/31/77	+BO(+1)	TT**(+2)	-MB(+3)	Breakout next day to PT in 10 weeks
4/25/78	PB(0)	MT(+7)		End of decline, began rise next 16 weeks
8/28/78	PB(-3)	TT**(+5)		Sharp rise began next day through next 10 weeks; end of decline
12/15/78	TT**(+2)	TB(-3)	PB(-11)	Sharp gap up next day, rise next 10 weeks
4/7/79	TT(-3)	PB(+5)		End of decline, began rise next 15 weeks
8/11/79	TT**(-1)	TB*(+2)	PB(-5)	End of sharp drop, began rise next 8 weeks
11/29/79	+G(-1)	TB(-3)	+BO(+8)	Sharp gap up day before and after; rise next 8 weeks
3/19/80	PB(-1)	½PT(+3)		End of sharp decline, up next week, then long sideways movement
7/22/80	-DB(-2)	TT**(+3)		End of sharp drop; volatile beginning of 9-week climb
11/12/80	MB(-1)	½PT(+6)		End of decline, up 1 week, then sharper drop
3/2/81	PB(+2)	TT**(+6)		End of decline, rise next 3 weeks
7/3/81	MB(+1)	-BO(-6)	TT*(+5)	Slight rally next 2 weeks, perhaps 12 weeks
10/27/81	TB**(+1)			Insignificant rise next 2 weeks, then down sharp following 2 weeks
2/13/82	TT(-2)	-BO(+3)		End of slight rally, down next 5 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		3.00*	3.89*
Crest	=		+1.48	+2.41
Trough	=		-2.20	-2.89

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Only	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.77**	4.32*	4.77**
Crest	=	+2.50	+2.27	+3.86*
Trough	=	-3.63*	-2.95	-3.86*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.77*	7.32*	8.66*
Crest	=	+3.98	+3.75	+6.27
Trough	=	-5.83	-5.15	-6.75*

Within five trading days of Mercury returning to a direct motion, significant cycles in gold prices were achieved. Again using a 5% filtered wave of prices within nine days as a criterion, 21 of 22 instances qualify as technically prominent, or 95.4%. Of the 22 significant tops and bottoms realized, 21 were within three days of the direct period (95.4%). The average variation between the significant price cycle and direct date was 1.86 days.

When significant troughs occurred closest to Mercury direct, it was on the average 2.15 days from the direct date, ranging from 0-5 days. The number of days between this trough and its most recent crest ranged from four to nine days, the average being 6.15 days. The average percentage of decline in prices during that time was 10.45%. In other words, in the cases where significant troughs happened around Mercury turning direct, the amount of time between the cycle and the direct date averaged about two days (2.15). Within 6.15 days of that bottom (on the average), the price of gold declined an average of 10.45%.

When significant crests in gold prices happened closest to the direct periods, it was only 1.44 days away from the planetary event (the range was 0-3 days). The number of days between this top and its closest low price varied four to nine days, averaging exactly six days. During that time, prices fluctuated 3.5%-10.7% from the top, with an average of 6.9%. Thus, when gold price crests happened close to the Mercury direct date, they did so within 1.44 days, and within 6 days of that top there was a price variation of 6.9%, on the average.

Of the 14 cases where primary or major tops and bottoms were realized at Mercury direct, 12 were bottoms, over half of the total cases analyzed. This is slightly more than what occurred with Mercury retrograde. It is also interesting to note a few other differences between the two:

1. The significant cycles in gold prices occurred closer to the actual date of Mercury direct than Mercury retrograde. The mean distance in time from the direct was 1.86 days while from the retrograde it was 2.68 days.
2. With Mercury retrograde, the significant crests increased in price at a rate slightly more than the rate of decrease which occurred with the troughs. With Mercury direct, the opposite was true: troughs dipped at a rate considerably greater than the percentage of increase which accompanied the crests.

Conclusions: Mercury direct dates tend to coincide very closely with significant cycles in gold prices. In over 63% of the cases, it correlated with either a primary or major cycle within five days. In 86% of those cases, it was a trough.

In 32 of the 45 instances where Mercury changed directions (direct or retrograde), a primary or major cycle in gold prices occurred within one trading week, or with a 70+% frequency. In 36 of the 45 cases, a price wave of greater than 5% within 10 days of the top or bottom was realized (80% frequency).

POST-MERCURY DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

Eight to Ten Week Post-Mercury Direct Crest

An impressive correlation unfolded in the 8–10 week period following Mercury direct. In 18 of 22 cases, a prominent crest in gold prices was achieved (81.8% frequency). During the bull market phase of August 27, 1976 through January 21, 1980 (Charts #6–15), there were ten retrograde-direct periods. In nine of these, a *major* or *primary* crest occurred in this 8–10 week time frame (90% frequency).

There were also 17 prominent troughs during this cycle (77.7%), but many of these happened in the eighth week, and may relate to a 5–8 week post-Mercury direct trough cycle. In addition, as the table below indicates, there were ten prominent crests and only one primary trough.

The distribution of cycles in effect 8–10 weeks after Mercury direct was as follows (22 cases):

		Crest	Trough
		10 PT	1 PB
		1 ½PT	6 ½PB
		1 DT	3 MB
		2 MT	3 TB**
		2 TT**	2 -MB
		2 TT*	2 TB*
Relative Strength	=	+3.32*	-2.43
Relative Consistency	=	+3.64*	-2.95
C/S Index	=	+6.96*	-5.38

Conclusion: Powerful crests in gold prices tend to occur 8–10 weeks following Mercury direct (81.8%).

12–14 Week Post-Mercury Direct Trough

This particular cycle unfolds very close to the time that the next Mercury retrograde is due. So in some cases, particularly at the 14-week point, the significant cycle in effect will be the same one associated with Mercury retrograde. Even with this point taken into account, the results were quite impressive: in 21 cases analyzed, a prominent trough occurred (95.4%). Twenty of those were very powerful (over 7% price swings). In four cases, the bottom occurred in the 14th week, so there might be a stronger case for a 12–13 week cycle, since it alone was sufficient to correlate with the powerful troughs 82% of the time. An interesting point is that during the ten bull market phases (Charts #6–15), the major bottom occurred in the 12th week, suggesting that this cycle tends to unfold somewhat earlier during a bull market than a bear market. During the 12 bear market periods, this bottom occurred in only five instances during the 12th week.

The distribution of cycles found 12–14 weeks following Mercury direct was as follows (22 cases):

		Trough	Crest
		5 PB	1 PT
		6 ½PB	1 ½PT
		1 DB	2 DT
		1 -BO	1 +BO
		4 MB	5 MT
		1 -DB	2 -TT*
		2 TB**	
		1 -MB	
Relative Strength	=	-3.59*	+1.82
Relative Consistency	=	-4.55**	+2.27
C/S Index	=	-8.14*	+4.09

Conclusion: Powerful troughs in gold prices tend to occur 12–13 weeks following Mercury direct (77.3%). In some instances, that bottom may not actually happen until the 14th week (95.4%).

One can thus see that there indeed tends to be a real Mercury Effect. Though the retrograde period lasts only three weeks, it seems to frequently disturb the regularity of gold price cycles. After the direct motion, prices tend to resume their normal six-week cycles (trough-to-trough). Also, prices tend to fall into a fairly consistent 8–10 week powerful crest cycle and a 12–13 week trough cycle, after Mercury goes direct. In later chapters, the reader will see how these time window periods can be narrowed even further using the concept of aspects along with technical factors such as price objectives.

CHAPTER SEVEN

THE VENUS EFFECT

Since 1975, Venus has had five retrograde periods:

August 6, 1975 through September 18, 1975
March 16, 1977 through April 27, 1977
October 18, 1978 through November 28, 1978
May 24, 1980 through July 6, 1980
December 31, 1981 through February 10, 1982

The retrograde period of Venus occurs every 19 months, plus a few days, and its duration is consistently about six weeks (see charts at end of chapter).

Obviously, not enough data is present to justify firm conclusions, but what has happened so far concerning gold prices during these times is quite remarkable and warrants further scrutiny in the future. Looking at the weekly chart on gold prices also indicates that prior to 1975, the Venus retrograde periods were likewise quite outstanding.

In the study of astrology, Venus represents values and assets, the need for material security. It also rules love and partnerships, the usual association people make with Venus. During retrograde Venus periods there is often an uncertainty in the air about the direction of the economy. Confusing messages about money and credit are communicated by the government and frequently interest rates become rather volatile. Such behavior naturally has an effect upon the price of gold, for its value is directly related to the value of the dollar: if people see the dollar increasing in value, then the worth of gold usually decreases, and vice-versa.

In four of the five cases analyzed, it appeared that the Venus retrograde periods correlated to a strengthening of the dollar, for gold prices fell rather heavily. In the fifth case, the exact opposite was true: the dollar fell drastically and gold prices rose just as dramatically.

8/6/75	PT(-6)	TB**(+2)	-BO(+2)	Sharp drop began 6 days before
3/16/77	PT(+5)	-MB(-2)		Sharp rise next 5 days, then sharp drop
10/18/78	PT(+8)	TB(+1)		Sharp rise next 8 days, then sharp drop
5/24/80	½PT(-2)			Sharp rise next 2 weeks
12/31/81	TT(+2)	-BO(+6)		Sharp drop began in 2 days

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	2.40	4.60**
Crest	=	+0.20	+3.20*
Trough	=	-1.83	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.00*	5.00**
Crest	=	+0.00	+3.00
Trough	=	-3.00	-4.00*
C/S Index			
Total	=	6.40*	9.60**
Crest	=	+0.20	6.20
Trough	=	-4.83	-7.00*

A most interesting phenomenon occurred in four of the five cases studied. Within eight trading days of Venus retrograde, prices commenced in a rather steep and straight direction, right up to the time period of changing to a direct motion (see graphs at end of this chapter). The exception was the last retrograde period of December 31, 1981. Even here, though, a breakout down through the support level occurred within a week, but this downslide did not end until well after the direct motion date.

As to cycles present during a three-day central time band, troughs seem much more likely than crests. In fact, in no instances did a prominent crest emerge. Troughs, however, appeared with a 60% frequency level but their relative strength was not significant. Allowing an eight-day orb, extremely significant and powerful cycles unfolded, including three primary crests, one ½-primary trough, and a downside breakout. The direction of the trend by this time became very sharp and defined.

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Very powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within eight*

trading days of Venus retrograde (100%). At that point, a sharp and defined trend in prices is likely to follow to at least the time that Venus goes direct.

#4 Venus Direct

9/18/75	PB(+3)	½PT(+10)	End of long decline which began at Venus retrograde
4/27/77	MB(+1)	DT(+7)	End of long decline which began at Venus retrograde
11/28/78	PB(+2)	TT**(+7)	End of long decline which began at Venus retrograde
7/6/80	PT(+2)	-DB(+10)	End of long rise which began at Venus retrograde
2/10/82	TT(0)	-BO(+5)	No trend during retrograde, but steep breakout down right afterwards, correlating with Mars retrograde

Relative Strength			Central Period	5-Day Period
Total	=		3.80*	4.40**
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**5-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.00*	5.00**
C/S Index	=	8.80*	7.80*	9.40**

Gold price cycles at the time of Venus direct were much more evident than at the retrograde date. Here a cycle was clearly achieved within only three trading days whereas at the retrograde, the culmination may have been up to eight days either side of the date. Also, in every case except the last, the Venus direct period correlated with a cycle that was opposite in nature than the one present at the retrograde. For example, in the first three instances, powerful crests were present around the time of Venus retrograde. But, by the time Venus went direct, powerful troughs resulted. In the fourth example, a ½-primary bottom occurred during the Venus retrograde time band, followed by a primary top two days after the Venus direct date.

The fifth case did not follow the same pattern, yet revealed significant cycles in gold prices. Shortly after both the retrograde and direct Venus dates, a downside breakout of a support level took place, leading to sharply lower prices immediately afterwards. It appears that definite trends will begin with a very powerful cycle around the time of Venus retrograde, ending with equally powerful but opposite cycles at the time of the direct, and in those cases where such cycles are absent at the retrograde, they will also be missing at the direct. However, in the latter possibilities, something else significant may happen at the time of both geocosmic events, like a breakout, still leading prices into a definite trend.

Conclusions: Powerful and consistent cycles in gold prices tend to unfold within five trading days after Venus goes direct (100%). In most cases (80%), these cycles will be the opposite in nature of cycles present around the time of Venus direct, thus signalling an end to a trend.

As indicated, well-defined price trends seem apparent during Venus retrograde periods, either straight up or straight down, except in the last instance. The following is a list of the percent of price change from the retrograde to the direct gold price cycle. Bear in mind that these percentages are measured on futures contracts, not current price, and also that they are a result of the price change divided by the lower price in order to reflect consistency of profits to be realized by going long or selling short.

1. 37.2% (down)
2. 7.9% (down)
3. 30.4% (down)
4. 38.2% (up)
5. 11.6% (down)

The average price change of gold from Venus retrograde cycle to direct cycle was 25%.

POST-VENUS DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

After Venus returned to direct motion, several time windows of well-defined gold price cycles were noticed. Once again, lists are provided of the distribution of cycles present during these time windows, and they are broken down further into both crests and troughs in order that the reader may see the odds of the opposite type of cycle appearing during each.

Five to Seven Week Post-Venus Direct Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (five cases):

Trough	Crest
3 PB	1 PT
1 MB	1 MT
1 -MB	1 -TT**

			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-4.00**	+2.50
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.00
C/S Index	=	-9.00*	+5.50

Conclusion: Every five to seven weeks after Venus goes direct, a rather powerful trough tends to appear in gold prices (100%).

Seven to Nine Week Post-Venus Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (five cases):

		Trough	Crest
		1 PB	2 PT
		1 MB	1 MT
		1 TB**	2 TT**
		1 TB*	
Relative Strength	=	-2.50	+3.60*
Relative Consistency	=	-3.00	+5.00**
C/S Index	=	-5.50	+8.60*

Conclusion: A somewhat powerful crest in gold prices tends to occur every seven to nine weeks after Venus goes direct (100%). This crest immediately follows (i.e. less than two weeks, usually only one week) a prominent trough (100%).

12-14 Week Post-Venus Direct Crest and Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (five cases):

		Trough	Crest
		1 ½PB	3 PT
		3 MB	1 ½PT
		1 -MB	1-TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.00*	+4.20**
Relative Consistency	=	-4.00*	+4.00*
C/S Index	=	-7.00*	+8.20*

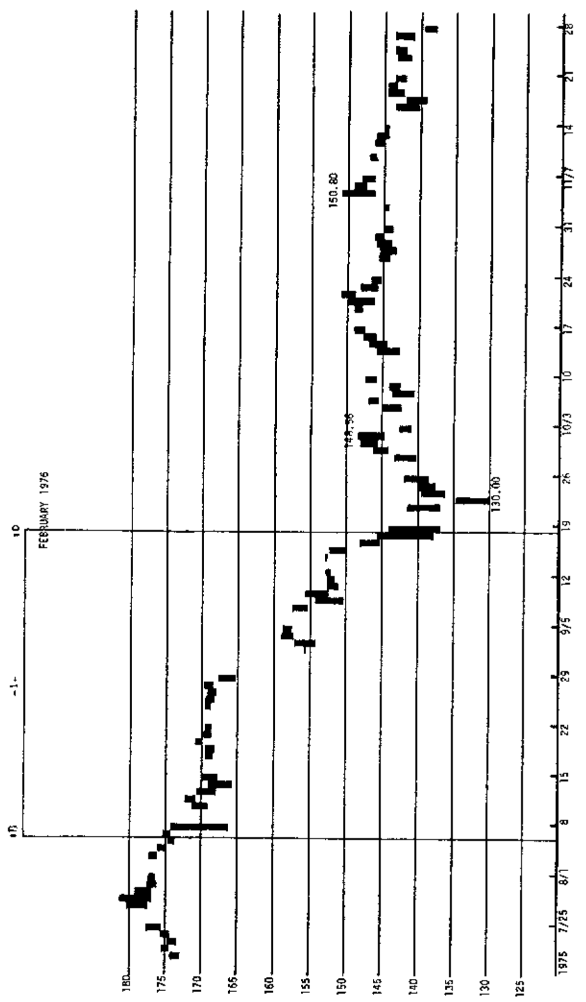
The interesting thing about this time band is its volatility. Both types of cycles tend to appear. Only in the last instance did a 7% trading crest fail to appear, though one of 5+% did. That last case was the one where all other patterns fell down, too. Thus, it may be that when Venus retrograde periods coincide with a straight price trend, then powerful crests emerge

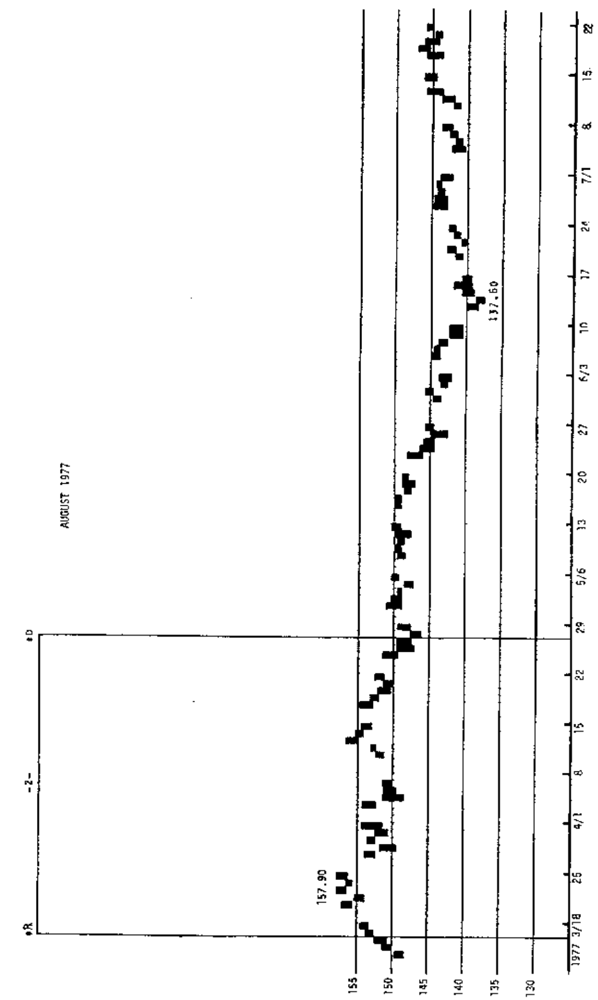
12–14 weeks later, for surely the crests were more powerful than the troughs during this time window. Regardless of what happened during Venus retrograde with gold prices, major troughs appeared during this time window in every instance. However, if crests appeared also, they were more likely to be on the order of a primary level. It is also interesting to note that in the last case the twelve to fourteen week post-Venus direct crest coincided with the twelve to fourteen week post-Mercury direct trough, and the Mercury cycle emerged the stronger.

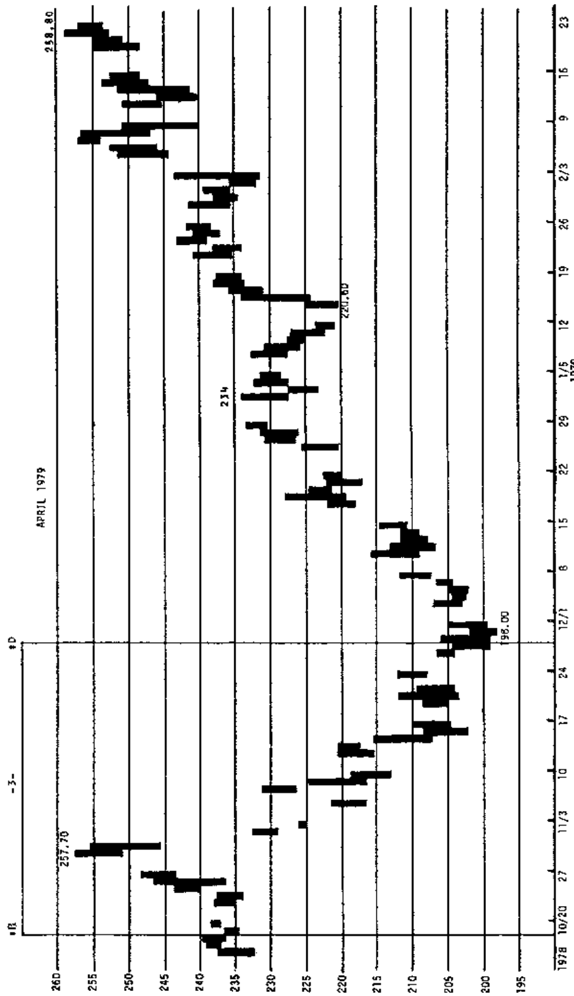
Conclusions: Major troughs in gold prices tend to occur twelve to fourteen weeks after Venus goes direct (80%). Primary crests are also likely to occur during this time band (80%) which are much more powerful than the troughs. However, if the Venus retrograde cycle does not coincide with a sharp and defined price trend, the crest may not be of a primary nature.

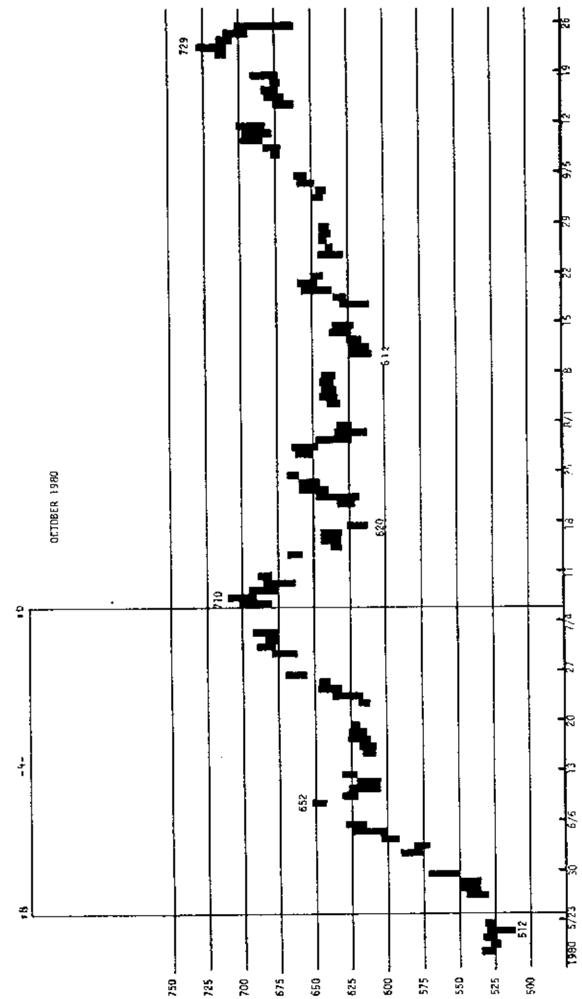
Other post-Venus direct cycles may be present, though the sample is even smaller for examination than that already used. For instance, there is a suggestion of a **sixteen to twenty week powerful trough.** In four cases analyzed, three primary bottoms and one major bottom have been noticed here, whereas only two powerful crests have been present.

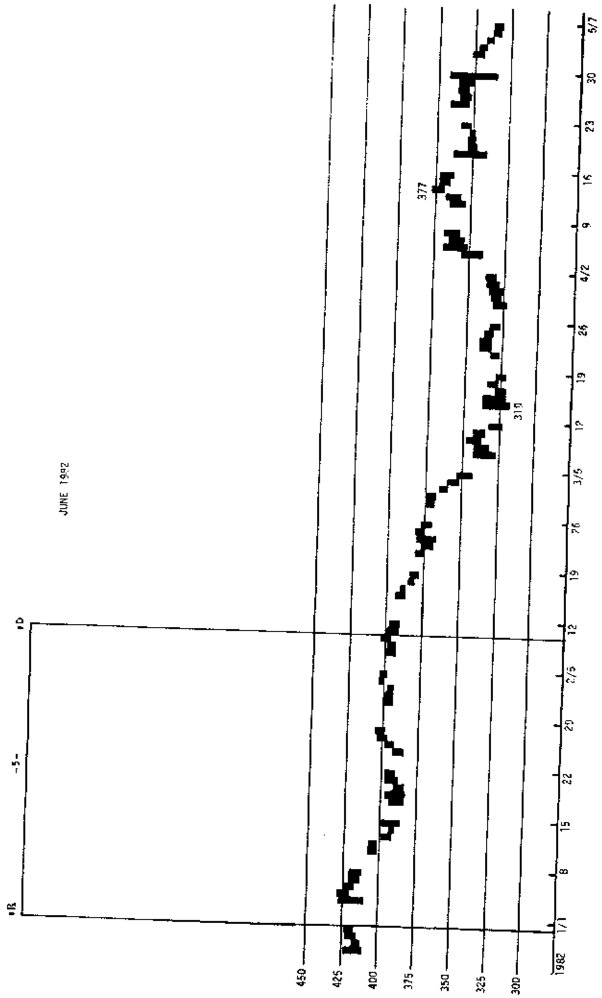
Though the samples used have been very small, results so far imply the existence of a Venus effect upon the price of gold. On the following pages are graphs of the Venus retrograde periods.


FEBRUARY 1976
150.80
130.00


AUGUST 1977
137.60
157.90


APRIL 1979
258.80
257.70
234
220.60
198.00


OCTOBER 1980
729
710
652
620
612
512



CHAPTER EIGHT

THE MARS EFFECT

Since 1975, Mars has had four retrograde periods:

November 6, 1975 through January 21, 1976
December 12, 1977 through March 2, 1978
January 16, 1980 through April 6, 1980
February 20, 1982 through May 11, 1982

The retrogradation of Mars occurs about every 25 months. Its duration is approximately 11-12 weeks (see charts at end of chapter).

To students of astrology, Mars corresponds to the concepts of action, motivation, aggression, impulse and hostility. During periods of Mars retrograde, there tends to be political tension on an international level. There is a sense of an impending military crisis and a general fear that something could suddenly spark off war-like actions. Usually, though, this fear is unrealized, for in priniciple, opposing sides are suspicious of each other and no real hostility is actually initiated or, if it is, the initiator tends to find that such action boomerangs and others turn against the aggressor.

#5 Mars Retrograde

11/6/75	PT(-1)		Never attained this high until 36 weeks later
12/12/77	DB(0)		Has never been this low since
1/16/80	PT(+3)		All-time high
2/20/82	TB**(+3)	-BO(-2)	Breakout down to lowest price in 2½ years

Relative Strength = 4.50**
Relative Consistency = 5.00**
C/S Index = 9.50**

In every instance observed, a powerful cycle in gold prices occurred within three trading days of Mars retrograde. In the first three instances, definite and well-defined trends began with the Mars retrograde and continued for several weeks later, culminating in the opposite type of cycle at the Mars direct period (see graphs at beginning of chapter). It is also interesting to note just how significant these cycles have been. In the first case, the primary top was the highest level of gold prices in 43 weeks (seven before and 36 after). In the second case, Mars retrograde correlated with a double bottom in gold prices, nearly matching the lowest price in the ten weeks preceding the aspect. However, more importantly, prices have not returned that low since then. In the third instance, the highest prices ever achieved in gold occurred just three trading days after the Mars retrograde date. And in the last occurrence of this signature, a breakout downward in prices just two days before led to the lowest prices in gold in over two and a half years, culminating in this new primary trough four weeks later. Thus, when Mars goes retrograde, it is likely that something very dramatic and noteworthy will take place in gold prices.

Conclusions: Within three trading days of Mars retrograde, powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur, either culminating or leading into long-term highs and lows (100%).

#6 Mars Direct

1/21/76	PB(0)	Lowest price in 74 weeks, next low not until 24 weeks later
3/2/78	PT(+4)	Highest price in 3 years, not reached again until 19 weeks later
4/6/80	DB(-1)	Lowest price in 14 weeks, not realized again until 40 weeks after other leg of DB
5/11/82	½PB(-1)	4 weeks after PT

Relative Strength = 4.50**
Relative Consistency = 5.00**
C/S Index = 9.50**

In much the same manner as Mars retrograde, this signature seems to suggest very noteworthy long-term cycles. The first occurrence of Mars direct coincided with the lowest prices in gold in a 98-week period. The next correlated with the highest prices of gold in three years, not to be realized again until four months later. In the third case, prices dipped below the

$500.00 level. Though that happened again a couple of weeks later, a support level in the $490.00 region was defined, not to be penetrated again for 40 weeks. In the last case, prices again dove down. As this book is being written shortly after this last Mars direct, it is interesting to note that many cycle's analysts are calling for the five to six year bottom in gold prices at this time.

In all but the last case, an undeniably powerful cycle occurred at the time of the direct. This cycle was opposite the type present during the retrograde. And, as indicated, these cycles were climaxes that held or occurred over a very long period. In many cases, the crest or trough achieved was the most extreme in years. In the last instance of a Mars retrograde cycle, a primary trough was realized four weeks into the cycle, and a primary crest four weeks before the direct. It was as if the customary cycles were bunched equidistant inside the retrograde and direct dates, instead of at the boundaries of the signature. In other words, the big bottom happened four weeks after the retrograde date, four weeks before the direct date and there were four weeks between the two cycles.

Taking this into account, and calling the last cycle a bottom to top, then the percentage of price changes during a Mars retrograde cycle has been quite impressive, as shown below:

1. 22.2% (down)
2. 21.2% (up)
3. 79% (down)
4. 18.2% (up)

One might readily identify what could turn out to be an interesting phenomenon. A trend of successively different natures may unfold during Mars retrograde periods. In other words, if a given cycle coincides with an upward trend in gold prices, then the next Mars retrograde cycle may coincide with a downward trend, followed by an upward trend the time after that. Except for case three, price changes seemed rather stable in the 18-22% range.

Conclusions: Very powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Mars direct (100%).

POST-MARS DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

Only three cases exist in which analysis could be made of possible post-Mars direct time windows. As the sample is so small, only possibilities of such cycles will be mentioned here.

There may be evidence for a *one-two week post-Mars direct crest cycle.* In the instances observed, one primary, one major and one 7% trading cycle crests have appeared. During that same span, only one prominent trading trough occurred.

There is likely a *five-eight week post-Mars direct trough cycle.* It may even be more of a six-eight week cycle. In the charts analyzed, one primary, one ½ primary and one major bottom have been noted. During the same time span, only one major crest appeared. The relative strength so far for this is -3.67 and the consistency is so far -5.00.

Another possible cycle is the *eight-ten week post-Mars direct crest cycle.* A major crest has been observed in every instance. However, prominent troughs have also appeared in every case.

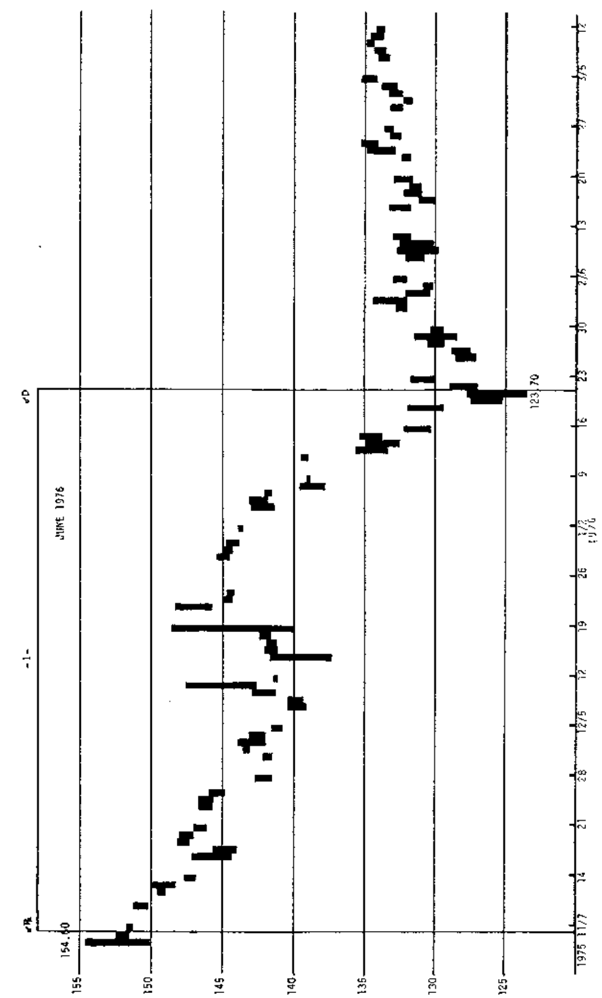
There is also an indication of a *13-14 week post-Mars direct crest cycle.* In the three samples present, there has been a primary, double and non-prominent major crest observed, and no troughs.

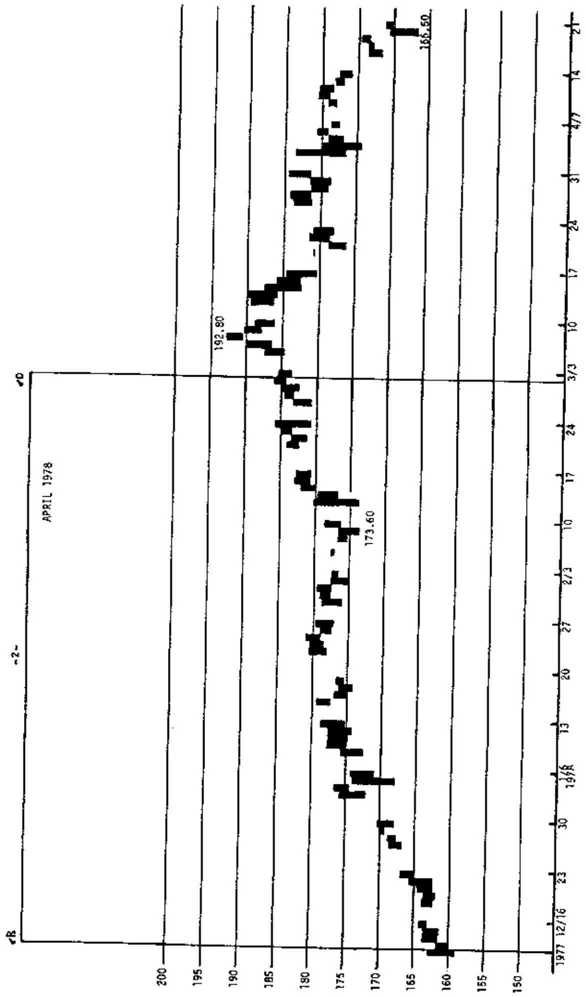
Three major bottoms have unfolded exactly 15 weeks after Mars direct. However, since this is such a narrow time band, and the cycles are not exceedingly strong, one should be suspicious of what so far appears to be a *15-week post-Mars direct trough cycle.*

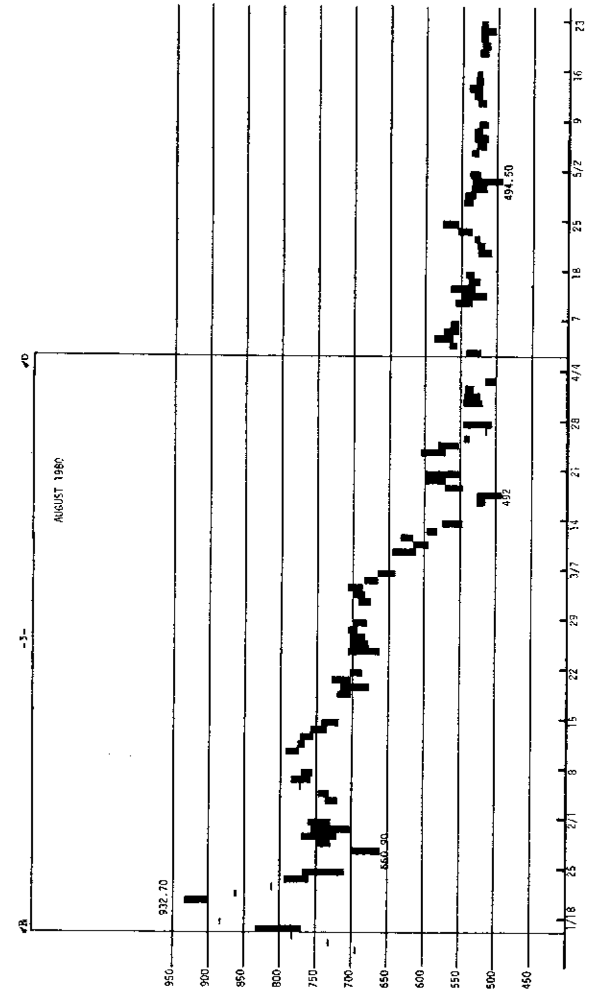
What may be more significant is the suggestion of an *18-20 week post-Mars direct trough cycle.* During this interval, two primary and one major trough have arisen in three cases studied.

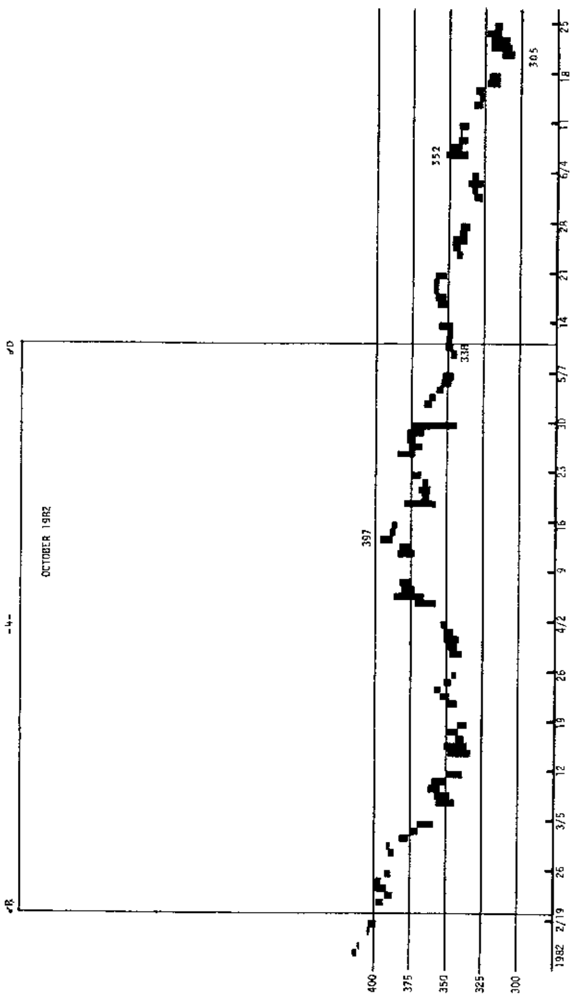
Finally, there is an indication that a *25-26 week post-Mars direct trough cycle* may exist. In three cases observed, one primary, one ½ primary and a major bottom have occurred. However, two primary tops also happened at the 24-25 week interval.

Though the sample is so far very small, the results do seem to indicate a very real Mars effect with the price of gold. On the following pages are graphs of the Mars retrograde periods.




APRIL 1978
192.80
173.60
166.50


AUGUST 1980
932.70
660.90
494.50
492



CHAPTER NINE

THE JUPITER EFFECT

The planets Mercury, Venus and Mars are known as the *personal planets*. This is because: 1) they are closest physically to Earth; and 2) their principles seem most apparent in the day-to-day living of individuals.

The planets of Jupiter and beyond are referred to as *impersonal planets*. Their distance from Earth is much greater and their astrological correlations to individual life less personal than the others.

Since 1975, Jupiter has had seven retrograde periods:

August 14, 1975 through December 10, 1975
September 19, 1976 through January 5, 1977
October 24, 1977 through February 20, 1978
November 25, 1978 through March 26, 1979
December 26, 1979 through April 26, 1980
January 24, 1981 through May 27, 1981
February 24, 1982 through June 27, 1982

The duration of Jupiter's retrograde period averages 17 weeks. It commences this motion every 13 months. In the study of astrology, Jupiter is said to rule such concepts as hope, optimism, expansion, excess and areas of life including travel, education, foreign affairs and friendships.

#7 Jupiter Retrograde

8/14/75	½PB(0)	End of sharp 2-week drop, slight rise next week

9/19/76	½PT(-1)	-DB(-3)		Began sharp 2-week drop after sharp 3-week rise
10/24/77	TT*(0)	TB(+4)		Sharp 1-week drop followed, end of long rise
11/25/78	TT*(-1)	PB(+4)		Sharp drop next week
12/26/79	MB(-3)	TT*(-3)		Sharp rise next 3 weeks
1/24/81	TT*(-3)	-BO(+1)	½PB(+6)	Sharp 2-week drop began 3 days before
2/24/82	TB**(0)	-BO(-4)		Sharp 3-week drop followed

Relative Strength		Central Period (4 Days)
Total	=	3.71*
Crest	=	+1.71
Trough	=	-3.57*

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central (4 Days)
Total	=	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*
Trough	=	-4.286*

C/S Index		
Total	=	8.71*
Crest	=	+5.28
Trough	=	-7.86*

In six of the seven cases observed, prominent cycles in gold prices unfolded within one trading day of Jupiter retrograde. If an orb of four days were allowed, then rather powerful cycles coincided with this signature in every instance. In most cases, Jupiter retrograde concurred with the end of a cycle and was then followed by a sharp direction in prices for at least one week (100%) and, in some cases, lasting three weeks. In several cases, prominent trading tops were apparent at the time of the retrograde (57.1%), but more frequently, a sharp drop in prices immediately followed or coincided with this signature (71.4%). In all cases, a sharp movement in gold prices either ended or began with Jupiter retrograde.

Also interesting to note is the fact that if a trading crest concurred with Jupiter retrograde, it did so before or on the date of the astrophysical event, never afterwards.

Conclusions: *Somewhat powerful troughs or downward breakouts tend to occur within four days of Jupiter direct (86%). Sharp movement in prices usually begin or end with the retrograde; if beginning, they are quite short (i.e. one to three weeks). If a crest cycle occurs, it tends to do so on or before the retrograde date, followed immediately by a sharp drop in prices.*

POST-JUPITER RETROGRADE TIME WINDOWS

In the case of Mercury, Venus and Mars, no consistent time bands were found during the retrograde motion that coincided with powerful cycles in gold prices. However, that pattern does start to unfold with the retrograde cycles of Jupiter. In this instance, two such time windows appear to exist.

Seven to Nine Week Post-Jupiter Retrograde Crest

The distribution of cycles during this time period was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		3 PT	1 DB
		1 ½PT	1 MB
		2 TT**	1 -DB
			2 TB**
			1 TB*
Relative Strength	=	+3.43*	-2.43
Relative Consistency	=	+4.29*	-3.57*
C/S Index	=	+7.72*	-6.00

Conclusions: *Rather powerful crests tend to occur seven to nine weeks after Jupiter retrograde (85.7%). However, prominent troughs may also appear (71.4%), but they will be considerably less powerful.*

12-13 Week Post-Jupiter Retrograde Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		3 PT	1 PB
		1 ½PT	1 MB
		2 TT**	1-TB*
		1 TT*	
Relative Strength	=	+3.71*	-1.43
Relative Consistency	=	+4.29*	-1.43
C/S Index	=	+8.00*	-2.86

Conclusions: *Powerful crests tend to occur consistently 12-13 weeks after Jupiter retrograde (85.8%).*

#8 Jupiter Direct

12/10/75	TT(+1)	½PB(−2)	PT(+7)	1 day rise, drop 3 days, then sharp rise 7 days later
1/5/77	MT(−1)	PB(+3)		Sharp 4-day drop began day before
2/20/78	TT**(+4)	+BO(−3)		Sharp 4-week rise began 3 days before
3/26/79	½PT(0)			Sharp 4-day and 3-week drop began that day
4/26/80	MT(−1)	DB(+4)		Sharp 4-day drop began
5/27/81	TB*(−2)	TT(+3)	MB(+7)	4-day rise began day before, then very sharp drop for 4 days as Mars opposed Uranus

Relative Strength			4-Day Central	7-Day Period
Total	=		3.33*	4.17**
Crest	=		+2.67	+3.33*
Trough	=		−2.33	−2.50
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+5.00**	+3.33*	+4.17*
Trough	=	−3.33*	−3.33*	−3.33*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.33*	8.33*	9.17**
Crest	=	+7.67*	+6.00	+7.50*
Trough	=	−5.67	−5.67	−5.83

The most evident thing about this signature is its correlation with crests, particularly in the first five instances. In four of the six cases studied, a significant crest occurred within only one trading day of Jupiter going direct. In the other two cases, significant crests were achieved within four days afterwards. In many cases, the direct motion of Jupiter coincided with a sharp four day drop in prices (66.7%) after a crest.

Conclusions: Significant crests tend to occur within four trading days of Jupiter turning direct (100%), and usually within only one trading day (66.7%). A sharp and short movement in prices tends to immediately follow (83.3%).

POST-JUPITER DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

One-Three Week Post-Jupiter Direct Powerful Cycle

The distribution of gold cycles present during this time band was as follows (six cases):

		Trough	Crest	Total
		2 PB	2 PT	
		1 DB	1 TT**	
		1 MB	3 TT*	
		1 TB*		
Relative Strength	=	−3.17*	+3.08*	4.50**
Relative Consistency	=	−3.33*	+2.50	5.00**
C/S Index	=	−6.40*	+5.58	9.50**

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to appear within three weeks after Jupiter turns direct (100%). The likelihood of it being a trough (66.7%) is slightly greater than a crest (50%).

10-12 Week Post-Jupiter Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (six cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	1 PB
		1 ½PT	2 -MB
		2 MT	1 -DB
		1 -DT	
Relative Strength	=	+3.83*	−2.00
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	−1.67
C/S Index	=	+8.33*	−3.67

Conclusions: Somewhat powerful crests tend to occur 10–12 weeks following Jupiter direct (100%). These crests are at least as powerful as a major cycle.

16-19 Week Post-Jupiter Direct Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (six cases):

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	2 PT
		2 ½PB	1 ½PT
		2 MB	1 TT**
Relative Strength	=	−4.00**	+2.75
Relative Consistency	=	−5.00**	+3.33*
C/S Index	=	−9.00**	+6.08

Conclusions: 16–19 weeks following Jupiter direct, powerful troughs of at least a major level tend to occur (100%).

Once more, it appears that there is indeed a Jupiter effect upon gold price cycles.

CHAPTER TEN

THE SATURN EFFECT

Since 1975, Saturn has had the following retrograde periods:

November 14, 1975 through March 27, 1976
November 27, 1976 through April 11, 1977
December 11, 1977 through April 25, 1978
December 24, 1978 through May 9, 1979
January 6, 1980 through May 22, 1980
January 18, 1981 thorugh June 5, 1981
January 31, 1982 through June 18, 1982

The amount of time between retrogrades is approximately 54 weeks. The duration of time in which Saturn is retrograde is about 19 weeks. In the study of astrology, Saturn refers to the principles of control, restraint, caution, responsibility, and, even, depression. The areas of life usually ascribed to Saturn include government, management, profession and those persons considered "superiors." Saturn represents the rules, the traditions and the need to accomplish. Thus, at the time of its retrograde, these characteristics are usually *more* evident. Controls seem tighter, people in positions of rulership seem more cautious and restrictive.

Given the usual associations made with Saturn, it may not be surprising to find that the prices of gold are usually suppressed at the time of Saturn stations. This was not always the case, but in the 13 instances analyzed, 12 significant bottoms occurred within four trading days (92.3%). In the other case, January 31, 1982, a major top was really quite small and prices dropped the next three trading days.

#9 Saturn Retrograde

11/14/75	TB**(+2)	PT(-7)		8-day sharp drop ended in 2 days, slight rise then further drop next 3 weeks
11/27/76	MB(+1)	TT*(-4)		5-day sharp drop ended next day, then 2-week rise
12/11/77	DB(0)	TT*(-3)		3-day sharp drop ended day of, then 4-week rise
12/24/78	TB*(-2)	TT**(-4)	MT(+5)	3-day sharp drop ended day before, then 5-day rise started next day
1/6/80	TT**(+1)	TB**(+4)		End of long rise, sharp drop next 4 days, then great 7-day rise
1/18/81	TB*(-3)	TT*(+3)	-BO(+4)	Slight rise 3 days before and after, followed by very sharp 2-week drop. End of 3-week drop
1/31/82	MT(-1)	TB(+3)	½PB(-8)	End of 5-day rise, sharp drop next 7 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.71	3.50*
Crest	=		+1.36	+3.07*
Trough	=		-2.07	-2.71

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-4.29*	-3.57*	-4.29*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.71*	7.71*	8.50*
Crest	=	+4.22	+4.22	+8.07*
Trough	=	-6.36*	-5.64	-7.00*

The most outstanding feature of the Saturn retrograde period seemed to be the depression upon prices followed by a short and sharp upturn. In five of seven instances (71.4%), sharp declines in prices ended within three days of Saturn retrograde. In six cases, prices began to rise immediately after this date, usually lasting through at least the next week (85.7%). In all cases, a sharp price trend ended with the retrograde date (there were two instances where a sharp up-trend ended).

During the central time band, significant troughs were usually present (100%, given a four-day trading band). However, these were often preceded by a significant, and usually more powerful crest of up to seven days before through three days later (100%).

Conclusions: Significant troughs in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Saturn retrograde (100%). These are usually prominent in nature (85.7%), and closely follow a somewhat powerful crest (100%). In many cases, the retrograde date correlates with an end of a short, sharp *price direction (100%), often being the end of a trough (71.4%) in which short, sharp rises follow.*

POST-SATURN RETROGRADE TIME WINDOWS

Three to Four Week Post-Saturn Retrograde Trough

In seven cases analyzed, troughs of at least a prominent nature were present at the three to four week interval after Saturn went retrograde. In one of these cases, the cycle was a prominent trading bottom of only a 6.2% wave.

The distribution of cycles present during this time period was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		1 -BO	1 PT
		2 ½PB	1 +BO
		2 MB	1 MT
		1 -MB	
		1 TB*	
Relative Strength	=	-3.14*	+1.71
Relative Consistency	=	-3.57*	+2.14
C/S Index	=	-6.71*	+3.85

<u>Conclusions</u>: *Prominent, but not extremely powerful troughs in gold prices tend to appear three to four weeks after Saturn retrograde (100%).*

Seven to Eight Week Post-Saturn Retrograde Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	1 PT
		1 -DB	1 DT
		3 TB**	1 -TT**
			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.64*	+1.92
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+2.14
C/S Index	=	-8.64*	+4.07

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Prominent troughs in gold prices tend to occur seven to eight weeks after Saturn retrograde (100%).*

12-14 Week Post-Saturn Retrograde Crest

This cycle frequently coincides with a higher crest at the 10-12 week post-Saturn retrograde interval (85.7%). However, it has been noted with 100% consistency at the 12-14 week duration, and with less occurrence of prominent troughs. Thus, the student should realize the possibility of the *culmination* of a strong crest may actually transpire slightly before this time window (see cases six and seven in which primary crests were present at 10 and 11 weeks, respectively, and seven percent trading crests were present at 14 and 13 weeks, respectively).

The distribution of cycles present during this time frame was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	1 DB
		1 ½PT	1 MB
		1 +BO	1 -TB*
		1 MT	
		2 TT**	
Relative Strength	=	+3.71*	-1.29
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-1.43
C/S Index	=	+8.71*	-2.72

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Powerful crests tend to occur in gold prices 12-14 weeks after Saturn turns retrograde (100%). Sometimes a more powerful crest (i.e. primary in nature) will occur at the 10 or 11 week interval, followed by another less powerful crest during this time window.*

15-17 Week Post-Saturn Retrograde Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		1 PB	1 PT
		2 ½PB	2 MT
		1 MB	1 -DT
		2 -MB	1 TT**
		1 TB**	1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.21*	+2.78
Relative Consistency	=	-3.57*	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-6.78*	+6.36

This is a rather volatile period, as indicated by the presence of five prominent trading crests. However, the troughs are generally more powerful in nature.

Conclusions: Somewhat powerful troughs tend to occur in gold prices 15–17 weeks after Saturn retrograde (71.4%). In most cases, this cycle will culminate in the 16th or 17th week.

#10 Saturn Direct

3/27/76	TB**(+2)	MT(-7)	End of sharp 2-week drop; prices remained depressed for next 9 weeks
4/11/77	DT(+2)	TB*(-3)	End of 2-week drop, short 2-day rise, then another sharp 9-week drop
4/25/78	PB(0)	MT(+7)	End of sharp 3-week drop, began 5-week rise
5/9/79	TB(-1)	+BO(+8)	End of sharp 1-day drop, perhaps 1 week; sharp 11-week rise followed
5/22/80	½PB(0)		End of sharp 6-day drop, followed by sharp 7-week rise
6/5/81	MB(0)	TT*(+1)	End of sharp 4-day drop, sharp rise next day, then 9-week drop

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		3.25*	3.83*
Crest	=		+1.00	+2.29
Trough	=		-2.58	-2.92

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.67	+1.67	+4.17*
Trough	=	-4.17*	-3.33*	-4.17*

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.25*	7.42*	8.83*
Crest	=	+2.67	+2.67	+6.46
Trough	=	-6.75	-5.91	-7.09

The results of cycles analyzed at the time of Saturn direct are considerably more impressive than those surrounding the date of retrograde. In every case, a significant cycle occurred within two days of Saturn direct. In five of these six instances, that cycle was a trough. In the sixth case, a trough did occur three days prior to the direct Saturn date. Also, in every case, the Saturn direct date coincided with the end of a sharp and short price decline. Rises in prices followed, though in many cases for only a very short time. More important was the observation that long price trends followed, lasting five to eleven weeks afterwards. These price trends

were evenly split between rises and declines (three series of each). Thus, once more the Saturn stationary period is seen as a suppressor to gold prices. Also, the strength of this suppression is somewhat greater than that present at the time of the retrograde.

Conclusions: Significant troughs in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Saturn direct (100%). In most cases, the cycle is at least prominent (83.3%), and occurs within only two trading days of the direct motion (83.3%). Furthermore, Saturn direct tends to correlate with the end of a short and sharp drop in gold prices (100%), followed by at least a short and sharp rise in prices (100%). A long-term price trend in gold prices tends to emerge right after Saturn direct, usually lasting at least five weeks (100%).

POST-SATURN DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

Seven to Nine Week Post-Saturn Direct Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time interval was as follows (six cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	1 PT
		1 ½PB	1 ½PT
		1 MB	1 TT*
		1 DB	
Relative Strength	=	-4.17**	+1.50
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+1.83
C/S Index	=	-9.17**	+3.33

Conclusions: Powerful troughs in gold prices tend to occur seven to nine weeks after Saturn turns direct (100%).

10–12 Week Post-Saturn Direct Crest

This time interval coincided with prominent crests in every instance. However, in one case, the crest of a trading cycle measured at only the 5% level. That cycle was added into the relative strength calculations but not into the relative consistency score.

The distribution of cycles present 10–12 weeks after Saturn direct was as follows (six cases):

	Crest	Trough
	2 PT	1 PB
	1 +BO	1 -MB
	2 MT	1 TB**
	1 TT*	
Relative Strength =	+3.67*	-1.58
Relative Consistency =	+4.17*	-1.66
C/S Index =	+7.84*	-3.24

Conclusions: Powerful crests tend to occur in gold prices 10–12 weeks after Saturn turns direct (83.3%).

15–18 Week Post-Saturn Direct Crest

This is one of the most volatile time bands so far uncovered. During this interval, powerful cycles of both types tend to appear. Thus, the trader might anticipate a sharp and sudden reversal of prices after the first cycle emerges. The distribution of cycles present during this period was as follows (six cases):

	Crest	Trough
	3 PT	1 PB
	1 ½PT	3 ½PB
	1 +BO	1 -MB
	1 MT	1 TB*
Relative Strength =	+4.33**	-3.50*
Relative Consistency =	+5.00**	-3.57*
C/S Index =	+9.33**	-7.07*

Regarding this time window, it is interesting to note that it could be contracted to 16–18 weeks. In series four, an upside breakout happened in the 15th week, while a 7% trading crest happened in the 17th. Interchanging these two phenomena decreases the relative strength of the crest to 4.00 while consistency level holds the same.

Conclusions: Powerful crests in gold cycles tend to occur 15–18 weeks following Saturn direct (100%). Prominent troughs also appear frequently (83.3%), suggesting this to be a very volatile time window.

Once more, the results indicate the strong possibility of a Saturn effect upon gold prices.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

THE URANUS EFFECT

Since 1975, Uranus has had the following retrograde periods:

February 6, 1975 through July 7, 1975
February 10, 1976 through July 11, 1976
February 14, 1977 through July 16, 1977
February 19, 1978 through July 21, 1978
February 24, 1979 through July 26, 1979
February 29, 1980 through July 30, 1980
March 5, 1981 through August 4, 1981
March 9, 1982 through August 9, 1982

The amount of time separating one Uranus retrograde period from another is one year plus 45 days. The duration of time present during the retrograde period is approximately 21–22 weeks. In astrology, the Uranus effect relates to such principles as sudden changes, divorces, separations, attraction to the new, the unexpected, detachment, alienation and originality. The areas of life associated with Uranus include technology, aerospace, computers, media, airplanes, futuristics and electronics as well as very modern sciences. At the time of Uranus stations, it is not surprising to find sudden and drastic shifts in the price of gold, as if the prices are "separating" from past behavior, and "seeking" new levels of experience.

The sudden changes in prices were in fact observed in the seven periods Uranus went retrograde and seven in which it returned to direct. Again, the retrograde time did not seem as consistently striking nor timely as the direct date.

#11 Uranus Retrograde

2/10/76	TB(0)	MT(-5)	-DT(+10)	Erratic; reversed 5-day drop, then up next 5 weeks
2/14/77	TB(-1)	+BO(+9)		Reversed 3-day drop, then up next 4 weeks
2/19/78	+BO(-3)	½PB(-7)		Sharp up began 7 days before through next 12 days
2/24/79	PT(-2)	MB(+6)		Powerful reversal of up trend; sharp drop next 6 days and next 8 weeks
2/29/80	TT*(+3)	TB**(-4)		Sharp reversal down next 3 weeks after 1 week rally ended in 3 days
3/5/81	PB(-1)	TT**(+4)	-BO(-3)	Powerful reversal of long downtrend, sharp rally next 3 weeks
3/9/82	TT*(+1)	PB(+4)		Powerful reversal of downtrend in 4 days; sharp rally next 4 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.86	3.64*
Crest	=		+1.86	+2.64
Trough	=		-1.00	-3.07*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	3.57*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.86	+4.29*
Trough	=	-2.14	-0.71	-3.57*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.86*	6.43*	7.93*
Crest	=	+4.72	+4.72	+6.93*
Trough	=	-3.14	-1.71	-6.64*

As expected, the period surrounding the Uranus retrograde date coincided with reversals in gold price directions. Sometimes this reversal was immediate, sometimes it was up to a week either side of the retrograde date. In many instances, prices became very volatile at this time. In four cases, breakouts occurred within 12 trading days of this signature.

Significant cycles in gold prices occurred close to the date of the retrograde Uranus in every instance. They were not always powerful, though, but they were followed by powerful cycles within three weeks. Prominent crests were much more frequent than prominent troughs during the central time band, but not frequent enough to be considered reliable. Powerful cycles of both types occurred given a seven-day orb.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Uranus retrograde (100%). These are not necessarily prominent in nature (71.4%), but when so, they are more likely to be crests than troughs (57.2%). Prices are apt to fluctuate greatly during this time period, with breakouts (57.2%) and reversals of price trends (71.4%) common.

POST-URANUS RETROGRADE TIME BANDS

One to Three Week Post-Uranus Retrograde Powerful Cycle

Within three weeks after Uranus retrograde, powerful cycles have been noted to appear. These are usually opposite in nature to the cycle present during the central time band (100%). The distribution of cycles present during this period was as follows (seven cases):

		Total	Crest	Trough
		4 PC	2 PT	2 PB
		1 +BO	1 +BO	1 MB
		1 -DT	2 -DT	1 -MB
		1 MB		
Relative Strength	=	4.28**	+2.86	-2.14
Relative Consistency	=	5.00**	+3.57*	-2.86
C/S Index	=	9.28**	+6.43*	-5.00

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to appear one to three weeks following a Uranus retrograde (100%). The probability of a crest is slightly greater than that of a trough. The cycle tends to be the opposite in nature to the one that is present during the central time band of Uranus retrograde.

Three to Five Week Post-Uranus Retrograde Powerful Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		4 PT	1 PB
		2 ½PT	1 MB
		1 MT	2 -MB
Relative Strength	=	+4.43**	-1.71
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-1.43
C/S Index	=	+9.43**	-3.14

Conclusions: Powerful crests tend to occur in gold prices three to five weeks following Uranus retrograde (100%). This may be one of the most powerful geocosmic signatures noted.

Nine to Ten Week Post-Uranus Retrograde Trough

This time window concurred with a powerful trough in six of seven instances analyzed. If expanded to include the eighth week, it was 100% consistent. However, in the eighth week, crests were also more likely to appear. The distribution of cycles present during both the 8–10 and 9–10 week intervals following Uranus retrograde was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough		Crest	
		9-10 wk	8-10 wk	9-10 wk	8-10 wk
		1 PB	2 PB		1 DT
		3 ½PB	3 ½PB	1 MT	2 MT
		1 -BO	1- BO	2 TT*	2 TT*
		1 MB	1 MB		
Relative Strength	=	-3.43*	-4.14**	+1.00	+2.00
Relative Consistency	=	-4.29*	-5.00**	+0.71	+2.14
C/S Index	=	-7.72*	-9.14**	+1.71	+4.14

Conclusions: Powerful troughs in gold prices tend to occur eight to ten weeks after Uranus retrograde (100%). Most likely this trough appears in the ninth to tenth week (85.7%), during which time crests are almost not evident (14.2%).

15-18 Week Post-Uranus Retrograde Trough

Most of the troughs during this time frame actually occurred during the 15-17 week period following Uranus retrograde (85.7%). However, extended one week, the frequency increased to 100%, and at the same time, the relative strength of crest cycles also increased slightly. The distribution of cycles noted during this period was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	3 PT
		1 ½PB	1 ½PT
		1 -BO	1 MT
		2 MB	
Relative Strength	=	-4.14**	+3.14*
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-9.14**	+6.71*

As one can see, powerful crests can also appear at this time. Thus, it is a very volatile signature.

Conclusions: Powerful troughs tend to occur 15–18 weeks following Uranus retrograde (100%). Powerful crests are also likely to occur (71.4%), but not as reliable as troughs.

#12 Uranus Direct

7/7/75	-G(0)	MT(-3)	Gap down day of, then reversal up next 3 weeks
7/11/76	-BO(+1)	½PB(+7)	Breakout down next day through next 7 days
7/16/77	TT(+2)	-MB(+9)	Erratic, but no real reversal of cycle
7/21/78	+BO(0)	-MB(-4)	Breakout reversed trend, up next 4 weeks
7/26/79	PT(-2)	PB(+7)	Sharp 2-week drop temporarily reversed trend
7/30/80	MB(+1)	TT**(-3)	Volatile; sharp 3-day drop ended, sharp 6-day rise followed; trend reversed soon
8/4/81	PB(-1)	MT(+11)	Sharp 7-week rise reversed down cycle

Relative Strength			**Central Period**	**7-Day Period**
Total	=		3.43*	3.57*
Crest	=		+1.43	+2.79
Trough	=		-2.00	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.14	+1.43	+2.86
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.86	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.43*	7.72*	7.86*
Crest	=	+3.57	+2.86	+5.65
Trough	=	-4.86	-4.86	-7.29*

Rather powerful cycles coincided very closely to the date Uranus turned direct according to the results of this study. It appears that this date might have a more potent and timely association with gold prices than most stationary planet periods. However, the reversal of gold price trends was not as noticeable here as during the retrograde period, though still apparent (71.4%). Breakouts and gaps in prices still occurred close by in some cases, but perhaps a more outstanding feature than its retrograde counterpart was the frequency of great volatility surrounding the direct date within two weeks. In many cases, prices rose and fell dramatically at short intervals, suggesting the unpredictability usually ascribed to Uranian periods.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two *trading days of Uranus direct (100%). In most cases, this cycle will be prominent in nature (85.7%). Dramatic changes in price direction likely occur at this time (71.4%), leading to different major or primary cycles within three weeks afterwards.*

POST-URANUS DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

One to Three Week Post-Uranus Direct Powerful Cycle

In six of seven instances, a major or primary cycle has been noted to occur within three weeks after Uranus direct, usually of the opposite nature as the cycle present during the direct central time band. The distribution of those cycles was as follows (seven cases, one cycle per instance, excluding breakout of July 21, 1978 period in relative strength calculations):

		2 PB
		1 PT
		1 ½PB
		1 ½PT
		1 MT
		1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	4.57**
Relative Consistency	=	4.29*
C/S Index	=	8.86*

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur immediately after Uranus turns direct (85.7% within the next three weeks).

Three to Four Week Post-Uranus Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	2 TB**
		1 ½PT	
		1 +BO	
		1 MT	
		2 TT**	
Relative Strength	=	+3.71*	-0.71
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-1.43
C/S Index	=	+8.71*	-2.14

Conclusions: Powerful crests tend to appear three to four weeks following Uranus direct (100%). Very seldom do prominent troughs occur during this period (28%).

15-17 Week Post-Uranus Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		3 PT	1 PB
		2 ½PT	2 MB
		1 +BO	1 -MB
		1 MT	
Relative Strength	=	+4.29**	-1.86
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-2.14
C/S Index	=	+9.29**	-4.00

Conclusions: Very powerful crests tend to appear 15-17 weeks following Uranus direct (100%).

19-22 Week Post-Uranus Direct Trough

This cycle may actually be slightly shorter (i.e. 19-21 weeks), as prominent troughs occur with a 100% frequency in either. However, extending it out to 22 weeks includes slightly more powerful cycles. The distribution of cycles during this period was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	1 PT
		1 ½PB	1 +BO
		2 MB	1 MT
		1 TB*	
1 TT**			
Relative Strength	=	-3.93*	+2.07
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+2.86
C/S Index	=	-8.93*	+4.93

Conclusions: Powerful trough cycles tend to occur 19-22 weeks after Uranus goes direct (100%).

The results of the study on Uranus' association with gold prices suggest that there is indeed a significant Uranus effect.

CHAPTER TWELVE

THE NEPTUNE EFFECT

There have been eight retrograde Neptune periods since 1975:

March 14, 1975 through August 21, 1975
March 15, 1976 through August 23, 1976
March 18, 1977 through August 25, 1977
March 20, 1978 through August 28, 1978
March 23, 1979 through August 30, 1979
March 24, 1980 through August 31, 1980
March 27, 1981 through September 3, 1981
March 29, 1982 through September 5, 1982

Neptune enters into its retrograde motion once a year (one year plus 1-3 days). Thus, like Uranus (and Pluto to follow), Neptune correlates with seasonal cycles. The length of its retrograde period is approximately 23 weeks. In the study of astrology, Neptune's influence corresponds to the principles of faith, ideals, wishes, imagination, delusions, avoidance, dreams, passivity, withdrawal and aesthetics. As one can see, Neptune's nature is not exactly "grounded" or practical. It is more like wishing for utopia, and the best of all possible worlds, without really trying. In terms of mundane areas, Neptune is generally associated with the arts, music and dance, spiritual endeavors, poetry, helping institutions and vacation, resorts, liquids (i.e. oil), drugs and pharmaceuticals and the ocean. Being that Neptune is an "inner-type of experience," and that retrogrades are too, it would seem that the period of time around Neptune retrograde would be one of great illustion, hope and/or desire for peace and tranquility.

#13 Neptune Retrograde

3/15/76	TB(+1)	MT(+3)		Began 3-day rise, followed by 10 week drop
3/18/77	PT(+3)	-MB(-4)		8-day rise began 4 days before, then 12-week drop followed
3/20/78	MB(0)	TT*(+8)		8-day rise began, followed by 4-week drop
3/23/79	½PT(+1)	TB*(-3)		Gap up for 2 days, then dropped for 4 weeks
3/24/80	½PT(0)	PB(-4)	DB(+4)	End of short rise, price dropped next week
3/27/81	PT(-1)	TB**(+2)		End of 4-week rise, began 21-week drop
3/29/82	TB*(0)	PT(+11)		End of 3-day drop, began 11 day rise

Relative Strength			Central Period (4 days)
Total	=		3.86*
Crest	=		+3.00*
Trough	=		-2.50
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+3.57*
Trough	=	-5.00**	-4.29*
C/s Index			
Total	=	8.86*	8.86*
Crest	=	+6.57*	+6.57*
Trough	=	-7.50*	-6.79*

Neptune retrograde has a most interesting association with gold price cycles. As one can see from the table above, significant troughs were present within four days of this signature in every case. However, significant and more powerful crests were also frequently present (71.4%). Furthermore, in six of seven instances, a significant cycle in gold prices was realized within only one trading day of Neptune retrograde (85.7%). Yet, the most impressive observation may be the existence of powerful crests which appeared in every case within a time band of one day prior to and eleven days following Neptune retrograde, giving support for the assumption that this planet relates to false hopes and wishes. In every case, prices dropped shortly after the illusion wore off. During this later time band of crests, the following such tops occurred (seven cases since May, 1975):

		3 PT
		2 ½PT
		1 MT
		1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	+4.00**
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**
C/S Index	=	+9.00**

Thus, prices have been temporarily buoyed upwards near the time of Neptune retrograde. This is often a result of false rumors, or scares, that lead the gold speculator scurrying to cover positions in the event of something strange really taking shape. For example, in spring of 1982, it was the absurd battle of the Falkland Islands that sent gold prices up. In spring of 1981, both the assassination attempts on President Ronald Reagan and Pope John Paul II, plus the Israeli attack upon an Iraqi nuclear reactor forced gold prices up momentarily.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within one trading day of Neptune retrograde (85.7%). Within four trading days, significant but rather weak troughs tend to occur (100%). However, during the same time band, more powerful crests are also likely to happen (71.4%). From a period extending one day before through eleven days after Neptune direct, very powerful crests are likely (100%), followed by steep and somewhat long declines in gold prices.

POST-NEPTUNE RETROGRADE TIME WINDOWS

Four to Six Week Post-Neptune Retrograde Trough

As already indicated, prices for gold tumble quickly following the illusory scare of hopefulness surrounding the Neptune retrograde period. This fall-out has been most noted at the four to six week time interval. The distribution of cycles present during that time was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	1 DT
		3 ½PB	2 MT
		1 DB	1 -MT
		1 MB	2 TT**
			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-4.14**	+2.71
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*

C/S Index	=	-9.14**	+6.28

It should be pointed out that four of the crest cycles appeared in the fourth week, so the case may be stronger for a five to six week trough.

Conclusions: A powerful trough in gold prices tends to occur four to six weeks after Neptune retrograde (100%). However, crests tend to appear in this time band too (85.7%), but they are eliminated if the fourth week is excluded (28%).

18-21 Week Post-Neptune Retrograde Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		3 PT	3 PB
		1 ½PT	1 ½PB
		2 MT	2 -MB
		1 -MT	
Relative Strength	=	+3.86*	-3.29*
Relative Consistency	=	+4.29*	-2.86
C/S Index	=	+8.15*	-6.15

As can be seen, powerful cycles of both types occur frequently during this time band. Thus it is a very volatile trading range, but one nevertheless showing a slight preponderance in strength and consistency to the crest possibilities.

Conclusions: Powerful crests tend to occur 18-21 weeks following Neptune retrograde (100%). Powerful troughs also tend to occur during this period (85.7%).

Neptune Direct

8/21/75	TT(-1)	½PB(-5)	Temporary and slight rally in severe decline
8/23/76	PB(+2)		Sharp 2-week rise followed
8/25/77		½PB(-7)	In midst of long 12-week rise
8/28/78	PB(-3)	TT**(+5)	End of sharp 2-week drop, began 10-week rise
8/30/79		+BO(-6)	In midst of nice 6-week rise

8/31/80		TB(-5)	In midst of nice 4-week rise
9/3/81	TT**(0)	TB**(-7)	In midst of 3 more weeks of rising prices

There are no prominent cycles consistently present at the time of Neptune direct. However, one important feature seems to stand out in almost every case: prices begin rising slightly before this geophysical event, and continue to rise for several weeks afterwards. The only exception was case number one, where prices temporarily rose for a couple of days, but then continued down to ultimate bottom several weeks afterwards. Thus, the direct period seems to be a reverse of the retrograde. In the former, prices tended to fall sharply for a long time after the glamor or scare wore off. A new glamor or fright may then appear after Neptune has returned to direct motion, thus causing good rises towards powerful cycles several weeks afterwards, cycles which began around or shortly before the date of the direct motion.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices do not tend to occur around the time Neptune goes direct with any degree of frequency. However, long upward trends in gold prices do begin near this time or shortly before, lasting at least two weeks after the date of the direct (85.7%).

POST-NEPTUNE DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

13-16 Week Post Neptune Direct Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this interim was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	1 ½PT
		1 ½PB	1 +BO
		2 MB	1 -DT
		1 TB*	
2 TT**			
			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.93*	+2.57
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-8.93*	+6.14

Conclusions: Powerful troughs tend to appear 13-16 weeks following Neptune direct (100%). Prominent crests may also appear during this time band (71.4%), but they are neither as powerful nor as likely to occur.

20-23 Week Post-Neptune Direct Trough

As with all post-Neptune direct time windows, this one too is not a really solid one. It may be that after more data is discovered and analyzed, no post-Neptune direct time windows may exist of either a purely crest or trough nature. In any event, this time band has yielded troughs in every instance analyzed, and crests in most. The distribution of cycles was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	1 PT
		2 ½PB	1 ½PT
		1 -BO	1 DT
		1 MB	2 MT
		1 -DB	
Relative Strength	=	-4.00**	+2.71
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-9.00**	+6.28

Conclusions: Powerful troughs in gold prices tend to occur 20-23 weeks after Neptune goes direct (100%). However, prominent crests may also appear at this time (71.4%).

The results of the Neptune analysis do not imply the existence of a well-defined Neptune effect upon gold prices, except possibly insomuch as rather long price trends tend to follow their advent. The association with crests during the time of the retrogradation of Neptune, though, is so far very impressive.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

THE PLUTO EFFECT

Since 1975, Pluto has embarked upon a retrograde course eight times. They have been:

January 11, 1975 through June 17, 1975
January 14, 1976 through June 18, 1976
January 16, 1977 through June 21, 1977
January 19, 1978 through June 24, 1978
January 21, 1979 through June 27, 1979
January 24, 1980 through June 28, 1980
January 26, 1981 through July 1, 1981
January 29, 1982 through July 5, 1982

As in the case with Neptune, only six of these cycles have been analyzed thoroughly, while parts of the other two have been to some extent. These will be pointed out in the findings.

Pluto, too, is a seasonal retrograde cycle. Every winter (one year plus three days), Pluto commences upon its long and backward journey. Just as winter is a time of scarcity in the fruition of many commodities, so too does Pluto retrograde seem to exert a chilling effect upon gold prices. In the study of astrology, Pluto refers to the principles of power, obsession, force, transformation, upheaval and renewal. The areas of life ascribed to Pluto include: aspects of the partnership (group), death, insurance, banks, brokerage firms, research, underworld (as in plots behind the scenes to wield power), and drilling into the earth. Because money and power (and sex as well) all relate to the ascribed influence of Pluto, it should be no surprise that its correlation to important changes in gold prices would be

evident. In fact, the possibility that Pluto (and Scorpio) might really relate more to gold than the Sun and Leo (which are said to rule gold) seems supported by the evidence of this study. After all, gold has been the most enduring standard of acceptable money (i.e. real money) in history. While hundreds of currencies have come and gone, gold has withstood the test of time as a valued good. Its role in power has been unquestionable throughout history in all aspects of life (government, military, chemistry, occultism and mysticism, religion, science and, of course, business).

When retrograde (duration averages 22-23 weeks), the explosive potential of Pluto seems to increase. It is as if all that power was being held in, building and building to a point of great tension. This was most evident right at the time of retrograde (January), and reflected in the powerful cycles in gold prices which soon followed.

#14 Pluto Retrograde

1/14/76	-BO(+3)	PB(+5)		Gap down day before led to PB in 5 days, then exploded up next 5 weeks
1/16/77		PB(-5)		Exploded upwards next 10 weeks
1/19/78		½PT(+4)		10-day drop followed, then exploded up next 4 weeks
1/21/79	TT**(+3)	MB(-5)		6-week explosion up began week before
1/24/80	PT(-3)	MB(+2)		2-week rise followed MB
1/26/81	-BO(0)	TT*(-3)	½PB(+6)	Sharp 8-day drop began 3 days before, 1-week rise followed
1/29/82	MT(0)	½PB(-7)		Sharp 7-week drop followed

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	2.64	4.29**
Crest	=	+0.93	+2.36
Trough	=	-1.43	-3.43*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	3.57*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.14	-4.29*
C/S Index			
Total	=	6.21	9.29**
Crest	=	+3.07	+5.90
Trough	=	-3.57	-7.72*

Given a five-day orb, this becomes one of the most powerful associations between gold prices and geocosmic phenomenon. Major or primary cycles occurred in every case within six trading days of Pluto retrograde. The frequency of crests versus troughs are just about identical, though troughs tend to be significantly more powerful in strength. In several cases, a long trend in prices began right after this powerful cycle culminated, lasting four to ten weeks in duration (85.7%). It appears then that a powerful cycle will climax close to the date of Pluto retrograde, then turn sharply in the opposite direction for several weeks, particularly upward if the cycle is a trough.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within six trading days of Pluto retrograde (100%). In many instances, long trends in prices follow (85.7%) the culmination of this cycle.

POST-PLUTO RETROGRADE TIME WINDOWS

Seven to Nine Week Post-Pluto Retrograde Crest and Trough

The distribution of cycles during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	2 PT
		2 MB	1 ½PT
		2 -MB	1 +BO
		1 TB**	1 MT
			1 -DT
			1 TT*
Relative Strength	=	-3.21*	+3.71*
Relative Consistency	=	-3.57*	+4.29*
C/S Index	=	-6.78*	+8.00**

This is obviously a very volatile period. In every instance, prominent cycles of both types occurred, however, the crests were slightly more powerful.

Conclusions: Prominent crests and troughs tend to occur seven to nine weeks following Pluto retrograde (100%).

Nine to Eleven Week Post-Pluto Retrograde Crest

The distribution of cycles during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	1 DB
		2 ½PT	2 MB
		1 MT	1 -MB
		2 TT*	1 TB**
			2 TB*
Relative Strength	=	+3.71*	-2.64
Relative Consistency	=	+3.57*	-2.86
C/S Index	=	+7.28*	-5.50

Conclusions: Prominent crests in gold cycles tend to occur nine to eleven weeks after Pluto retrograde. In most cases, this will be at least a major crest in strength (71.4%).

13-15 Week Post-Pluto Retrograde Trough

The distribution of cycles during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		2 PB	1 DT
		3 ½PB	3 MT
		1 DB	1 -MT
		1 MB	1 TT**
Relative Strength	=	-4.14**	+2.86
Relative Consistency	=	-5.00**	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-9.14**	+6.43*

Conclusions: Powerful troughs tend to occur in gold prices 13-15 weeks following Pluto retrograde.

#15 Pluto Direct

6/17/75	DB(+4)		Prices rose next 4 weeks
6/18/76		-BO(+6)	Sharp drop next 5 weeks-explosion
6/21/77	MT(+4)	PB(-6)	21-week rise began 6 days before-explosion
6/24/78	½PT(-4)	TB(+5)	1-week drop, then 7-week rise-explosion
6/27/79	½PB(+1)	½PT(-2)	End of sharp drop, exploded up next 4 weeks
6/28/80	+G(-1)	PT(+6)	Sharp rise -5 days to +6; gap up day before
7/1/81	MB(+2)		End of sharp 4-week drop, began 2-week rise

Relative Strength		**6-Day Central Period**
Total	=	4.14**
Crest	=	+2.29
Trough	=	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.85
Trough	=	-3.57*
C/S Index		
Total	=	9.14**
Crest	=	+5.14
Trough	=	-6.57*

The period of time surrounding Pluto direct appears to be just as powerful in its association with gold price cycles as the period near the retrograde. Cycles of at least a major level occurred within six days in every case. In four of the seven cases analyzed, long trends of at least four weeks began (57%), and they were quite impressive. The most outstanding association, however, is simply the presence of a powerful cycle close to the direct date. In six of the seven cases, the cycle culminated *after* the direct date, so it is likely that in whatever direction prices were heading just prior to the date of Pluto direct, they would culminate in a powerful cycle of that direction within six days afterwards.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to be achieved within six trading days of Pluto direct (100%). In most cases, this cycle will occur after *the direct date.*

POST-PLUTO DIRECT TIME WINDOWS

The post-Pluto direct time windows are slightly nebulous in comparison to the post retrograde ones. For example, there are two time windows that overlap, the five to seven week trough and six to eight week crest. Also, the 13–15 week post-Pluto direct time band contains a goodly amount of both cycles. Nevertheless, each of these seems consistent and, hence, are included in this report.

Five to Seven-Week Post-Pluto Direct Trough

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Trough	Crest
		3 PB	1 PT
		1 ½PB	1 ½PT
		1 -MB	2 MT
		2 TB**	1 TT**
Relative Strength	=	-3.71*	+2.86
Relative Consistency	=	-4.29*	+3.57*
C/S Index	=	-8.00*	+6.43*

Six to Eight-Week Post-Pluto Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	2 PB
		1 ½PT	2 ½PB
		1 +BO	1 TB**
		2 MT	
		1 TT**	
Relative Strength	=	+3.79*	-2.93
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-3.57*
C/S Index	=	+8.79*	-6.50*

Conclusions: Powerful crests in gold prices tend to culminate six to eight weeks following Pluto direct (100%). Powerful troughs may also occur (71.4%), but in most cases, they are associated more with the five to seven-week post-Pluto direct trough time window. This implies that after the five to seven-week trough has occurred, a powerful six to eight-week crest follows shortly thereafter.

13-15 Week Post-Pluto Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time frame was as follows (seven cases):

		Crest	Trough
		2 PT	1 PB
		2 ½PT	2 ½PB
		1 +BO	1 MB
		1 MT	1 -DB
		1 TT**	2 -MB
Relative Strength	=	+3.93*	-3.29*
Relative Consistency	=	+5.00**	-3.57*
C/S Index	=	+8.93*	-6.86*

Conclusions: Powerful crests tend to occur 13–15 weeks after Pluto direct (100%). Less powerful, but consistent troughs also appear during this period (71.4%).

19-22 Week Post-Pluto Direct Crest

The distribution of cycles present during this time band was as follows (seven cases):

	Crest	Trough
	4 PT	2 PB
	2 ½PT	1 DB
	1 MT	1 MB
		1 -DB
		1 -MB
Relative Strength =	+4.43**	-3.14*
Relative Consistency =	+5.00**	-3.57*
C/S Index =	+9.43**	-6.70

Conclusions: Very powerful crests in gold prices tend to occur 19-22 weeks following the Pluto direct date (100%). This is one of the most powerful time windows observed. Also, somewhat powerful troughs tend to occur during this same period (71.4%), far less potent than the crests, usually.

The results of the study on Pluto give support to the hypothesis that Pluto, rather than the Sun, seems to have the most direct and potent association to gold in regard to its market value. The implication is that there is indeed a Pluto effect present affecting the cycles of gold prices.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

PLANETARY ASPECTS

So far, several consistent relationships have been demonstrated between the price cycles of gold and the retrograde and direct periods of each of the planets. Except for the dates of both the retrograde and the direct motion of a planet, all other corresponding cycles covered a period of two to four weeks (i.e. the 13-15 week post-Pluto retrograde trough cycle). One might inquire as to the possibility of defining these time windows into even shorter periods, since two to four weeks can cover many trading days. True, these bands may be reduced when they overlap with other time bands based upon the retrograde and direct cycle of the planets, such as in the eventuality of an eight to ten week post-Uranus retrograde trough overlapping with a 10-12 week post-Jupiter direct crest. In this example, one could begin the week before the other begins, thus giving greater probability that the top and bottom will occur in the weeks that they do not overlap.

However, there is yet another reliable and effective means to determine much tighter time bands when an expected top or bottom will occur. This, of course, involves the application of specific planetary aspects. When certain aspects are in effect, significant cycles in gold tend to appear within four trading days and, in most cases, within less than two trading days. These aspects are particularly noticeable and useful when they occur within the time windows of the planetary retrograde and direct cycles listed in the previous chapters.

Together, these specific aspects between certain planets, and the retrograde plus direct cycles already identified, make up the category of *geocosmic signatures correlating to gold price cycles.* When applied properly, one may be able to pinpoint significant cycles in gold with a reliability of approximately 90% within four trading days.

Planetary aspects are divided into two groups, major and minor. The major ones tend to be more powerful and more consistent in their correlation with gold prices. The minor ones are then not as consistent nor as powerful. *It usually takes three signatures to be in effect for a major or primary cycle in gold prices to occur*, and, in many cases, the minor geocosmic signatures will simply accompany at least one of the more major signatures to satisfy this criterion of three.

In the following pages, these major geocosmic aspects will be listed in order of their proximity to the Sun. Each planetary pair will be divided into the various aspects it makes which are considered major. The dates of each occurrence of that particular aspect will be given, followed by a breakdown in gold price cycles which happened around that time, with the number of trading days removed from the exact date of the aspect. A synopsis of this effect upon gold prices will follow. At the end of all the aspects between each particular planetary pair, a general synopsis of that planetary pair's relationship to gold price cycles will be given. Following the analysis of each aspect, another analysis of the *total* effect of each of the planetary pair's correlation to gold price cycles will be provided in the *conclusion*.

#16 SUN/MARS

Both of these planets are considered "fiery" in nature. Thus, the combination of them in an aspect has been seen to frequently correlate with times of military threats, harsh words, even wars, particularly with the conjunction, waxing square and opposition. When such threats become known, the market value of precious and strategic metals such as gold can make sudden leaps upward. If the hostilities are dealt with constructively, then just as quickly prices might decline. Hence, a great deal of volatility in gold prices oftentimes is evident during periods when the Sun and Mars come into aspect with one another.

CONJUNCTION

11/24/76	MB(+2)	PT(-7)		Reversal of crest cycle 7 days before, sharp down next 7 weeks
1/20/79	TT**(+3)	MB(-5)		End of trading crest in 3 days, then 7-day secondary reaction
4/2/81	TB**(-2)	PT(-5)	MB(+7)	Reversed crest cycle 5 days before, to 18-week drop

Since there are only three cases observed, a statistical analysis would not reveal any reliable indications. At this point, it appears that the conjunction of Sun and Mars might correlate to major reversals in direction of gold prices, as this was the case in two of the three instances. That it is probably an association with great volatility seems even more certain, for rather powerful crests and troughs have been seen to occur within seven trading days. In all three cases, there has been a major bottom and, in two of the three cases, a primary crest. It is also interesting to note that whatever cycle was in effect at the time of the conjunction, it never culminated right on, or within a day of, the aspect. It was always at least two days out, and usually five days. In fact, most powerful cycles were in evidence five to seven days *before* the conjunction. Once that cycle transpired, a fairly powerful cycle of the opposite type unfolded within three trading days of the aspect. It should also be noted that the central time band of three trading days usually correlated with the culmination of a trading cycle, which itself was part of a larger cycle culminating considerably outside of the central trading band. For example, in the first instance, the conjunction concurred with an end of a downward correction from the primary crest. After completion, prices moved up again for two weeks. In the second case, a trading crest following a major bottom ended in three days, then a secondary reaction unfolded for the next seven days. In case three, a trading trough ended two days before and a rally started for the next four days, then another severe drop followed.

Conclusions: *Great volatility in gold prices tend to unfold within seven trading days of Sun conjunct of Mars (100%), as powerful crests and troughs tend to appear. In many cases, major cycles in gold prices reverse within seven trading days (66.7%).*

WAXING SQUARE

9/6/75	-G(-2)	-BO(-5)		Sharp 4-week drop began with breakout 5 days before
10/20/77	TT*(+2)	+BO(-8)		Sharp 3-week rise followed breakout 8 days before
11/25/79	TB(+1)	TT*(+5)	+BO(+12)	Sharp 9-week rise began next day
12/26/81	TB**(+1)	-BO(+10)		Slight 6-day rally, then sharp 2-week drop

The most outstanding feature of this aspect is its close proximity to breakouts in gold prices. In all four cases, breakouts transpired within 12 trading days. Sharp movements in prices were always evident around this period. Once again, no cycle culminated precisely on the date of the aspect and those that were close to the date were not particularly powerful. The powerful breakouts tended to occur in a range of eight days before through twelve days afterwards. However, the possibility of their occurrence could have been seen considerably closer in time when it occurred after the aspect. The point is that no resistance nor support level is safe within a two-week period of Sun waxing square to Mars—it will likely cave in. The combined intensity of the two planets plus the waxing square aspect tend to overcome any defense against it.

Conclusions: Breakouts in gold prices tend to occur within two weeks of Sun waxing square to Mars (100%). Prices tend to move in very sharp and specific directions after this aspect for at least two weeks.

WAXING TRINE

10/25/75	-MB(+2)	DT(-3)	End of 4-day trading trough, then up next week
12/3/77	TT*(+3)		Beginning of 4-day rally, 8-week up cycle
1/5/80	TT**(+1)	TB**(+4)	4-day secondary reaction began, followed by return to primary swing up next 3 weeks
2/7/82	TT(+3)	MT(-6)	End of slight rally, returned to primary swing down

This aspect happens a couple of weeks before Mars goes retrograde. Hence, its association with gold prices will tend to be with minor cycles, since the retrograde correlates with major ones. In all cases observed, trading crests occurred within three trading days of this signature. They were not usually very powerful and like many Sun/Mars signatures, they coincided with trading cycles that were part of a greater cycle culminating a few weeks later. Thus, its significance seems pale in comparison to the retrograde date period.

Conclusions: Significant but not very powerful crests in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Sun waxing trine to Mars. It usually occurs towards the end of a major trend in gold prices, which culminates closer to the Mars retrograde date a couple of weeks later.

OPPOSITION

12/15/75	DB(0)	PT(+4)	Reversed crest cycle in 4 days, then sharp 5-week drop
1/21/78	½PT(+3)		Crest ended in 3 days, sharp 2-week drop followed
2/25/80	TB**(0)	TT*(+7)	End of sharp 9-day fall, then slight rally, then very sharp 2-week drop
3/31/82	TB*(-2)	PT(+9)	Sharp 9-day rise, then sharp 6-week drop

This aspect correlates to the classic expected effect of war talk. Prices immediately move sharply up, then as the reality of negotiations set in, move sharply down. In three of four cases observed, a powerful crest occurred three to nine days *after* the opposition of Sun and Mars. In the fourth case, a prominent crest occurred seven days later, but it was not very powerful. And, right after the crest, prices dropped sharply for at least two weeks. Like the conjunction, the opposition seems very volatile as good bottoms usually happen before and after the powerful crest.

Conclusions: Good crests in gold prices tend to occur shortly after Sun opposes Mars (100%). These crests are usually very powerful and occur three to nine days after the opposition (75%). After the crest, prices tend to drop sharply for at least two weeks (100%). A trading trough tends to occur on or within three days before the aspect (75%).

WANING TRINE

2/5/76	MT(-2)		End of 2-week rise, drop 1 week, then another 2-week rise
3/14/78	PT(-4)	MB(+4)	Sharp 4-day drop, then 2-week rise
4/16/80	TT**(0)	TB**(-1)	Very volatile; sharp 3-day drop followed, then sharp 4-day rise, then another sharp 4-day drop
5/22/82	TT*(-3)	TB**(+8)	Sharp drop followed trading crest 3 days earlier

The waning square between Sun and Mars occurs only a few days after Mars returns to direct motion, thus the aspect will correlate with the Mars direct primary cycle in many cases. Once more this can be associated with a very volatile period in gold prices. Powerful crests tend to occur within four days *before* the aspect, and immediately are followed by a rather sharp drop. It is not uncommon to find another sharp rise following that drop.

Conclusions: Gold prices tend to achieve significant crests within four days before the Sun forms a waning trine to Mars (100%). Rather sharp drops in prices tend to immediately follow with a good trough being realized within five trading days afterwards (100%).

WANING SQUARE

3/22/76	MT(-2)	TB**(+6)	Reversed crest cycle, began 9-week decline
4/26/78	PB(-1)	MT(+6)	Reversed trough cycle, sharp rise next 5 weeks
5/30/80	½PB(-5)	MT(+6)	Reversed trough cycle, sharp rise next 6 days, and 6 weeks

This signature seems to be an association to reversal of cycles in gold prices. In every instance, a trend ended and a new powerful one began. Once more, great volatility is evident, as both powerful crests and troughs occurred in every instance within six trading days of the aspect. The cycle that ended usually culminated *before* the aspect itself, within five days. The next cycle commenced its first crest or trough exactly six days after aspect in each of the three cases examined.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold price trends tend to end within six trading days before *the Sun waning square to Mars (100%). Within six trading days after, the first leg of the opposite type of cycle tends to culminate (100%). The major correspondence of this signature might be its association with a reversal of a long-term cycle, and beginning of a new trend to last at least five weeks.*

SUMMARY

As not enough cases were present to analyze each aspect separately, a combined analysis of all of them is now given. In this analysis, the central time period refers to within three trading days of the aspect. The 12-day period refers to a major cycle begun during the central time frame, or ended during that frame, that relates to the nature of the aspect. Obviously, not all signatures were given such a great orb in time and, in fact, most were within only six trading days.

Relative Strength			Central Period	12-Day Period
Total	=		2.77	3.68*
Crest	=		+1.52	+3.16*
Trough	=		-1.48	-2.25

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	12-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.55**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.73	+2.50	+4.55**
Trough	=	-2.73	-2.50	-3.64*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.77*	7.32*	8.68*
Crest	=	+4.25	+4.02	+7.71*
Trough	=	-4.21	-3.98	-5.89

The results suggest that there is an association of Sun/Mars aspects to gold price cycles. Though the breakdown here does not show it, the crests far outweighed the troughs during the central time band during trine aspects while troughs heavily outweighed crests during the square aspects. Conjunctions and oppositions leaned slightly more toward troughs. However, when extended outside of this band, conjunctions and oppositions reversed their power, as more intense crests emerged. The squares remained oriented toward troughs and trines toward crests.

In subsequent analyses of geocosmic aspects between two planets, a total summary will not be given unless most aspects contain less than three cases. As will be seen shortly, most aspects of planetary pairs have their own unique association with gold prices and it should be evident that all of them combined will thus also have a strong association. But, in those instances where there are generally less than four occurrences observed of specific aspects, this type of summary will follow in order to ascertain a probability of association.

#17 SUN/JUPITER

These two planets combine very positive, optimistic principles. The speculative nature of the Sun blending with the exaggerative characteristics of Jupiter would be expected to correlate with wild swings in market prices. At the time of the aspect, great optimism concerning the economy may be present. This could cause gold prices to soar or fall, depending upon the nature of the news. However, corrections of a rather steep nature are likely to follow shortly afterwards as the optimism wears off. In many cases, there is the promise of something about to occur, but later it is realized that such a promise will not be delivered.

CONJUNCTION

4/27/76	-MT(0)	-DB(+7)	MB(-7)	Midway crest between 2 troughs
6/4/77	TT(+1)	PB(+7)		Sharp 1-week drop followed by 22-week rise as cycle reversed
7/10/78	TT(0)	-MB(+5)	TB(-5)	Midway crest between 2 troughs; 16-week rise followed last trough
8/13/79	TT**(-1)	TB*(+1)	PB(-5)	Sharp 7-week rise began week before
9/13/80	TT**(-1)	TB*(+1)	PT(+7)	Sharp 7-day rise, then reversed cycle to bear market
10/14/81		TT**(-6)		6-week drop began week before

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	1.50	3.75*
Crest	=	+1.50	+2.58
Trough	=	-0.67	-2.83

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.17*	2.50	5.00**
Crest	=	+4.17*	+2.50	+3.33*
Trough	=	-1.67	-1.67	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	5.67	4.00	8.75*
Crest	=	+5.67	+4.00	+5.91
Trough	=	-2.34	-2.34	-7.12*

The central time band surrounding this aspect correlates with gold price crests, but they are rather weak in strength. In many cases, these crests are midway points between two troughs; in many other cases, long cycles commenced within a week of this conjunction (83.3%). This was particularly true during the bull markets: if the conjunction correlated with a crest, then a trough would soon follow, after which a long rise would unfold (100%). In the bear market, it was somewhat opposite: if a crest occurred in connection with the aspect, a long decline would follow (100%). Perhaps knowledge of this signature would be most useful if one waited one week, thereby being in a better position to judge what type of long-term cycle seems most likely to now unfold. Or, for the very short-term-minded speculator, a crest can be anticipated very close to the aspect date (83.3%), followed by a decline immediately afterwards (100%). The duration of the decline may range anywhere from one day through seven days in a bull market; in a bear market, it may last several weeks.

Conclusions: Rather weak but significant trading crests in gold prices tend to occur within one day of Sun conjunct Jupiter (83.3%). A significant trough then tends to follow within seven days afterwards (83.3%).

WAXING SQUARE

7/16/75	-MB(+1)	PT(+9)		Beginning of nice 9-day rise
8/22/76	PB(+3)			Sharp 3-day drop, then 3-week rise
9/28/77	MT(+3)	-MB(+6)		5-week rise after secondary reaction +6 days
10/31/78	PT(-1)	TB*(+4)		Sharp 5-day and 4-week drop began day before
12/1/79	+G(+1)	+BO(+7)		Sharp 8-week rise began 3 days before
12/30/80	MT(-2)	TB*(+2)	TT*(+3)	Midway bottom between 2 crests; sharp 9-week drop follows
1/29/82	MT(0)	½PB(-7)		Sharp 7-week drop began next day

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.29*	4.14**
Crest	=	+2.29	+3.29*
Trough	=	-1.29	-2.43
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+4.29*
Trough	=	-2.14	-4.29*
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.29*	9.14**
Crest	=	+5.86	+7.58*
Trough	=	-3.43	-6.72*

This appears to be a rather powerful and consistent signature associating with cycles in gold prices. However, the type of gold cycle present during its period of effect is not always certain. In the last five instances of the seven observed, a rather powerful crest culminated within three days of this square. It did not happen in the first two instances. In several cases, the waxing square of Sun to Jupiter correlated with a drop in prices followed by a significant rise (71.4%). This might be the expected course for prices to follow, assuming more powerful signatures are not in effect during the same period, negating this type of direction.

Conclusions: Rather powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of the Sun waxing square to Jupiter (100%). In most instances, this will be a crest cycle (71.4%). In many cases, a rather long (at least four weeks) trend in prices commences within a week after this aspect (71.4%).

WAXING TRINE

8/18/75	½PB(-2)	TT(+2)		Sharp 5-week drop followed 2-day rise
9/24/76	DT(-3)	-G(+2)	MB(+6)	Sharp drop next 6 days
10/29/77	TB(-2)	PT(+8)		Sharp 8-day rise began day before
12/1/78	PB(-1)	TT**(+6)		Sharp 6-day and 12-week rise began that day
1/1/80	TT**(+4)	TB**(+7)		In midst of sharp 3-week rise
1/30/81	½PB(+1)	MT(+7)		End of 6-week drop, then 1-week rise before further plunge
3/1/82	TB**(-3)	PB(+10)		Sharp 10-day drop began next day

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		3.28*	3.86*
Crest	=		+1.07	+2.57
Trough	=		-2.64	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+1.43	+3.57*
Trough	=	-4.29*	-3.57*	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.28*	7.58*	8.86*
Crest	=	+3.21	+2.50	+6.14
Trough	=	-6.93*	-6.24	-7.29*

In much the same manner as the waxing square between Sun and Jupiter, the waxing trine tends to correlate with rather powerful and consistent gold cycles. However, this time there is a definite preponderance of troughs during the central time band. In many cases, a rise in prices would immediately follow the trough (71.4%), but would not necessarily last very long—less than eight days in most instances observed. The trough usually happened three days before through one day after the aspect (71.4%), and a crest followed two to eight days afterwards (71.4%). During bear markets, this aspect appeared to be very weak in terms of resultant rallies, but very strong during bull markets.

Conclusions: Significant troughs tend to occur within three trading days of Sun waxing trine to Jupiter (85.7%). This trough usually occurs just before the aspect date (57%). A crest cycle tends to emerge within eight days after this aspect (71.4%).

OPPOSITION

10/13/75	TB*(-3)	DT(+7)	½PT(-7)	Midpoint bottom of a double crest; sharp 1-week rise followed
11/18/76	-DB(0)	PT(-3)	TT*(+2)	Bottom between double tops; sharp 2-day rise followed
12/22/77		DB(-8)	+BO(+6)	Sharp 6-week rise began week before
1/24/79	TT**(0)	MB(-7)	TB*(+7)	Crest between 2 troughs; sharp 3-week rise followed last trough
2/14/80	TB**(+1)	TT**(-9)	TT*(+7)	Trough between 2 crests; slight rise next 7 days, then sharp 3-week drop
3/26/81	PT(0)	TB**(+3)		Reversed cycle; sharp 3-day and 19-week drop
4/25/82	TT**(0)	TB**(-5)	½PB(+9)	Crest between 2 troughs; sharp 5-week drop followed

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	2.79	3.93*
Crest	=	+2.14	+3.64*
Trough	=	-1.43	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	7.08*	8.93*
Crest	=	+5.00	+8.64*
Trough	=	-4.29	-8.00*

One of the most significant findings about this signature is its association with timing. In five of seven cases studied, a prominent cycle in gold prices occurred within one day of the opposition aspect. Also, in five of seven cases, the aspect correlated with a cycle that was midway between two cycles of the opposite nature. For example, if the cycle during the Sun opposite Jupiter was a trough, then it was likely to be about midway between two prominent crests. Thus, it appears to be an interruption of a cycle in effect. Perhaps this relates to the astrological delineation of "false hopes" sometimes ascribed to this signature. The two cycles surrounding the aspect cycle are usually within nine days of it. Also interesting to note is the tendency for gold prices to immediately turn direction on or the day after this aspect, and continue in this new direction for at least six trading days (85.7%). Another significant point is that within eight trading days of this opposition, rather prominent cycles of *both* a crest and trough nature appeared.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within one day of Sun opposing Jupiter (71.4%). It may be either a crest or trough. In many cases, this cycle will be midway between cycles opposite in nature which occur within nine trading days both sides of the aspect (71.4%). If a prominent crest does not appear exactly on the date of the aspect, one will tend to occur within seven days afterwards (100%). A prominent trough will tend to occur within nine days (100%), but is generally less powerful than crests which occur within seven days (100%).

WANING TRINE

12/7/75	PB(+1)	PT(+10)	Sharp 9-day rise began next day
1/11/77	PB(-1)	TT*(+10)	Sharp 10-day rise began that day

2/15/78	+BO(0)	½PB(-4)		Sharp 4-week rise began 4 days before
3/20/79	TB*(0)	½PT(+4)		Sharp 4-day rise followed by 4-week drop
4/20/80	TB**(+1)	MT(+5)		Sharp 5-day rise began next day, followed by sharp 4-week drop
5/21/81	TB*(+2)	MT(-8)	TT(+7)	Moderate 1-week rise followed by 10-week drop

Relative Strength		Central Period	10-Day Period
Total	=	3.08*	4.00**
Crest	=	+0.67	+3.50*
Trough	=	-2.58	-3.58*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**10-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+0.83	+5.00**
Trough	=	-4.17*	-5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.08*	9.00**
Crest	=	+1.50	+8.50*
Trough	=	-6.75*	-8.58*

This is the most clearly defined association between gold prices and Sun to Jupiter aspects. In every case a rather powerful trough occurred within a period of four days before through two days afterwards and was followed by an even more powerful crest within the next eleven days (100%). Once more, the timing of a significant gold price cycle or phenomenon that happened was uncanny. In every case, something transpired within only one day. Equally important is the observation that a good rise in gold prices followed this aspect, lasting anywhere from four to ten days in most cases.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of the Sun waning trine to Jupiter (100%). This is usually a trough cycle (83.3%). Within a period of four days prior to and two days following this aspect, a rather powerful trough occurs (100%), and within eleven days after this trough, an even more powerful crest is likely (100%). The price of gold tends to rise at least the next four days after this aspect (100%), and usually completes its upward move within nine days.

WANING SQUARE

1/7/76	TB**(+1)	PB(+9)		Sharp 9-day drop
2/11/77	TB(0)	TT(-2)		2-day drop followed by sharp 6-week rise
3/18/78	MB(+1)	PT(-8)		End of sharp 8-day drop followed by 2-week rise
4/20/79	TB(0)	TT*(-1)	PB(-4)	Began good 14-week rise that day
5/22/80	½PB(0)	MT(+11)		Sharp 11-day rise began day of, and continued next 7 weeks
6/23/81	TT(0)	-BO(+2)		Sharp 6-week drop began next day

Relative Strength			Central Period	11-Day Period
Total	=		2.75	4.00**
Crest	=		+0.67	+2.00
Trough	=		-2.58	-3.67*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**11-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.17*	4.17*
Crest	=	+2.50	+0.83	+2.50
Trough	=	-5.00**	-3.33*	-4.17*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.08*	6.92*	8.17*
Crest	=	+3.17	+1.50	+4.50
Trough	=	-7.58*	-5.91	-7.84*

This geocosmic signature has a definite association with trough cycles. In every instance, a significant trough phenomenon happened within two trading days of the aspect; in five of the six cases, the trough was either on or one day after the aspect date. Thus, it is a very timely signature. The troughs which occurred during the central time band were not necessarily powerful, nor did they tend to follow into powerful crests all the time, though that did happen in two-thirds of the cases. Also, in two-thirds of the instances analyzed, sharp down cycles came to an end at the time of this aspect. It is interesting to note the absence of any prominent crests during the central time band. In only one instance did one emerge. Even further out, only one powerful crest existed within eight trading days.

Conclusions: Significant troughs tend to occur in gold prices within two trading days of the Sun waning from square to Jupiter (100%). Most of the time this will be either on the day of or the day following the aspect (83.3%). It is very unlikely that a prominent crest will occur within seven trading days (16.7%).

#18 SUN/SATURN

This planetary signature combines the principle of leadership and speculation with that of caution and tension. Frequently, there is a sense of worry on a political level and traders will likely attempt to protect themselves. This could cause prices to escalate but then drop after the distress period ends. On the other hand, these aspects may signal the end of a long depressed cycle, and when completed, may bring about optimism in the market, causing prices to escalate. The trine aspects between the Sun and Saturn seem to have little association with the prices of gold. The "hard" aspects, though, seem very potent and are thus included in the list of significant geocosmic signatures.

CONJUNCTION

7/15/75	TT(-1)	-MB(+2)	MT(-9)	PT(+10)	End of 2-week drop, began 2-week rise; midpoint bottom between 2 crests
7/29/76	MT(-1)	½PB(-7)			End of sharp rise, began 4-week sharp drop
8/13/77	½PB(+2)	PT(-7)			End of sharp drop, began 13-week rise
8/27/78	PB(-3)	PT(-8)	TT**(+6)		End of sharp drop, began 10-week rise; mid-point of 2 crests
9/10/79	TT**(0)	-MB(+3)			Prices depressed 3 days, then sharp 3-week rise
9/23/80	PT(0)	MB(+8)	TB*(-6)		End of bull market, began 23-week drop; mid-point between 2 troughs
10/6/81	TT**(0)	½PB(-6)			End of crest rally, began 7-week drop

Relative Strength			Central Period	10-Day Period
Total	=		3.43*	4.43**
Crest	=		+2.00	+4.00*
Trough	=		-1.85	-3.43*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**10-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.86	-5.00**
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.43*	8.43*	9.43**
Crest	=	+5.57	+4.86	+9.00**
Trough	=	-4.71	-4.71	-8.43*

The conjunction of Sun and Saturn appears to be a powerful association to gold price cycles. The nature of depressing economic or political news during this period has been very evident in the examples of the 1980 and 1981 conjunctions. The 1980 period correlated with the Iraqi invasion and consequent war with Iran, while the 1981 date coincides with the assassination of Egyptian President Anwar Sadat. Both events led to a

sudden escalation in gold prices followed by a sharp and enduring decline after the situation was adjusted to by world leaders. In every case, quite powerful crests were present either on or *before* the date of the aspect (100%). Long trends frequently ended and new trends began around this period (85.7%). In some instances, the cycle in effect around the time of the conjunction was a midpoint between two opposite types of cycles (42.8%). During the last three years, powerful crests have been observed exactly on the date of this signature. However, this was not so in the four previous years. Not only are powerful crests present within a ten day period leading up to this aspect (100%), but quite powerful troughs also are evident in a time span beginning seven days before through three days following the Sun conjunct Saturn.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Sun conjunct Saturn (100%). From a period beginning nine days before until the date of the conjunction, powerful crests tend to occur (100%). The central time band tends to correlate with the end of a trend in gold prices and reversal to a new direction (85.7%). During a bull market, prices tend to drop at the time of this aspect, then resume primary swing up a few days later. During a bear market, prices tend to peak at this point, then resume primary swing downwards shortly after.

WAXING SQUARE

10/26/75	-MB(+2)	DT(-3)	PT(+7)	Midpoint bottom of 2 crests; end of 1-week drop, began 1-week rise
11/8/76	+G(0)	PT(+5)	-DB(-8)	Sharp 6-day rise began, followed by 8-week drop
11/22/77	PB(-1)	PT(-9)		End of sharp 8-day drop, began 15-week rise
12/6/78	TT**(+3)	PB(-4)		End of sharp 4-week drop, began 12-week rise
12/19/79	MB(0)	+BO(-6)		Drop day of followed by sharp 5-week rise
12/31/80	MT(-3)	TB*(+1)	TT**(+2)	End of crest -3 days, began 10-week drop
1/12/82	-BO(-1)	½PB(+6)		Sharp 9-week drop began day before

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.71*	4.43**
Crest	=	+1.64	+3.50*
Trough	=	-3.00*	-3.43*
Relative Consistency		**Central Prominent**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+4.29*
Trough	=	-4.29*	-5.00**

C/S Index

Total	=	8.71*	9.43**
Crest	=	+4.50	+7.79*
Trough	=	-7.29*	-8.43*

This is another very powerful signature associated with gold price cycles. In every instance, a cycle of at least a major intensity occurred within only six trading days of Sun waxing square to Saturn. The distribution of crests versus troughs were about equal. Also, there tended to be a little more time variation between cycle date and aspect date than in recent signatures analyzed. During bull markets, prices tended to be depressed on or very close to the day of the aspect, and then rose sharply within the next ten trading days. During a bear market, prices tended to crest within five trading days before this square, then resume strong downward swings right after. Examining the central time band of four days only, powerful troughs far outnumbered powerful crests, but that changed when the orb was stretched to nine days away from the aspect. In six of the seven cases, significantly long trends in prices commenced within six trading days, lasting anywhere from five to fifteen weeks. Again, in a bull market, this trend tended to be up while in a bear market, down.

Conclusions: Rather powerful cycles in gold prices tend to be achieved within four trading days of the Sun waxing square to Saturn (100%). Within six trading days, long-term cycles of five to fifteen weeks commence (85.7%): upward in a bull market, downward in a bear market.

OPPOSITION

1/20/76	PB(+1)			End of 4-week drop, began 4-week rise
2/2/77	TB(-3)	TT(+5)		2-week rise followed TB
2/16/78	+BO(-1)	½PB(-5)	TT**(+5)	Sharp 3-week rise began day before
3/1/79	MB(+2)	PT(-5)		End of sharp 7-day drop, began 3-week rise
3/14/80	PB(+2)	½PT(+6)		End of 5-week drop, began sharp 4-day rise
3/27/81	PT(-1)	TB**(+3)		End of 3-week rise, began 19-week drop
4/9/82	PT(+3)	TB**(+6)		End of sharp 4-week rise, began 7-week drop

Relative Strength		Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=	4.00**	4.29**
Crest	=	+2.00	+3.07*
Trough	=	-2.36	-3.29*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	6-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.14	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-3.57*	-2.86	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	9.00**	8.29*	8.58*
Crest	=	+4.14	+4.14	+6.64*
Trough	=	-5.93	-5.22	-7.58*

This is an extremely powerful association with gold price cycles. In five of seven cases, primary cycles culminated within only five trading days of Sun opposed Saturn. In one other case, a primary cycle unfolded. There was no predominance of a crest versus trough during this range, although troughs were more likely to occur within a three-day trading band. Thus, this appears to be a very volatile time band, as both crests and troughs tend to occur within only six trading days of the aspect. Sharp trends of at least two to five weeks tend to end at the time of this signature (71.4%), and new and opposite trends begin. In a bull market, sharp rises in prices tend to follow right afterwards. In a bear market, long and sharp declines in gold prices follow. Overall, though, this is one of the most potent signatures related to gold cycles, within a six-day trading period.

Conclusions: Very powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within six trading days of Sun opposed Saturn (100%). In many cases (85.7%), a prominent cycle will occur within only two trading days. Usually this will be a prominent trough (85.7%), on the order of a major bottom. Frequently, this coincides with a reversal in trend.

WANING SQUARE

4/16/76	½PB(-1)	-MT(+7)		End of 4-week drop, began moderate 7-day rise
4/30/77	MB(-2)	TT(+1)		7-week drop began next day
5/15/78	TB(-5)	TT*(+7)		Sharp 5-week rise began 2 weeks before
5/29/79	-MB(0)	+BO(-1)	DT(+9)	Sharp rise next 8 weeks
6/11/80	MB(0)	MT(-2)		End of big 3-day drop, sharp 4-week rise began
6/24/81	-BO(+1)	TT(-2)	MB(+6)	Sharp 6-week drop began day before

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	3.00*	3.33*
Crest	=	+1.50	+1.83
Trough	=	-2.67	-2.67

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.17*	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.33*	+1.67	+3.33*
Trough	=	-4.17*	-4.17*	-4.17*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.17*	7.17*	8.33*
Crest	=	+4.83	+3.17	+5.16
Trough	=	-6.84*	-6.84*	-6.84*

This is clearly a trough association, and by far the weakest of the Sun to Saturn signatures in relationship to gold prices. Nevertheless, its association is significant, for a trough cycle did indeed occur in every instance within only six trading days (100%), and usually within only two trading days (83.3%). In five cases, long-term trends commenced with this aspect, lasting four to eight weeks afterwards (83.3%). In two cases, breakouts occurred within only one day of the aspect, suggesting that if prices are close to a resistance or support level, they might be penetrated. In two-thirds of the cases studied, prices began rising once this signature was completed.

Conclusions: Significant but not very powerful troughs tend to occur within six trading days of Sun waning square to Saturn (100%). The probability that this trough will happen within only two trading days is great (83.3%). Resistance or support levels may be broken within a day of this aspect if they are near the current price level.

#19 SUN/URANUS

This signature brings together two very speculative principles. The expected result would be one of great volatility—sharp swings in the price of gold. As noted here, reversals of cycles were frequent under Sun/Uranus aspects. In many cases, a bull or bear market would be indicated prior to the time of this aspect, then suddenly reverse, if only for a short period. Also, a number of very powerful cycles seemed to occur around the time of Sun aspecting Uranus, making this one of the more potent signatures correlating with gold prices. However, conflicting types of cycles were consistently in effect in short time bands which suggests that this signature may be rather unpredictable.

CONJUNCTION

10/26/75	-MB(+2)	DT(-3)	PT(+7)	Reversal after sharp 3-day drop to sharp 6-day rise
10/30/76	+BO(-2)	TB(+1)	PT(+11)	Reversal; sharp 4-week rise began 4 days before
11/4/77	PT(+3)	-MB(-6)		Major reversal down for 5 weeks (began in 3 days)
11/9/78	TB*(+1)	DB(+5)	PT(-7)	Big drop gap day of; sharp 4-week major reversal began 7 days before
11/14/79	TB*(+1)	MT(-5)		Reversal; 10-week sharp rise began next day
11/18/80	PT(+2)	MB(-5)		Reversal to 14-week down cycle began in 2 days
11/22/81	PB(+1)	+G(+2)	½PT(+9)	Major reversal to sharp 4-week rally

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.86*	4.57**
Crest	=	+2.86	+4.43**
Trough	=	-1.71	-2.71

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00*	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+3.57*	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.57*	-2.86	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.86*	8.86*	9.57**
Crest	=	+6.43*	+6.43*	+9.43**
Trough	=	-5.48	-4.57	-7.00*

As expected, the Sun/Uranus conjunction indeed seems to be a dramatic, volatile signature. Reversals occurred in almost every instance and swings in prices were usually wild within a nine-day period. Powerful cycles of both types occurred frequently within six trading days, but within the central three-day time period, there appeared to be no preference to type of cycle, though crests were stronger in nature. A tendency toward powerful crest cycles began to appear when the time orb was extended to five trading days from date of the conjunction. When a nine day orb was allowed, major and primary crests occurred in every instance. Never did the cycle take place exactly on the date of the aspect. In fact, the significant cycle in effect closest to the date always occurred afterwards within five days. What is most unusual is the observation that a powerful crest tended to follow a trough in a bear market, while the opposite was true in a bull market, completely contrary to what one would expect. In other words, around the time of the conjunction, the primary cycle would reverse and go against the type of market in effect for awhile, giving rise to the thought that the major market cycle was over—but it was not.

Conclusions: Significant trading cycles tend to occur within three trading days of the Sun conjunct Uranus (100%). In all cases analyzed, this cycle *occurred* after *the date of the conjunction. The cycle tends to be major or primary in nature (100%) if given a five-day orb. In most cases (85.7%), the cycle will represent a significant change in the direction of prices, sometimes major trend reversals (42.9%), leading to powerful cycles two to eleven days afterwards. Within eleven days of the aspect (seven before through eleven after), very powerful crests tend to occur (100%), usually afterwards (71.4%). The probability and strength of a crest cycle tends to be greater than a trough.*

WAXING SQUARE

1/27/76	+G(+1)	PB(-4)	MT(+5)	Major reversal from decline to 6-week rise
1/31/77	TB(-1)	TT(+7)		8-week rise began in 5 days with gap up
2/5/78	½PB(+3)	PT(-8)		Reversal from 2-week drop to 4-week rise began in 3 days
2/10/79	TB*(-1)	PT(+8)		Reversal from short, sharp down to sharp 8-day rise; very volatile, then major reversal down
2/15/80	MT(-4)	TB**(+5)		Reversal 4 days before; sharp 5-week drop followed
2/18/81	TT*(+2)	PB(+8)		Reversal to sharp 2-week drop 2 days later, then major trend reversal up
2/23/82	TB**(+1)	-BO(-3)		Sharp 4-week drop began week before

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		3.00*	3.86*
Crest	=		+1.00	+2.57
Trough	=		-2.07	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.29*	3.57*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.14	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-3.57*	-2.86	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.29*	6.57*	8.15*
Crest	=	+3.14	+3.14	+6.14
Trough	=	-5.64	-4.93	-7.29*

This aspect between Sun and Uranus appears to coincide consistently with powerful troughs during a five-day orb. Again, no significant cycles occurred exactly on the day of the aspect, but within five trading days, prominent troughs did emerge. This time there was no tendency for the cycle to occur after the aspect. It just as likely happened before. However, the Sun/Uranus waxing square did again coincide with reversals of trends, and sharp movements in prices were noted within the period of this aspect.

Conclusion: Significant troughs tend to occur within five trading days of Sun in waxing square from Uranus (85.7%). These troughs tend to be prominent in nature (71.4%). Major trend reversals can happen near the date of this aspect (42.9%).

WAXING TRINE

2/26/76	-DT(-1)	-G(0)	-MB(+3)	4-day drop began day before
3/2/77	+BO(+2)			Breakout up next 3 weeks
3/7/78	PT(+1)	MB(+9)		7-week steep major trend reversal began next day
3/12/79	-DT(+3)	MB(-5)		Reversed cycle 5 days before to 3-week rise
3/15/80	PB(+2)	½PT(+6)		Sharp reversal up in 2 days; lasted only 4 days; very volatile, but could be a major trend change.
3/20/81	PT(+4)	PB(-12)		Sharp 19-week major reversal down in 4 days; dramatic
3/25/82	TT*(-1)	TB*(+2)	PB(-7)	Sharp 3-week major reversal rally began 3 days later

Relative Strength			Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=		3.85*	4.29**
Crest	=		+3.14*	+3.71*
Trough	=		-1.29	-2.57
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+4.29*	+4.29*	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.14	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.85*	8.85*	9.29**
Crest	=	+7.43*	+7.43*	+8.71*
Trough	=	-3.43	-3.43	-6.86*

This is one of the most significant associations yet between geocosmic indicators and gold price cycles. Consistent and powerful crests were found to occur within four trading days of this aspect. The period is very volatile, for consistent troughs were also present when the time band was extended to six trading days from the date of the aspect. In almost every case, the prominent trough occurred *before* the aspect (71.4%). Potent reversals in trends were observed in every case within five trading days, and in 57.1%, they could be judged as major trend reversals. Again, there was no instance of the cycle culminating exactly on the day of the aspect. In every instance, a cycle did appear within four days *afterwards*. Thus, whichever direction prices were headed on the day of this trine, that particular cycle would culminate within four days afterwards. Then a sharp reversal usually followed.

Conclusions: *Powerful cycles tend to occur within four trading days of the Sun waxing trine to Uranus (100%). In most cases, this cycle will be a powerful crest (85.7%). Within six days after the aspect, powerful crests tend to appear (85.7%), and usually within only four days afterwards (71.4%). Major trend reversals may commence near this date (57.1%). This is one of the most powerful and consistent crest cycles associated with planetary signatures.*

OPPOSITION

4/25/76	–MT(+2)	½PB(–6)		Downward reversal began in 2 days
4/29/77	MB(–1)	TT(+1)		Sharp 2-day rise, after 9-day drop; did not hold as 6-week drop followed
5/5/78	MT(–1)	PB(–8)		Big 5-week major trend reversal up began 8 days before
5/10/79	TT*(0)	TB(–2)	+BO(+7)	Breakout upside in 7 days; no reversal
5/14/80	TT(0)	½PB(+6)		Sharp reversal down next 6 days, then long rise next 7 weeks. Could be major reversal.
5/19/81	MT(–6)	TB*(+5)		Perhaps offset by soft Jupiter signatures
5/24/82	–G(+1)	TT*(-3)	TB**(+6)	Sharp drop began next day

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		1.86	3.64*
Crest	=		+1.57	+2.00
Trough	=		–0.86	-2.93

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	3.57*	5.00**
Crest	=	+4.29*	+2.86	+3.57*
Trough	=	–2.14	-1.43	–4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	6.14	5.43	8.64*
Crest	=	+5.86	+4.43	+5.57
Trough	=	–3.00	–2.29	-7.22*

Though the Sun/Uranus opposition was a consistent aspect correlating with gold prices, it was not powerful during the central time period. Unlike the other Sun/Uranus aspects, the opposition tended to correlate very closely in time (within two trading days) to a cycle in gold, but it was usually a weak crest cycle. However, if extended eight days away from opposition date, the chances of a more powerful trough increased significantly. The reversal of trends were still present with this aspect, though not as frequent nor as close in time as other Sun/Uranus aspects.

Conclusions: *Significant crest cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of the Sun opposite Uranus (85.7%), but they will not tend to be powerful. Powerful troughs tend to occur within eight trading days of the opposition of Sun to Uranus (100%).*

WANING TRINE

6/20/75	DB(+1)	MT(+7)		Sharp 5-week major reversal upwards began next day
6/24/76	–BO(+2)			Gap, breakout down 2 days later, continued 4 weeks
6/29/77	MT(–2)	TB(+3)		Temporary, weak 5-day reversal down, then rise next 18 weeks
7/4/78	TB(–2)	TT(+4)		Sharp 7-week rise 2 days before reversed short decline
7/9/79	TT*(0)	½PB(–6)		3-week reversal upwards began week before
7/14/80	–G(0)	–DB(+4)	PT(-4)	Major reversal down began 4 days before; gap down day of
7/18/81	MT(–1)	PB(+11)		Sharp 3-week reversal down after rally ended day before, then major reversal up

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.71	3.43*
Crest	=		+1.14	+2.43
Trough	=		-1.71	-2.43

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	–3.57*	-2.14	–3.57*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.71*	7.00*	8.43*
Crest	=	+3.28	+3.28	+6.00
Trough	=	–5.28	–3.85	–6.00

Unlike the waxing trine between Sun and Uranus, the waning trine is a much weaker association with cycles of gold. Even the reversals are not as frequent nor as enduring in length. All in all, this is not a powerful signature, though it does tend to concur with trough cycles near the time of its occurrence. Once again, as with the opposition, the cycle of gold falls rather close to the date of the trine. In a couple of cases, this aspect coincided with breakouts or gaps. Within a seven-day trading orb, prominent cycles did emerge, but neither crests nor troughs seemed dominant.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of the waning Sun trine Uranus (100%). This will usually be a trough (71.4%). A more powerful cycle tends to occur within seven trading days (100%), but it is just as likely to be a crest as a trough.

WANING SQUARE

7/21/75	-MB(-2)	+G(+1)	PT(+6)	Sharp upward 6-day reversal, then major cycle change down next 8 weeks
7/26/76	MT(+2)	½PB(-4)		Sharp rise 2 days, then sharp 4-week gap down; volatile
7/31/77	-MB(-2)	½PT(+4)		End of 4-day drop, began 5-day rise; short and volatile
8/5/78	TB(-2)	PT(+8)		Reversal of short down to sharp 8-day rise
8/10/79	TT**(0)	PB(-4)	+BO(+8)	Dramatic rise began 4 days before, pause, continued rise next 7 weeks
8/14/80	PB(-2)	TT**(+5)		Sharp 6-week upward major reversal began that day
8/19/81	MT(0)	TB**(+4)		Temporary 4-day reversal of rally

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.64	4.43**
Crest	=		+1.50	+3.79*
Trough	=		-2.71	-3.07*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.14	-4.29*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.64*	6.93*	9.43**
Crest	=	+4.36	+4.36	+8.79*
Trough	=	-5.57	-4.85	-7.36*

This is a most significant signature. In all cases analyzed, significant cycles occurred within two trading days of the aspect. In fact, significant troughs occurred in every instance within only four trading days (100%). These were not always powerful troughs, though, and what is remarkable is that within eight trading days *after* the aspect, powerful crests appeared in every case analyzed. This must therefore be considered a very volatile time band, one in which significant troughs *and* crests will likely appear and usually in that order (85.7%). Once again, sharp reversals in price trends were evident. The crests were noticeable after or on day of aspect, suggesting sharp rises near the date of this signature.

Conclusion: Significant cycles in gold prices are likely to be attained within two trading days of the waning Sun to Uranus square (100%). Within four trading days, significant troughs tend to occur (100%). Either on the day of, or within eight trading days after *this aspect, powerful crests tend to occur (100%).*

#20 SUN/NEPTUNE

Much like Jupiter, Neptune would seem to suggest an inflationary effect upon the price of gold. However, there is a slight difference too, for both the Sun and Jupiter are speculative in nature. Neptune, on the other hand, is more withdrawn and prone to imaginative illusions. The combination of Neptune with the Sun may indicate periods of delusions, false hopes, creative fantasies, rumors, and unrealistic thinking. In the market, this may cause a "sliding" effect as prices "skid" without restraint. The direction of the slide will probably be determined by the nature of the delusions, whether fear or optimism. Either way, prices should recover shortly after the delusion passes.

In the study, rather insignificant and inconsistent cycles were noted close to the time of Sun aspecting Neptune. In 13 cases, the aspect defined the reversal of a trend. However, within eight trading days, a more significant number of powerful cycles appeared in all aspect categories and usually this happened *after* the date of the aspect. This seems to confirm the expectation that a "slide" may be present at the time of the aspect, but that it ends shortly afterwards with a prominent crest or trough.

CONJUNCTION

12/4/75	½PB(+2)			Slight crest, prices dropped right after
12/5/76	+G(+1)	TT**(+5)	MB(-5)	Sharp 5-day rise to TT**
12/8/77	TT**(-1)	DB(+2)		End of slide down +2 days, then reversed up next 11 weeks
12/10/78	TT**(+1)	PB(-7)		Major up reversal began -7 days
12/12/79	+BO(-1)	MB(+5)	MT(+5)	Big 6-week slide up began day before
12/14/80	PB(-2)	MT(+8)		2-week rally began day before
12/16/81	TT*(0)	TB*(-4)	TB*(+8)	End of short trading rally, 13-week drop resumes

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	3.36*	3.86*
Crest	=	+1.79	+2.29
Trough	=	-1.86	-3.71*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+3.57*	+4.29*
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.14	-5.00**

C/S Index		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	8.36*	8.36*	8.86*
Crest	=	+5.36	+5.36	+6.58*
Trough	=	-4.00	-4.00	-8.71*

At the time of the aspect, this signature correlates very closely with prominent cycles in gold prices. However, there are no particular types of powerful cycles evident, though a slight tendency more toward the trading crests. Within eight days of the conjunction, powerful and consistent cycles do appear, with a stronger tendency toward troughs.

Conclusion: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two days of Sun conjunct Neptune (100%). The likelihood of a crest (71.4%) is greater than a trough (42.8%), however, within eight days powerful troughs are more likely to appear (100%).

WAXING SQUARE

3/4/76	-DT(+1)	-MB(-2)		Test of resistance level, then down 2 weeks
3/6/77	TT**(+1)	+BO(-5)	-MB(+6)	End of swing up; began 6-day correction down
3/9/78	PT(-1)	MB(+7)		Sharp 1-week slide down began that day
3/11/79		-DT(+4)	MB(-5)	Middle of short slide up
3/13/80	PB(+3)	½PT(+7)	TT*(-6)	End of slide down, 1-week rise
3/15/81	TB*(-2)	PB(-8)	PT(+9)	Middle of 3-week rally
3/17/82	PB(-2)	TT*(+5)		End of trough, reversed cycle upwards next 4 weeks

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.21*	4.29**
Crest	=	+1.79	+3.71*
Trough	=	-2.00	-3.57*

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-5.00**

C/S Index		Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	7.50*	9.29**
Crest	=	+3.93	+8.71*
Trough	=	-4.86	-8.57*

This is an interesting signature. At the time of the aspect, somewhat powerful cycles appeared within four trading days. However, there was no consistent pattern of troughs or crests. Also, as one got further away from the date of the aspect, the cycles became very powerful, but again troughs were just as likely to occur as crests. A significant number of crests or troughs do not appear during the central period, yet the tendency of one or the other is likely, and to a level of prominence. In some cases, the aspect coincided with tests of resistance/support levels. At the time, Neptune did not seem to have the strength to penetrate. If breakouts occurred slightly before aspect, then momentum stopped at the time of the aspect.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of the Sun waxing in square to Neptune (85.7%). This cycle will tend to be a prominent one (85.7%). Within eight trading days, powerful troughs and crests tend to appear (100%). There is no consistency as to whether the cycle will appear before or after the aspect.

WAXING TRINE

4/3/76		TB**(-4)	Prices depressed, and got slightly worse next 8 weeks
4/5/77	TB*(0)	DT(+5)	Midway point between double crests
4/8/78	TT*(+2)	-DB(-4)	3-week drop after TT*
4/10/79	PB(+3)	PT(-11)	Big slide down ended in 3 days, then major reversal up next 14 weeks
4/12/80	TB**(+2)	TT**(-3)	Sharp 5-day slide down began 2 days before
4/14/81	MB(-1)	TT**(+5)	Began 1-week rally
4/17/82	TB**(+1)	PT(-3)	Cycle reversed down -3 days for next several weeks

Relative Strength		Central Period	5-Day Period
Total	=	2.42	3.57*
Crest	=	+0.29	+2.29
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.64
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**5-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+0.71	+4.29*
Trough	=	-3.57*	-4.29*
C/S Index			
Total	=	6.71*	8.57*
Crest	=	+1.00	+6.58*
Trough	=	-5.71	-6.93*

The waxing trine of Sun and Neptune does not constitute a very powerful cycle for gold prices during the central time period. There is a consistency of trough cycles present then, but they are not strong. Thus, one may anticipate at least a trading trough at that time. It is perhaps more important to note the *absence* of crests during this trine, perhaps because Sun opposes Pluto very close in time, and the latter may be more potent. The only level of significance attained in relative strength seemed to be with prominent cycles which occurred within five trading days, and usually in less than four.

Conclusions: Rather weak troughs tend to occur within three trading days of Sun waxing in trine to Neptune (71.4%). Prominent crests do not tend to appear during the central time band. More powerful prominent cycles tend to occur within five trading days (85.7%).

OPPOSITION

6/1/75	PB(+1)		End of sharp slide down, but very little rally
6/2/76	PT(-1)	PB(-5)	End of sharp rise, then begin 7-week slide down
6/5/77	TT(+1)	PB(+7)	Sharp 1-week slide began 2 days later, then cycle reversed up next 21 weeks
6/8/78	MB(+2)	DT(-4)	End of sharp slide down, began 9-week rise
6/10/79	DT(+1)	TB(+3)	2-day retractment, then back to swing up
6/12/80	MB(0)	MT(-3)	End of secondary reaction, then resumed up next 4 weeks
6/14/81	TT*(-1)	MB(-6)	End of trading rally, resumed swing down next 4 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		3.29*	4.14**
Crest	=		+1.71	+2.71
Trough	=		-1.57	-3.57*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.14	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.29*	7.58*	9.14**
Crest	=	+4.57	+3.86	+6.28
Trough	=	-3.71	-3.71	-7.86*

This is one of the most significant of the Sun/Neptune signatures. Perhaps it is because it occurs very close to the Sun waning in trine to Pluto. Powerful cycles occurred consistently during the central period, with a slight preponderance toward crests. However, given a seven day trading band, more powerful and more consistent troughs appeared. It is interesting to note the weakening of the cycle type since 1978. Sharp drops in prices seem to occur very close to the date of this opposition. If the date coincided with a trough cycle, it seemed to culminate on the day of aspect or within two days later. If the aspect coincided with a crest, then prices tended to drop sharply within two days afterwards. It was as if the "glamour" had worn off, or the fear had subsided by the time of the aspect, or immediately after.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Sun opposite Neptune (100%). In most instances, it will be a cycle of prominence (85.7%). Within seven trading days, both prominent troughs (85.7%) and prominent crests (71.4%) tend to occur, but only strength of the trough reaches a level of significance consistently. The probability of a major or primary cycle occurring within seven trading days has been 100%, thus, this is potentially an important reversal-of-trend period.

WANING TRINE

8/1/75	PT(-3)	½PB(+9)		Sharp 8-week slide down began that day; reversed cycle
8/3/76	TB(0)	+G(+1)	MT(-4)	Began short 1-week rally
8/6/77	½PT(-2)	½PB(+7)		Up 2 days, then sharp 5-day slide down

8/8/78	TB(-3)	PT(+6)		Up day of, down next 2, then sharp up next week
8/10/79	TT*(0)	TB*(+2)	PB(-4)	Top of trading crest, down next 2 days, then up next 8 weeks
8/12/80	PB(-1)	TT**(+7)		End of 5-week drop, reversed up next 6 weeks
8/15/81	MT(+3)	TB**(+7)	PB(-10)	Near end of 2-week rally

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		3.14*	4.21**
Crest	=		+2.29	+3.50*
Trough	=		-1.29	-3.21*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-1.43	-3.57*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.14*	7.43*	9.21**
Crest	=	+5.15	+5.15	+8.50*
Trough	=	-4.15	-2.72	-6.78*

This is another powerful Sun/Neptune signature, correlating very strongly with crest cycles. In every instance powerful crests were noted within seven trading days, and most within only four (71.4%). In only two of seven instances were prominent troughs found within four trading days (28.6%). In several cases, prices dropped right after the trine, as if buoyed up for the aspect. Again, as with all Sun/Neptune signatures, no particular cycle of prominence dominates during the central time period, though the focus of strength is definitely upon the crest types.

Conclusions: Significant cycles tend to occur within three trading days of the approaching trine between Sun and Neptune (100%). These cycles are likely to be prominent in strength (85.7%). There is also a greater possibility that a prominent cycle will be a crest (57.2%). Within seven trading days of the aspect, very powerful crests tend to occur (100%). Somewhat weaker but still prominent troughs also tend to happen within nine trading days (71.4%).

WANING SQUARE

9/2/75	TB**(0)	-BO(-1)	TT(+3)	Breakout day before on way to PB
9/3/76	+G(0)	DT(+4)	PB(-7)	Big slide (gap) up that day and next 4; end of bear market -7 days
9/6/77	TT(+1)			In middle of long slide up next 9 weeks

9/8/78	TB*(0)	TT*(-3)		End of slide down, began 8-week rise
9/11/79	-MB(+2)	TT**(-1)		Slight pause in primary swing up
9/12/80	TT**(0)	TB*(+1)	PT(+7)	End of trading crest, sharp drop next day, then 2-week rise
9/15/81		PT(+4)	TB(-5)	Near end of 7-week rally

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		1.93	3.50*
Crest	=		+1.14	+2.57
Trough	=		-1.43	-2.29
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.29*	3.57*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.86	-3.57*
C/S Index				
Total	=	6.22	5.50	7.79*
Crest	=	+4.00	+3.28	+6.14
Trough	=	-4.29	-4.29	-5.86

This is perhaps the most insignificant of all Sun/Neptune aspects. No particular significant cycles of any consistency occurred within three days of the aspect. By the fourth day, though, prominent cycles did tend to occur, but they were not very powerful. At the seven-day point, powerful signatures did emerge consistently.

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Sun waning in square to Neptune (85.7%). Cycles of prominence do tend to appear within seven trading days (85.7%). In both cases, there is no tendency to associate with one type over the other (crest versus trough).

#21 SUN/PLUTO

This combination brings into play the speculative desire of the Sun with the long, explosive powerful potential of Pluto. The result, in many cases, was the end of a cycle, and an explosion followed by a long-term trend extending several weeks. This was not always the case, but often enough to warrant concern. In several instances, prominent cycles were not even apparent, but in those that were, this characteristic of explosive upheavals and long trends seemed common.

CONJUNCTION

10/2/75	½PT(0)	PB(-7)		End of sharp rise, short drop, then crest continued over 2 weeks
10/4/76	MB(0)	TT(+2)		End of 11-day drop, exploded to long rise next 6 weeks
10/7/77	-MB(-1)	+BO(+1)		Long rise followed next 5 weeks
10/10/78		TT**(+6)		Breakout 11 days before, exploded to PT in 14 days
10/12/79	TT**(-2)	DB(-4)	PT(-8)	Explosive drop 2 days before to 14 days later
10/14/80	TT*(-3)	TB**(+7)		Sharp drop 3 days before to 7 days after
10/17/81		TT**(-6)	TB**(+8)	Long drop next 5 weeks, began 1 week before

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.21	3.50*
Crest	=		+1.93	+3.00*
Trough	=		-0.71	-2.71

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	3.57*	3.57*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.14	+4.29*
Trough	=	-1.43	-1.43	-4.29*

C/S Index				
Total	=	5.78	5.78	8.50*
Crest	=	+4.79	+4.07	+7.29*
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.14	-7.00*

This signature is significant. Prominent cycles are somewhat consistently present at the time of this aspect, but they are more so within eight days. What might be more important, though, is the preponderance of cases wherein prices proceeded upon long trends around the date of the aspect. In six of seven cases, prices commenced a trend of over two weeks, and in three cases, the trend continued at least five weeks after the aspect. Thus, the powerful, explosive nature of Pluto seemed evident, particularly during the bull market where prices rose steadily afterwards for several weeks in three of four instances.

Conclusions: Consistent and powerful cycles tend to be present within eight days of Sun conjunct Pluto (100%). They are somewhat consistent within only three trading days (71.4%). Explosive potential is also present and may lead to trends in prices two-six weeks afterwards (85.7%).

WAXING SQUARE

1/2/76		TB*(+4)	PT(-8)	Midst of sharp drop -8 to +12 days
1/4/77	MT(0)	PB(+4)		Sharp drop next 4 days, then explosion up for 10 weeks
1/7/78	-MB(-2)	+BO(-4)		Breakout (explosion) -4 days to top +9 weeks
1/10/79	MB(+3)	PT(-6)		Explosion up for 6 weeks after MB +3 days
1/12/80	TB**(-2)	PT(+6)	TT*(-5)	Explosion up for 6 days
1/14/81	TB*(0)	TT*(+5)	-BO(+8)	Slight rise 5 days, then explosion down 2 weeks
1/17/82	½PB(+3)	-BO(-5)	MT(+10)	End of 9-day drop, began 10 day rise

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	2.36	4.57**
Crest	=	+0.43	+3.43*
Trough	=	-1.93	-3.07*

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+0.71	+4.29*
Trough	=	-3.57*	-5.00**

C/S Index			
Total	=	6.65*	9.57**
Crest	=	+1.14	+7.72*
Trough	=	-5.50	-8.07*

This signature consistently coincides with significant troughs within four trading days. The troughs are somewhat powerful, though not as strong as the crest which precedes or follows within nine trading days. These crests do not tend to occur until removed at least five days from the aspect. Once again, the explosive nature of Pluto is evident as rather long trends in prices follow, usually two-ten weeks afterwards. In three cases, breakouts occurred within eight trading days.

Conclusions: Prominent troughs tend to occur within four trading days of Sun waxing square to Pluto (100%). More potent crests tend to occur within nine days of this aspect (100%). Price trends two-ten weeks long tend to occur within five days following aspect (85.7%).

WAXING TRINE

2/1/76	MT(+2)	PB(-8)	End of explosive rise which began -10 days

2/3/77		TB(-4)	TT(+4)	Midst of long rise -17 through +34 days
2/5/78	½PB(+3)	PT(-8)		Explosive rise +3 to +18 days
2/8/79	DT(-1)	TB**(+1)		End of long rise day before, began new rise next 2 weeks
2/11/80	TT**(0)			Sharp 5-week explosion down started that day
2/13/81	-DB(-1)	MT(-3)		Sharp drop just before followed by slight rise
2/15/82	TT(-3)	-BO(+3)	TB**(+6)	Explosive 3-week drop began 3 days before

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.93	3.50*
Crest	=		+1.50	+2.79
Trough	=		-1.93	-2.79

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	4.29*	4.29*
Crest	=	+3.57*	+2.86	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.86	-3.57*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.22*	7.22*	7.79*
Crest	=	+5.07	+4.36	+6.36
Trough	=	-4.79	-4.79	-6.36

This is a rather weak signature, though it does seem to correlate with significant crests around the time of the aspect. In four of the seven cases, sharp crests ended right around the time of this signature, then exploded down. Again, trends of two–seven weeks commenced frequently about this time, supporting the concept of Pluto's long, powerful explosive nature.

Conclusions: Significant but not powerful cycles tend to occur within three trading days of Sun waxing trine from Pluto (71.4%). Two–seven week trends in prices begin about the time this signature is in effect (85.7%).

OPPOSITION

3/30/76	TB**(0)	PT(-8)		Midst of drop -8 to +12 days
4/2/77	TB*(+2)	PT(-8)		End of 10-day drop, began 7-day rise
4/5/78	MB(-1)	TT*(-3)		End of sharp drop day before, began 3-week sharp drop 2 days later
4/8/79	TT(-3)	PB(+5)	PT(-10)	Explosive 14-week rise began +5 days
4/10/80	TT**(-1)	TB*(+3)		Explosive 3-week drop began day before

4/13/81	MB(0)	TT**(+6)	End of sharp drop, slight rise next 6 days
4/15/82	PT(-1)	TB**(+2)	End of 4-week rally, then sharp drop several weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.72	4.07**
Crest	=		+1.21	+3.29*
Trough	=		-2.14	-2.86

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+1.43	+4.29*
Trough	=	-4.29*	-4.29*	-5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.72*	7.01*	9.07**
Crest	=	+3.35	+2.64	+7.58*
Trough	=	-6.43*	-6.43*	-7.86*

Somewhat weak, yet prominent and consistent troughs occurred in six of seven instances within two trading days or less of this aspect. In the seventh case, there was a primary trough only five days later. However, it was also remarkable that four primary crests happened one to ten days before. Thus, it seems that the cycle correlates with prominent troughs which follow good-sized crests within ten days prior to the aspect date. In six of seven cases, long trends of at least three weeks in duration followed.

Conclusions: Prominent but somewhat weak troughs in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Sun opposite Pluto. These usually follow powerful crests which happen one to ten days before (85.7%). Trends of at least a three-week duration tend to follow (85.7%).

WANING TRINE

5/28/75	PB(+3)	PT(-8)	End of sharp drop +3 days, began 8-week rise
5/30/76	PT(+2)	PB(-3)	End of sharp rise, began 7-week drop
6/2/77	TT(+2)	PB(+8)	Moderate drop 8 days, then 21-week rise
6/5/78	DT(-1)	MB(+6)	Sharp 7-day drop, then 9-week rise
6/7/79	DT(+2)	TB(+4)	7-week rise began in 4 days
6/9/80	MT(0)	MB(+3)	End sharp rise, drop 3 days, then 4-week rise
6/12/81	TT*(0)	MB(-5)	End of crest, 3-week drop sharp
6/15/82	-BO(+2)	MT(-6)	Breakout down 2 days before

Relative Strength			**Central Period**	**8-Day Period**
Total	=		3.50*	4.375*
Crest	=		+2.71	+3.375*
Trough	=		-1.88	-3.625*

Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.375*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.75*	+3.125*	+4.375
Trough	=	-1.875	-1.875	-4.375*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.50*	7.875*	9.375**
Crest	=	+6.46*	+5.84	+7.75*
Trough	=	-3.75	-3.75	-8.00*

This is a powerful and consistent signature. In six of eight cases, crests appeared within only two trading days. However, it represents a volatile time band, as powerful troughs also occurred within only eight trading days. The volatility might be a result of the Sun opposite Neptune which occurs within several days of this Pluto trine. Once again, the powerful Plutonian explosiveness is present, as trends at least three weeks in duration began around this period in every case analyzed.

Conclusions: Significant crests tend to occur within two trading days of Sun waning trine to Pluto (75%). In most instances, this will be a prominent crest (62.5%). Powerful troughs tend also to occur a little further out, within eight days (87.5%), making this a very volatile signature. Long-term trends of at least a three-week duration commence around this signature (100%).

WANING SQUARE

6/28/75	MT(+2)	DB(-5)		End of short, sharp rise
6/30/76	-BO(-2)	TB**(+1)		Breakout 2 days before; drop 2 weeks more
7/3/77	TB(+1)	MT(-5)		Moderate 4-week rise began next day, lasted 18 weeks
7/6/78	TT(+2)	TB(-3)		Minor bottom followed by 6-week rise
7/9/79	TT*(0)	½PB(-6)		Sharp 2-week rise began +5 days
7/11/80	PT(-3)	-DB(+5)		Sharp short drop -3 to +5 days
7/14/81	TB*(0)	MT(+3)	MB(-4)	3-week sharp drop in +4 days

Relative Strength			**Central Period**	**6-Day Period**
Total	=		2.57	3.42*
Crest	=		+1.57	+2.42
Trough	=		-1.14	-2.71

Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	3.57*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.86	-1.43	-3.57*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.57*	6.14	7.71*
Crest	=	+4.43	+3.71	+6.00
Trough	=	-4.00	-2.57	-6.28

This is not a powerful signature, but a consistent one. However, no particular cycle seemed to emerge during the central time band. Given an orb of seven days, significant but not powerful troughs and crests appeared in five of seven instances. Long-term price trends were likewise not as prominent with this Sun/Pluto signature which suggests that it is one of the milder ones of this type.

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles tend to occur within three trading days of the Sun waning square to Pluto (100%). However, there is no preponderance of crest or trough types. More prominent cycles tend to occur when the orb is extended to six trading days of this aspect (85.7%).

#22 MERCURY/MARS

Mercury is very quick, changeable, and fast-moving. Mars is also fast and sharp, The combination suggests a sudden but short run with gold prices, frequently in the opposite direction immediately preceding the aspect. In many cases, the sharp movement lasts only four days or so, thus this signature is primarily beneficial in two instances: it may act as a confirmation to an end of cycles suggested by other more enduring signatures, or it might be used effectively by traders who wish to enter and exit quickly from the market.

Mercury retrogrades about every 17 weeks, and Mars about every two years. Therefore, there are many instances where a series of the same aspect appears over a relatively short period of time. This series may be in a sequence of three occurrences or five. What is most noticeable is that the further out in sequence the particular aspect is from the first configuration, the weaker it becomes. For instance, five conjunctions of Mercury and

Mars took place from August 30, 1976 through February 12, 1977, all part of a series. The first four correlated with powerful cycles, whereas the last one coincided only with a non-prominent trading cycle. The last aspect of a series is frequently non-effective. It appears that such a series of the same aspect occurs only between the conjunction and waxing aspects, and not between the opposition and waning aspects.

CONJUNCTION

8/30/76	+G(0)	PB(-3)	-DT(+8)	Gap up that day; major cycle reversal up next 11 weeks
9/2/76	+G(+1)	-DT(+5)	PB(-6)	Same aspect as above, 3 days later
11/13/76	PT(+1)	-DB(+4)		End of crest, major reversal down next 8 weeks
1/12/77	PB(-2)	MT(+6)		End of secondary reaction, rise for next 10 weeks; minor reversal
2/12/77	TB(0)	TT(-3)		Weak, but 6-week climb followed; last of series
11/4/78	TB**(+1)	PT(-5)	DB(+8)	Very sharp, short drop; major reversal of cycle down next 4 weeks
11/29/78	PB(+1)	TT**(+8)		End of trough; major cycle reversal up next 12 weeks
2/4/79	TB*(-1)	DT(+3)		End of secondary reaction, up next week; major reversal
4/2/79	TB(-1)	½PT(-5)	PB(+9)	Midway bottom between ½PT & PB, then major reversal
5/6/79	TT*(+1)	TB(+2)	+BO(+11)	5th of series; sharp drop, followed by sharp rise after next 2 days
1/23/81	-BO(+1)	TT*(-2)	½PB(+6)	Sharp 6-week drop after rally ended; minor reversal
2/11/81	MT(-1)	-DB(+1)		Sharp minor reversal down after rally ended day before
4/23/81	TT**(-1)	TB**(+4)		Reversal down next 15 weeks after rally ended day before

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		3.00*	3.96*
Crest	=		+1.80	+3.08*
Trough	=		-2.27	-3.42*

Relative Consistency		All Types	Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00*	3.85*	4.62**
Crest	=	+3.46*	+2.31	+4.62**
Trough	=	-3.85*	-2.69	-4.23*

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.00*	6.85*	8.58*
Crest	=	+5.26	+4.11	+7.70*
Trough	=	-6.12	-4.96	-7.65*

This cycle is in many ways like Mercury retrograde. It seems to disturb existing cycles, but just for a short time. There is no consistency whether it will correlate with a crest or trough, just that it tends to at least temporarily end whatever cycle was immediately preceding. During the central time band, there is a slight tendency towards troughs; however, within nine days of the aspect, the preference is even between crests and troughs. In fact, significant but not powerful troughs appeared about 77% of the time during the central time band. Significant crests appeared about 69% of cases analyzed during the same period of time, but were somewhat weaker. As indicated in the introduction, the cycle was more powerful in the earlier stages of a series than the later. If the later aspects of a particular cycle were removed, the relative strength of the central 5-day trading time band would have been a significant and powerful 4.50**. Also significant is the fact that five major cycle reversals occurred near the time of Mercury conjunct Mars (38.5%).

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Mercury conjunct Mars (100%). If an orb of five days is allowed, and the last date of a series is excluded, then very powerful cycles tend to be present (100%). Sharp and usually short reversals of cycles tend to occur within five days (usually three) of this conjunction (77%).

WAXING SQUARE

8/11/75	½PB(+3)	-BO(-1)	PT(-9)	Prices depressed 2 weeks after breakout, then big drop next 6 weeks
10/19/77	TT*(+3)	+BO(-7)	-MB(+6)	Down day of, up next 3 days
10/15/79	-DB(+1)	TT**(-4)		Sharp drop next 2 days, then weak rally
11/18/79	TB*(-2)	TT(+3)	MT(-8)	End of depression, began long 9-week climb
12/20/79	MB(-1)	TT*(-1)	+BO(+7)	30 point change day before, then up next 5 weeks
12/18/81	TT*(-2)	TB**(+5)		Down day of and next 5 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		2.67	3.58*
Crest	=		+1.17	+3.42*
Trough	=		-2.00	-2.75

Relative Consistency		All Types	Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.33*	+2.50	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.33*	-3.33*	-5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.67*	7.67*	8.58*
Crest	=	+4.50	+3.67	+8.42*
Trough	=	-5.33	-5.33	-7.75*

This signature is not as significant as the conjunction between Mercury and Mars. Interesting things do tend to happen within only three trading days, though (100%), and usually only two days (83.3%). This aspect just as likely correlates with a trading bottom as a crest in gold prices during both the central time band (66.7%) as well as a nine-day trading orb (100%). The strength of a crest is much more significant than that of a trough with the 9-day orb. Also interesting to note is the frequency of breakouts that happened within seven days (50%), suggesting the lightning-quick quality of this aspect.

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Mercury waning in square to Mars (100%). Given a nine-day trading range, both troughs and crests tend to emerge, but the crests are considerably more powerful (100%). Breakouts are also common in this aspect (50%).

WAXING TRINE

9/13/75	-G(+3)	PB(+7)		Up slightly day of, sharp drop next 7 days
9/29/75	½PT(+3)	PB(-4)		Sharp 6-week rise began 4 days before; major reversal
11/8/75	PT(-3)	TB*(+6)		Sharp drop 3 days before through next 11 weeks; major reversal
11/14/77	PT(-3)	PB(+5)		Sharp drop day of and next 5; major cycle reversal down next 5 weeks
1/12/80	TB**(-2)	PT(+6)		Gap up next day and following 6 days, then major cycle reversal down next 8 weeks
1/13/82	-BO(-2)	½PB(+3)		Breakout 2 days before, down next 5 days
1/28/82	MT(+1)	½PB(-6)		End of rally next day, then down next 7 weeks; minor reversal
3/5/82	TB**(+1)	TT**(+3)	PB(+6)	Gap down next day and day before; con't next 6 days then major reversal up next 4 weeks

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	3.50*	4.75**
Crest	=	+2.44	+3.06*
Trough	=	-1.25	-4.06**

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.375*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.50	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-2.50	-1.875	-5.00**
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.50*	7.875*	9.75**
Crest	=	+4.94	+4.94	+6.81*
Trough	=	-3.75	-3.125	-9.06**

This is a very interesting and perhaps powerful signature. There were no instances of cycles culminating exactly on the date of this aspect, but in 87.5% of cases analyzed, powerful cycles did occur within three trading days. Sharp movement in prices were noted just prior to and after this aspect as it appeared to be a very inciting influence. If a prominent cycle occurred within seven days before the aspect, the opposite type would occur within seven days afterwards (75%). The presence of other geocosmic signatures should help the student predict just when the cycle is culminating, and the next due. In five of eight cases, major trend reversals commenced within six trading days (62.8%).

Conclusions: Powerful cycles tend to occur in gold prices within three trading days of Mercury waxing from trine to Mars (87.5%). A prominent cycle type tends to occur within seven days prior to this aspect, followed by the opposite type of cycle within seven days afterwards (75%). The aspect date itself seems to coincide with the direction of this short-term trend which began slightly before. Very powerful troughs tend to be present within seven days of this aspect (100%). In addition major trend reversals frequently commence within six days (62.5%).

OPPOSITION

12/10/75	TT(+1)	½PB(-2)	PT(+7)	Up day of and after, slight drop, then sharp rise for one week
2/2/78	-DB(0)	½PB(+4)	½PT(-6)	Secondary reaction ended in 4 days, primary swing up resumes next 4 weeks
2/13/80	TT**(-2)	TB**(+7)		Sharp drop 2 days as rally ended; minor reversal
4/5/82	TT**(+1)	TB*(-5)	PT(+6)	Midpoint of rise 5 days before through next 6, then major reversal down

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	3.00*	4.125**
Crest	=	+1.50	+4.125**
Trough	=	-1.75	-3.125*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.75*	+2.50	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.50	-2.50	-5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.00*	8.00*	9.125**
Crest	=	+5.25	+4.00	+9.125**
Trough	=	-4.25	-4.25	-8.125*

This appears to be another significant cycle, with a strong tendency towards crests, though not at the exclusion of troughs. It seems to be a very active aspect, as a number of cycle changes tend to occur within only seven trading days. The central time band, though, is only a two-trading day orb in which a prominent cycle likely takes place (100%). Again it is important to note which type of cycle is culminating just before the aspect, for the opposite type tends to follow shortly thereafter (100%). In every instance a powerful crest emerged with this signature, but it was usually six or seven days outside of the aspect date (75%), except in one case. This signature seems to correspond to a short-term swing in gold prices, a rally or secondary reaction, which begin just a couple of days before the aspect, and continue only a few days afterwards.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Mercury opposed Mars (100%). The date of the aspect is at least a couple of days after the culmination of a cycle, which then begins a swing which lasts only a few days after the cycle, resulting in another gold price cycle of the opposite type (100%). Powerful crests tend to appear within six days of this opposition (100%).

WANING TRINE

3/6/76	-DT(-1)	-MB(-4)		End of crest, though held for 2 weeks before reversal
3/6/78	PT(+2)			End of sharp rise, major trend reversal down next 7 weeks
5/2/80	DB(-1)	TT**(0)	MT(-5)	End of skid down, major trend reversal up next 10 weeks
5/2/82	TT**(-1)	½PB(+6)		End of small rally, sharp drop for several weeks after
6/14/82		MT(-5)	PB(+5)	Midway point between MT & PB
6/22/82	PB(-1)	TT**(+6)		Rally began day before

Relative Strength		Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=	3.25*	4.33**
Crest	=	+2.50	+3.17*
Trough	=	-1.50	-3.33*

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	6-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.33*	+5.00**
Trough	=	-1.67	-4.17*

C/S Index			
Total	=	7.42*	9.33**
Crest	=	+5.83	+8.17*
Trough	=	-3.17	-7.50*

This appears to be a somewhat reliable crest signature. In four of the six cases, prominent crests occurred within only two trading days of the aspect. Within six trading days, prominent crests were present in each instance. These crests are not usually powerful, as only one primary cycle was noted. In five of the six occurrences studied, a reversal of trend happened, usually minor, within only two trading days, and in four of those cases, the reversal began the day before the aspect (66.7%).

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Mercury waning in trine to Mars (83.3%). Reversals, usually minor, tend to then commence for a short period (83.3%). In most cases, the cycle present during the central time band will be a crest (66.7%).

WANING SQUARE

3/29/76	TB**(+1)	MT(-7)	Remained depressed 8 weeks
5/30/78	DT(+3)	MB(+8)	Up day of, then secondary reaction next 8 days
5/18/80	TT(-3)	½PB(+4)	Sharp drop next 4 days, then major reversal up next 7 weeks

There are not enough examples to make a valid study of this signature. So far it looks like it might correlate more with upswings in prices, followed by drops immediately afterwards. In every instance, a crest is followed by a trough. In all cases, prominent cycles do occur within three trading days, and interestingly enough, a leg of a double top or double bottom has emerged in every instance within seven trading days. Cycle reversals happened in two of the three cases.

<u>Conclusions:</u> Declines in gold prices tend to follow prominent crests which appear anywhere from seven days before through two days after Mercury waning square to Mars (100%). Significant but not necessarily powerful cycles tend to unfold within three trading days (100%).

#23 VENUS/MARS

Up until August, 1978, the Venus/Mars signature provided one of the most easily definable correlations to gold price cycles. Every major aspect coincided closely to a primary or major cycle, the beginning and end of nearly perfect primary swings. To illustrate, the first major aspect noted in the studies was the waxing trine December 4, 1975. A primary top was realized December 19, 1975 and a primary swing down followed until the primary bottom of January 20, 1976, just one week after the next Venus/Mars aspect, the opposition. A primary swing upwards then commenced until a half-primary crest culminated March 18, 1976, only five days after the waning trine of Venus and Mars, the next signature involving this pair. A steady primary swing down from March 18, 1976 then resulted in a major bottom April 15, 1976, just three trading days before the next meeting of these two planets in a waning square aspect.

The cycle then resumed with the last of a series of three conjunctions June 7, 1977. Only five trading days later, a primary bottom was completed, leading to a long primary swing upwards to a primary crest November 9, 1977. Just five trading days later the next Venus/Mars signature appeared in a waxing square. This was also the beginning of a five-week swing down, ending with the second of a double bottom on December 12, 1977, one day before the next Venus waxing trine to Mars aspect. A six-week rise in prices followed to the primary crest of January 25, 1978, just three days after Venus opposed Mars, the very next signature between these two powerhouses. Prices fell sharply the next two weeks, then began a primary swing upwards to a new primary crest March 8, 1978, just three trading days after the next blending of these two planets. A sharp drop followed to a major bottom April 4, 1978, two trading days after the waning square of Venus to Mars. The downward cycle continued another three weeks before changing course on a bullish primary swing that culminated in the primary crest of August 16, 1978, just two trading days after Venus conjuncted Mars.

However, the beauty and predictability of this cycle then ended. Series of retrogrades with one or the other of the planets caused them to go back and forth in the same aspect over the course of many months. Perhaps when they return to normal and direct cycles they will once again resume their steady and predictable correlation with primary swings of gold prices.

Since the rate of motion between these two planets does not differ much, a greater number of days has been allotted during the central time period to allow for cycles to culminate. In other words, an aspect between Venus and Mars may continue to last several days longer than one between Venus and the further out planets.

The combination of these two planetary principles would suggest significant movement in the cycles of all money markets. Mars is quite aggressive and eager and Venus tends to desire security and protection. The combination should coincide with a great demand to purchase appreciable assets. During times of financial uncertainty and great inflation, the purchase of gold would seem to be increased. The opposite would be true if the value of the dollar was increasing, and interest rates were soaring, making the holding of gold unattractive. Therefore, a trader must take into account the strength of gold compared to other holdings at the time of this signature. For at the time of an aspect between Venus and Mars, the type of cycle in effect depends greatly upon this matter.

CONJUNCTION

9/11/76	DT(+1)	-DB(+3)	½PT(+5)	Big gap up day before; volatile; cycle reversed 10 days before; rise next 9 weeks
5/16/77	-MT(-1)			Immediate drop next 19 days
6/7/77	TT(-1)	PB(+5)		Trough cycle reversed in 5 days, 21-week rise followed
8/13/78	PT(+3)	PB(+8)		Long rise began after PB +8 days; also ended long rise as cycle reversed
10/22/78	TB(+2)	+G(+3)	PT(+6)	After PT +6 days, 5-week drop as cycle reversed
5/21/79	+BO(0)	-MB(+5)		Breakout that day, long rise next 9 weeks; no reversal
4/5/81	TT*(+1)	MB(+5)	PT(-7)	End of small rally, then plunge down; cycle reversed -7 days

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.86	4.29**
Crest	=		+2.86	+3.71*
Trough	=		-0.57	-2.57

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+5.00**	+4.29*	+4.29*
Trough	=	-1.42	-0.71	-3.57*

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.86*	7.15*	9.29**
Crest	=	+7.86*	+7.15*	+8.00*
Trough	=	-2.00	-1.28	-6.14

This is a consistent and rather powerful crest signature. In fact, within eight trading days it is very powerful and very positive. Its effect is most notable right near the time of conjunction, as it either ends or begins a new trend (71.4%). When it occurs in a series (the first six cases involved two series of three each) of conjunctions, the last and possibly the first are the same in terms of what type of swing follows. Here, long bull swings occurred in the first and last, while long downward swings coincided with the middle conjunction.

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Significant and powerful cycles tend to occur within six days after Venus conjuncts Mars (85.7%). Significant crests tend to occur consistently within three trading days of this aspect (100%), while within eight trading days, very powerful crests tend to be evident (85.7%). Also within eight trading days of Venus conjunct Mars, major cycle reversals in gold prices tend to occur (71.4%).*

WAXING SQUARE

11/11/75	PT(-4)	TB**(+5)	Sharp drop -4 days to +10 weeks; cycle reversed
11/15/77	PB(+3)	PT(-5)	Sharp reversal down 5 days before to 3 days after, then rise next 16 weeks
10/25/79	TT**(-1)	PB(+5)	Sharp drop day of to 5 weeks after, then reversal upwards next 12 weeks
9/25/81	½PB(+1)	PT(-4)	Sharp drop 4 days earlier as 7-week up trend reversed

Relative Strength		Central 5-Day Period
Total	=	5.00**
Crest	=	+4.375*
Trough	=	-4.125*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Cycles Only**
Total	=	5.00**
Crest	=	+5.00*
Trough	=	-5.00**
C/S Index		
Total	=	10.00**
Crest	=	+9.375**
Trough	=	-9.125**

This is one of the most impressive signatures found. In every case, primary cycles were in effect within five days. In every case, prominent troughs and crests occurred within five days. Clearly this aspect seems to coincide with the end of long cycles, usually crests. In three of four cases,

primary crests ended four to five days before this aspect. In the other case, there was a primary top three weeks earlier, then an attempted rally which ended the day before the aspect. Traders using this signature are advised to look for a good crest just before the date of the aspect, then anticipate a sharp drop immediately afterwards as the trend reverses.

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Primary cycles tend to be present within five days of Venus waxing in square to Mars (100%). Prominent crests tend to occur within five days before the aspect, while prominent troughs tend to occur within five days after (100%). These crests are usually primary in nature (75%). The long-term cycle in effect within five trading days of this aspect tends to reverse for several weeks afterwards (100%).*

WAXING TRINE

12/4/75	½PB(+2)	PT(+11)		End of long drop, short, sharp rise, then major reversal
12/13/77	DB(-1)	TT*(-4)		Began 12-week sharp rise; cycle reversed
12/3/79	+G(0)	+BO(+6)		Breakout 6 days after, sharp rise next 7 weeks
11/26/81	PB(-3)	½PT(+6)		End long drop, short, sharp rise 1 week as cycle reversed
1/4/82	TT(+1)	TB**(-4)	-BO(+5)	2nd of series; slight rise -4 to +1 days, then breakout down next 2 weeks
3/21/82	TT*(+3)	PB(-5)		End of long drop, cycle reversed up next 3 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=		3.00*	4.17**
Crest	=		+0.83	+2.17
Trough	=		-2.17	-3.42*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.50	+1.67	+3.33*
Trough	=	-2.50	-2.50	-4.17*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.00*	7.17*	9.17**
Crest	=	+3.33	+2.50	+5.50
Trough	=	-4.67	-4.67	-7.59*

This is another significant signature, though not as predictable as the departing square of Venus and Mars. The aspect seems to coincide with solid troughs, usually several days before the aspect. This is then followed by a good rise lasting at least one week, sometimes many more, but it is not as powerful nor as consistent as the trough. The exception seems to happen when the aspect occurs in a series of three, as it did in late 1981 through March, 1982. In this case, the middle signature did coincide with a crest, but a very short-lived one (ended the next day). Once more, major trend reversals were evident in many instances (66.7%).

Conclusions: Prominent cycles tend to occur within three days of Venus waxing in trine to Mars (100%). A prominent trough (83.3%) usually precedes a crest (83.3%), and tends to take place in a time range of five days before through two days following the aspect. Within five trading days, rather powerful troughs tend to occur (83.3%). Also, major reversals of cycles frequently commence within five trading days, lasting several weeks afterwards (66.7%).

OPPOSITION

1/13/76	–G(0)	PB(+6)	Big gap down that day led to sharp drop; 8-week reversal rise followed
1/22/78	½PT(+3)		2-week drop followed after long swing up
1/28/80	MB(0)	PT(–5)	End of sharp drop, 2-week rise followed; major reversal down began –5 days through next 8 weeks
5/6/82	½PB(+2)	TT**(–4)	Slight 2-week rally followed; then downtrend continued

Relative Strength		Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=	3.25*	4.50**
Crest	=	+1.00	+2.875
Trough	=	–2.25	–3.00*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.25	+3.75*
Trough	=	-3.75*	–3.75*
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.25*	9.50**
Crest	=	+2.25	+6.625*
Trough	=	-6.00	-6.75*

This is another very significant signature, though the sample of cases is very small. In every case, powerful cycles were present within six trading days. This signature seems to define an important top of bottom, which is then followed by very sharp changes in direction for at least two weeks (75%). The cycle culminates either on the day of the aspect or within six days *afterwards*, but so far not before, though the third instance might be debatable, for a primary top did end five days earlier. However, it was followed by a major bottom which culminated on the day of the aspect, which was then followed by a sharp two-week rise in gold prices. Once more, major trend reversals were frequent, happening in one-half of the cases analyzed.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within six trading days of Venus opposite Mars (100%). It is as likely to be a trough as a crest. The trend tends to reverse for several weeks afterwards in many cases (50%).

WANING TRINE

3/13/76	TB(+2)	MT(+4)	End of crest, 10-week drop followed; cycle reversed
3/3/78	PT(+3)	TB(-4)	End of crest swing; 7-week reversal drop followed
3/7/80	TT*(–2)	PB(+7)	End of slight rally, sharp drop +7 days, then reversal up next 16 weeks

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	3.67*	4.67**
Crest	=	+3.33*	+3.33*
Trough	=	–0.67	–2.33
Relative Consistency		**Central Prominent**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+5.00**	+5.00**
Trough	=	–1.67	-1.67
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.67*	9.67**
Crest	=	+8.33*	+8.33*
Trough	=	–2.34	–4.00

Again, the sample is very small, but indications are that this is a very powerful and consistent cycle. In every case, a prominent crest occurred within four trading days. And, in every case, this was the end of a major trend, followed by very sharp changes of direction in gold prices for at least two weeks. Thus, traders might look for the end of a long-term cycle to occur very close to the date of this aspect followed by a sharp reversal immediately afterwards. In the cases analyzed so far, the crest signatures seem to be much more powerful, but that may be due to the small number of samples available.

Conclusions: Prominent crests tend to occur within four trading days of Venus waning in trine to Mars (100%). Immediately after the cycle culminates, prices tend to reverse for at least two trading weeks (100%).

WANING SQUARE

4/21/76	½PB(-3)	-MT(+4)	Temporary bottom, began slight 1-week rise
3/31/78	TT*(0)	-DB(+2)	Began 4-week sharp drop after its 1-week rally
3/30/80	DB(-1, +4)	½PT(-5)	Began 4-day drop, then cycle reversed up next 14 weeks
6/22/80	-DB(+1)		End of trough, 4-week sharp rise followed as cycle reversed
9/23/80	PT(0)	MB(+8)	End of bull market, cycle reversed, very sharp drop next 11 weeks

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	3.80*	3.80*
Crest	=	+1.40	+2.60
Trough	=	-2.80	-3.40*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.00	+4.00*
Trough	=	-4.00*	-5.00*
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.80*	8.80*
Crest	=	+3.40	+6.60*
Trough	=	-6.80*	-8.40*

This appears to be another noteworthy signature, though not the most outstanding of those involving Venus and Mars. Prominent troughs occurred in every case if an eight-day orb was allowed and prominent crests happened four out of five instances if a five-day orb was allowed. Thus, this is a volatile signature in which sharp changes are usually evident. As with other Mars/Venus aspects, this one too brings cycles to an end, though it is not predictable as to what happens next. In three of the five cases, sharp drops in prices commenced on or before the aspect. The duration of the ensuing decline was very short (four days) in one case, and very long (over four weeks) in the other two. In the other two cases, a major bottom completed within four days *before* the aspect, followed by an increase in prices during the aspect. Changes in prices begin then, and in many cases these will be long-term reversals.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles tend to occur within a period of three days before to one day after the waning square of Venus to Mars (100%). Within eight days of the aspect, powerful troughs tend to occur (100%). Reversals of long-term cycles tend to coincide with this aspect (60%).

#24 VENUS/SATURN

The effect of all planetary pairs involving Saturn would seem to be restrictive. Caution and conservatism would likely prevail, and probably more so in combination with Venus, the planet having to do with personal assets. During periods of aspects between these two, there is an air of tension present in the business world and investors tend to search for areas of greatest safety. Once more, if inflation seems to be out of control, gold will appeal to many as a safe haven. On the other hand, if fiscal policy seems restrictive, and inflation is being brought under control, then gold is not an appealing investment, particularly during this period of Venus blending with Saturn. One must thus pay close attention to action being taken on the part of the Federal Reserve Board and Central Banks in regard to monetary supply, for this will determine the direction the price of gold follows. The most remarkable feature about this signature was its correlation to short rallies or secondary reactions, followed by a return to the primary swing within two weeks. This happened 21 times in the 29 cases analyzed (72.4%). In six of the other eight cases, the cycle actually reversed for a long time.

CONJUNCTION

5/24/75		PB(+5)	PT(-5)	Sharp drop in price day of and next 5
7/19/76	½PB(+1)	MT(+7)		After Saturn leaves, sharp rally next 7 days
9/18/77	TB(-2)			After Saturn leaves, prices soar next 8 weeks
7/10/78	TT(0)	-MB(+5)	+BO(+8)	Secondary reaction ended in 5 days, then long upward trend resumed
9/6/79	TT**(0)	-MB(+5)		Slight secondary reaction next 5 days, then prices soar next 3 weeks
11/3/80	TT(+1)	MB(+5)		End of rally, downtrend resumed next 5 weeks
8/25/81	TB**(0)	MT(-4)		End of secondary reaction, sharp rise next 4 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		1.86	3.21*
Crest	=		+0.79	+2.79
Trough	=		-1.07	-2.79
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.29*	2.86	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.14	+1.43	+4.29*
Trough	=	-2.14	-1.43	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	6.15	4.72	7.50*
Crest	=	+2.93	+2.22	+7.08*
Trough	=	-3.21	-2.50	-7.08*

There are no consistent prominent cycles present during the central time period to any degree of significance. Minor cycles are often present within one day, usually day of or day after (71.4%). In most cases, prices began to rise right after Venus conjuncted Saturn, suggesting the suppressing effect Saturn might have upon Venus. If other Saturn signatures followed closely afterwards, prices remained depressed until all were completed, and then they began to increase. However, more frequent was the tendency for gold prices to rally or have a secondary reaction before returning to the primary swing around the time of this aspect (85.7%).

Conclusions: *Venus conjunct Saturn does not tend to correlate with powerful cycles in gold prices during its central time band. Within eight days, though, somewhat powerful cycles do tend to culminate (85.7%). In many cases, a secondary reaction or rally will commence or culminate within eight trading days (85.7%).*

WAXING SQUARE

12/9/75	½PB(-1)	PT(+8)		Began sharp rally next 8 days, then resumed downtrend
10/8/76	-DB(0)			Began sharp rise next 6 weeks as cycle reversed
12/4/77	TT*(+3)	DB(+6)	PB(-9)	Began rise next 3 days, then 3-day drop, then 12-week rise as cycle reversed
1/20/79	TT**(+3)	MB(-5)		Continued sharp rise after secondary reaction ended 5 days before
11/24/79	TB(+1)	+G(+3)		Began sharp rise next +9 weeks after slight secondary reaction ends
1/19/81	TT*(+2)	-BO(+3)		Sharp drop began in 3 days, lasted 2 weeks as short rally ends
11/24/81	PB(-1)	½PT(+7)		Began sharp rise next 7 days as cycle reversed

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		3.21*	3.86*
Crest	=		+1.21	+2.50
Trough	=		-2.43	-3.57*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	4.29*
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.14	+3.57*
Trough	=	-3.57*	-2.86	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.21*	7.50*	8.15*
Crest	=	+4.07	+3.35	+6.07
Trough	=	-6.00	-5.29	-7.86*

This is a rather powerful signature and quite consistent, also. What makes this combination so interesting is the fact that sharp rises begin immediately after the aspect leaves (85.7%), implying even more than the conjunction the idea that Saturn depressed Venus. In six of seven cases analyzed, the price of gold soared at least the next three days; in five cases, they continued to rise at least six days later. Also interesting to note is the fact that when powerful troughs coincided with this aspect (three times), they did so either right on the date or the day *before*. Crests, on the other hand, tended to be weaker and completed their cycle *afterwards*, usually two to three days. In the cases of troughs, a primary or half-primary crest followed within eight days after the aspect. The powerful troughs tended to occur during strong bear market phases. This cycle correlated three times (42.9%) with major trend reversals and four times with secondary reactions or short rallies.

Conclusions: *Significant cycles tend to occur within three days of Venus waxing square to Saturn (100%). These cycles are usually prominent in strength (85.7%), but more likely to be a trough than a crest (71.4%). Immediately after the aspect leaves, prices tend to go up (85.7%) for at least three days and usually at six or more days (71.4%). If a powerful bottom occurs within one day before the aspect, powerful crests are likely to follow within eight trading days after the aspect (100%). Major (42.9%) or minor (57.1%) cycle reversals tend to accompany this signature (100%).*

OPPOSITION

2/17/76	TB(0)	-DT(+6)		Sharp rise next 6 days, but could not penetrate resistance level
12/23/76		TB*(-4)	MT(+6)	Sharp rally began next day +6 days

2/11/78	½PB(-2)	+BO(+3)		Sharp 4-week rise began next day as trend returned up
4/4/79	TT(0)	½PT(-7)	PB(+7)	Sharp drop began that day +7, then long uptrend resumed
2/6/80	MT(+3)	MB(-7)		End of rally in 3 days, then resumed downtrend
3/29/81	PT(-2)	TB**(+2)		4-week rally ends, downtrend resumed next 19 weeks; cycle reversed
5/18/82	TT*(+1)	½PB(-6)		End of rally, downtrend resumed after next day

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.29	3.86*
Crest	=		+2.14	+3.43*
Trough	=		-0.71	-3.07*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	2.86	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-1.43	-1.43	-4.29*

C/S Index				
Total	=	6.58*	5.15	8.86*
Crest	=	+5.71	+5.00	+8.43*
Trough	=	-2.14	-2.14	-7.36*

This is not a signature of great significance during the central time period. However, extended within seven days of the aspect date, it becomes very significant and powerful. The tendency for powerful crests within seven trading days is slightly more likely that that of troughs, though both appear frequently. It is a rather volatile time band. In five of seven cases analyzed, sharp rises in prices commenced the very day after the opposition. There is an argument case that a sixth instance also fits into this scheme. This is most evident if a bottom occurs before the opposition (within seven days), which it did in all four cases. Good crests were then attained within six days after the aspect in most instances (four of five). In six of the seven instances, rallies or secondary reactions were present within seven trading days.

Conclusions: Significant cycles likely occur within three days of the opposition of Venus opposite Saturn (85.7%); however, powerful cycles are likely to occur within seven trading days of this aspect (100%). The probability of a powerful crest is very high (100%). If a trough should follow on or within seven days before, prices are likely to soar beginning the day after the opposition (100%), and culminate in a powerful crest within seven days after the aspect (80%). Rallies and secondary reactions tend to end within seven trading days (85.7%).

WANING SQUARE

4/30/76	-MT(-3)	DB(+4)		Prices depressed next 4 weeks after short rally failed
6/21/77		MT(+4)	PB(-5)	Cycle reversed 5 days before; uptrend next 21 weeks
4/22/78	PB(+2)			Sharp drop next 2 days, then cycle reversed as 5-week rise followed
6/18/79	TB(0)	½PT(+4)	½PB(+8)	Sharp rise began next 4 days, then secondary reaction, then resumed uptrend
4/27/80	MT(-1)	DB(+4)		Sharp drop began next day +4 as rally ended day before
6/20/80	-DB(+1)	TT(-2)	MB(-7)	2nd of series; sharp rise began in 2 days, continued 2 weeks as secondary reaction ended
7/28/80	TT**(-1)	MB(+3)		3rd of series; sharp 2-week drop followed as rally ended day before
6/7/81	MB(-1)	TT*(+1)	-BO(-2)	Very short rally, then resumed downtrend

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.44	4.00**
Crest	=		+1.31	+2.19
Trough	=		-1.75	-3.875*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	3.75*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.125	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-3.125	-2.50	-5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	6.73*	6.19	9.00**
Crest	=	+4.43	+3.81	+5.94
Trough	=	-4.87	-4.25	-8.875*

This is not a powerful signature during the central time band. However, it becomes quite powerful if given an orb of eight trading days, in which major or primary cycles occurred in every case analyzed. Powerful troughs were consistently evident then. There is no consistent, predictable pattern apparent here, though. In some cases, prices appeared to be depressed right before the aspect, in other cases, right afterwards. A good bottom usually occurred within five trading days (87.5%). In two cases, major reversals in prices began. And, in the other six cases, rallies or secondary reactions ended and prices resumed their primary swing.

Conclusions: Within five trading days of Venus waning in square to Saturn, prominent troughs tend to occur (87.5%). If extended eight trading days, the probability increases to 100%. An end to a rally or secondary reaction also tends to occur within eight trading days (75%), though sometimes it coincides with a major trend reversal (25%).

#25 VENUS/URANUS

This signature brings together two rather contrary principles. Uranus is highly speculative, excitable and changeable, while Venus represents the urge for safety and assuredness. Together, the result would seem to be a disturbance in regard to the safety of one's assets, causing perhaps rash and sudden action, a turn in the direction of one's strategy. In many cases, that is exactly what happened to gold prices when these two planets came together in aspect: the cycle reversed itself and embarked upon a new trend. Sometimes the trend was short-lived, as if the investment community just as suddenly realized their collective decision was made in haste. In other instances (40%), the change was longer lasting, representing a total commitment to the new path which would then be in effect several weeks, perhaps even months.

CONJUNCTION

12/11/75	TT(0)	½PB(-3)	PT(+6)	Sharp reversal began -3 days, ended +6, then long bear cycle commenced then reversal
9/30/76	MB(+2)	½PT(-9)		Sharp 6-week reversal up began next week
11/20/77	PB(+1)	PT(-8)		Long uptrend reversed 8 days before, then sharp reversal up began next day +10 weeks
9/24/78	+BO(+1)	-MB(+3)		Breakout up next day, up next 6 weeks
11/5/78	TB*(+1)	PT(-5)	DB(+8)	2nd of series; dramatic cycle reversal down began -5 days, continued next 4 weeks
12/25/78	TB*(-2)	MT(+5)		3rd of series; sharp rise next 5 days
10/27/79	TT**(-3)	PB(+4)		Sharp cycle reversal +4 days upwards next 12 weeks
12/16/80	PB(-2)	MT(+6)		Sharp upward rally -2 to +6 days
10/6/81	TT**(0)	½PB(-6)		Reversal down next 7 weeks after slight rally

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.33*	4.44**
Crest	=	+1.11	+3.77*
Trough	=	-2.67	-3.78*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.22	+1.67	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.88*	-3.88	-5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.33*	8.33*	9.44**
Crest	=	+3.33	+2.78	+8.77*
Trough	=	-6.55*	-6.55*	-8.78*

If a nine-day time band was allowed, then very powerful cycles of both types will be seen to occur in every instance. What is interesting is that troughs tend to be significantly present during the central time band, and they are prominent. But, nine days outside the central period, even more powerful crests are present (100%). This suggests the dramatic volatility inherent in this signature. As expected, this is reflected in sharp reversals of direction in gold prices within one week in seven of the nine cases analyzed. In the other two cases, very sharp rises in prices occurred within the next two days; in one case, there was a breakout of a resistance level, in another, a sharp gap upwards. In the cases of reversals, five of seven cases revealed new cycle trends lasting over four weeks. If powerful troughs appeared, they did so within four days and were followed with very sharp reversals upwards immediately, and lasting at least the next six days after the aspect.

Conclusions: *Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Venus conjunct Uranus (100%). The prominent cycle during the central time period is more likely to be a prominent trough (77.7%). Within nine days of the conjunction, very powerful crests are likely to occur (100%). Sharp reversals of trends are also likely within one week (77.8%). Major long-term trend reversals may also occur, lasting over four weeks afterwards (55.5%).*

WAXING SQUARE

2/25/76	-DT(0)	-MB(+4)	Sharp, short reversal down next 4 days
12/18/76	TB*(-1)	TT**(-6)	End of 6-day drop, reverse up next 3 weeks
2/2/78	½PB(+4)	½PT(-6)	End of secondary reaction, then sharp reverse up 4 weeks
3/21/79	½PT(+3)	TB*(-1)	Sharp reversal down next 4 weeks after rally ended +3 days
1/11/80	TB**(-1)	PT(+6)	Major reversal down after PT in 6 days
2/28/81	PB(+3)	TT*(-6)	Sharp major reversal up next 3 weeks
4/10/82	PT(+3)	TB**(+6)	Major trend reversal down for several weeks

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=	3.64*	4.07**
Crest	=	+1.71	+3.64*
Trough	=	-2.21	-2.86

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	6-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.14	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.57*	-5.00**

C/S Index			
Total	=	8.64*	9.07**
Crest	=	+3.85	+8.64*
Trough	=	-5.78	-7.86*

This is a very interesting signature. During the central time band, significant but weak troughs were frequently in evidence (71.4%). However, given an orb of six trading days, quite powerful crests became even more evident (100%). Thus, this is a very volatile aspect associated with gold prices. In the last three instances, major trend reversals commenced that lasted several weeks afterwards. It is interesting to note that the cycle associated at the time of this aspect is very often three or four days, and even as much as six trading days away. Thus, a trader should look for volatile price changes and possibly even changes of trend within six days.

Conclusions: *Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Venus waxing in square to Uranus (100%). During the central time band, the likelihood of a trough (71.4%) is greater than that of a crest. However, within six trading days, powerful crests are very likely (100%). Significant reversals in gold prices are common with this signature (100%), and may even represent a major trend change (42.9%).*

WAXING TRINE

3/20/76	MT(-2)	TB**(+7)		Major cycle reversal down next 10 weeks
1/14/77	PB(-4)	MT(-7)	TT*(+7)	Trend reversal up began -4 days through next 10 weeks
2/26/78	TT**(-1)	TB(+1)	PT(+8)	Sharp rise began next day +8, then major trend reversed down next 7 weeks
4/14/79	PB(+1)	TT*(+4)		Major reversal upwards next 10 weeks after 7-week drop ended
2/6/80	MT(+3)	MB(-7)		Sharp reversal down began after rally ended in 3 days
3/24/81	PT(+2)	TB**(+5)		Sharp major reversal down began in 2 days, lasted next 19 weeks
5/7/82	½PB(+1)	TT**(-6)		2-week rally begins

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	3.93*	4.28**
Crest	=	+1.79	+3.36*
Trough	=	-2.14	-3.28*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.14	-4.29*

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.93*	8.93*	9.28**
Crest	=	+4.65	+4.65	+8.36*
Trough	=	-5.00	-4.28	-7.57*

This cycle tends to associate slightly more with powerful crest than troughs when given an orb of eight trading days. But its primary correlation seems to be with changes of cycles. In every case, a cycle was either temporarily or primarily ended with this aspect, and in five of seven instances it represented a major cycle reversal lasting over three weeks (71.4%). Again the gold cycle failed to culminate right on the day of the aspect, and again good-sized tops and bottoms were noted within a short time frame. Thus, this too is a very volatile signature, and perhaps one of the most of all studied.

Conclusions: *Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Venus waxing in trine to Uranus (100%). Within an orb of eight trading days, powerful troughs as well as crests are likely to appear (100%), suggesting the great volatility of this aspect. Also, major cycle reversals of new trends lasting at least three weeks afterwards are likely (71.4%).*

OPPOSITION

5/6/76	-DB(0)	-MT(-7)		Volatile day, sharp drop next 3 weeks
6/15/77	PB(-1)	MT(+8)		Sharp trend reversal up next 21 weeks
4/15/78	-G(+1)	TT*(-4)	PB(+7)	Sharp gap down next day to PB, then sharp trend reversal up next 21 weeks
6/1/79	-MB(-3)	DT(+6)		Volatile movements, sharp gap up week before, upward trend next 8 weeks
3/30/80	DB(-1)	½PT(-5)	PB(-9)	Another DB +4 days, then short sharp rise, major change of direction began 9 days before
5/10/81	½PB(-2)	MT(+1)		End of short rally, down next 13 weeks
6/26/82	TT**(+3)	MB(-5)		End of short rally

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.21*	4.14**
Crest	=	+0.79	+2.93
Trough	=	-2.86	-3.71*

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.43	+5.00**
Trough	=	-4.29*	-5.00**

C/S Index			
Total	=	8.21*	9.14**
Crest	=	+2.21	+7.93*
Trough	=	-7.15*	-8.71*

This is a very significant signature. In four of seven cases analyzed, good-sized troughs occurred within one trading day; powerful troughs appeared within seven trading days in all instances. In only one case did a crest occur within five days of the opposition, and in that incident, a half-primary bottom also happened (within two days of the aspect). This signature coincided with very volatile price swings, as indicated by the fact that good-sized crests took place within eight trading days in six of seven cases. Changes of direction were again frequent, though oftentimes very short in duration. In those instances, prices were extremely erratic within eight days either side of the aspect.

Conclusions: *Venus opposite Uranus tends to concur with significant troughs in gold prices within three trading days (85.7%). Most of the time, it will be a major or primary trough, and it will occur the day of or within two days before the aspect (57.1%). Prominent crests tend to occur five to eight days away from the aspect (100%), making this a very volatile signature.*

WANING TRINE

6/23/76	-BO(+3)	TB**(+6)		Sharp breakout down in 3 days, continued fall next 4 weeks
7/9/77	TB(-3)	MT(-9)		Secondary reaction ends, up trend for next 19 weeks
6/2/78	DT(0)	MB(+6)		Short, sharp secondary reaction next 6 days
7/20/79	PT(+2)	PB(+11)		Short sharp secondary reaction down next 2 weeks
8/30/80		TT**(-7)	TB(-5)	Sharp upswing begins +3 days through next 4 weeks
6/27/81	-BO(-2)	MB(+5)		Breakout down 2 days before; no reversal

Relative Strength		Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=	3.00*	3.42*
Crest	=	+1.50	+1.92
Trough	=	-1.50	-2.17

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	6-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.17*	3.33*	4.17*
Crest	=	+1.67	+1.67	+2.50
Trough	=	-2.50	-1.67	-2.50

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.17*	6.33	7.59*
Crest	=	+3.17	+3.17	+4.42
Trough	=	-4.00	-3.17	-4.67

This is not a powerful signature. However, there are a few interesting features about it. For instance, no prominent troughs occur within four days of this trine (100%). The absence of troughs by default suggests the greater probability of crests, which did in fact occur within two days in only two of the cases. Breakouts of support levels were noticed twice, which is consistent with the idea of Uranus' volatility. Sharp reversals were also present, but for very short periods. The only real point of significance, besides the absence of troughs, might be the sharp movements in prices which occur within three days, in the form of breakouts or reversals.

Conclusions: *Significant cycles in gold prices do not tend to occur consistently nor powerfully within four trading days of Venus waning trine to Uranus, unless breakouts are considered. Prominent troughs tend to be completely absent within four trading days (100%). Breakouts and sharp but short price changes do occur frequently within three days (100%).*

WANING SQUARE

6/5/75	PB(-3)	TT(+2)	Gap up 2 days before completed bottom, cycle reversal up next 8 weeks
7/17/76	½PB(+2)	MT(+8)	Sharp reversal up for one week rally
9/5/77	TT(+2)		Nothing, perhaps negated by ♂☌♃. Long rise followed next 10 weeks
6/26/78	½PT(-4)	TB(+4)	Reversal of secondary reaction to up next 7 weeks
8/13/79	TT**(-1)	PB(-5)	Sharp reversal up from secondary reaction -5 days through next 7 weeks
9/28/80	PT(-4)	MB(+5)	Sharp drop and major reversal of bull market began 4 days before, lasted next 7 weeks
7/21/81	MT(-2)	PB(+9)	End of short rally and down next 2 weeks, then major cycle reversal

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.50*	4.14**
Crest	=	+2.07	+2.79
Trough	=	-1.43	-3.29*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	4.29*	4.29*
Crest	=	+4.29*	+2.86	+3.57*
Trough	=	-2.14	-1.43	-3.57*

C/S Index

Total	=	8.50*	7.79*	8.43*
Crest	=	+6.36	+4.93	+6.36
Trough	=	-3.57	-2.86	-6.86*

This is a significant signature, though aligned specifically to a crest during the central time band and slightly more to a trough with a nine-day trading orb. In six of the seven cases observed, primary or half-primary cycles were present within nine trading days. This is rather phenomenal, suggesting this signature has a most explosive potential. In the single instance when no prominent cycles were present, a powerful Mars conjunct Jupiter unfolded too. Possibly this negated the potency of Venus square Uranus, causing a "no-action" effect. Yet, in that case, prices shot upwards the next ten weeks, just as soon as the Venus-Uranus aspect ended. Also interesting to note is the fact that of those six powerful cycles, four were primary troughs. In another case, a major bottom happened, giving this a greater potential for downward explosions. Once more this signature coincided with several reversals of price trends (85.7%), though not necessarily long-lasting. All in all, this is a powerful, consistent and unpredictable signature.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles tend to occur within four trading days of Venus approaching the square to Uranus (85.7%). Within a time band of five days before through nine trading days after, primary or half-primary cycles tend to occur (85.7%). The possibility of a major or primary trough is slightly greater than that of a crest (71.4% trough, 57.1% crest). However, the probability of a significant crest (85.7%) during the central time band is much greater than that of a trough (42.8%).

#26 VENUS/PLUTO

The explosive nature of Pluto combining with the security-mindedness of Venus would seem to bring about a fearfulness of the safety of one's assets. Perhaps during this period investors become apprehensive about changes in the economic programs and policies of government, banking systems and businesses, and what effect these might have upon their investments. An approach of caution and waiting seems to be the rule here, and if great changes do evolve in the markets, they often seem to be afterwards. Hence, this signature does not correlate too often with primary cycles, unless they are due and other stronger signatures are also present. But they do correlate frequently with strong trading cycles and major ones as well, and are thus included in this study.

CONJUNCTION

11/19/75	TB**(-1)	TT(0)	One day rally, then resumed 3-week drop
9/10/76	DT(0)	-DB(+3)	1st crest after bear market; sharp 3-day drop followed
10/29/77	-MB(-2)	PT(+8)	Last leg of primary upswing before reversal
8/22/78	PB(+1)	PT(-4)	End of secondary reaction, resumed uptrend next 10 weeks
10/2/79	PT(0)	½PB(+4)	Major reversal down next 4 weeks
11/18/80	½PT(+2)	MB(-5)	Rally ended, downtrend next 3 weeks
9/6/81	TT*(-2)	TB(+1)	End of short secondary reaction, then resumed uptrend next 3 weeks

Relative Strength			2-Day Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		3.50*	3.93*
Crest	=		+2.29	+3.71*
Trough	=		-1.64	-2.93

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.57*	+2.86	+4.29*
Trough	=	-2.86	-2.14	-4.29*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.50*	8.50*	8.93*
Crest	=	+5.86	+5.15	+8.00*
Trough	=	-4.50	-3.78	-7.22*

This is a significant and in fact rather powerful signature. During the central time band, significant crests were slightly more common than troughs, and when extended out eight days, the crest cycle was significantly more powerful. There was no *consistent* correlation with major or secondary cycle reversals, though these did occur in a few isolated cases. Perhaps the most remarkable feature was its tendency to culminate in some cycle so close to the date of the aspect, usually within two days.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices tend to occur within only two trading days of Venus conjunct Pluto (100%). The cycle is a little more likely to be a crest (71.4%) than a trough (57.1%). Within eight trading days, a more powerful crest is likely to occur (85.7%), though somewhat prominent troughs also happen (85.7%).

WAXING SQUARE

2/4/76	MT(-1)			End of rally, then resumed downtrend
11/25/76	MB(+2)	TT*(-3)		Began 2-week rally
1/10/78	-MB(-3)	+BO(-5)		Middle of 3-week uptrend
2/22/79	PT(0)	MB(+7)		Major reversal down next 8 weeks
12/15/79	MB(+3)	+BO(-4)		Middle of long primary upswing
1/30/81	½PB(+1)	MT(+7)	-BO(-5)	Began 7-day rally
12/3/81	½PT(+1)	PB(-7)		End of rally, began 15-week drop
1/24/82	½PB(-3)	MT(+5)		Began 5-day rally
2/24/82	TB**(0)	TT(+1)	-BO(-4)	Began 2-day rally, then sharp drop resumed

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		3.39*	3.89*
Crest	=		+1.67	+3.22*
Trough	=		-2.05	-3.00*

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.78	+2.22	+4.44*
Trough	=	-3.33*	-3.33*	-4.44*

C/S Index				
Total	=	8.39*	8.39*	8.89*
Crest	=	+4.45	+3.89	+7.66*
Trough	=	-5.38	-5.38	-7.44*

This is another significant signature, though again there is a lack of a consistent cycle or pattern. There is a tendency for troughs to happen during the central time band (66.7%), but when extended out seven days, crests are just as likely to occur, and with more strength. In some cases this aspect coincided with the beginning of rallies or secondary reactions; in other cases, it coincided with the same cycles ending. In seven of ten cases, a major cycle culminated within seven trading days (77.8%). Perhaps most importantly, though, was the fact that four breakouts happened within five trading days before (44.4%). This is an abnormally large amount, and suggests that support and resistance levels in effect just prior to this aspect may not be safe.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three

trading days of Venus waxing in square to Pluto (100%). There is a greater tendency for troughs (66.7%) than crests (55.6%). Breakouts may also happen shortly before the date of this aspect (44.4%) if prices hover close to a resistance or support level.

WAXING TRINE

2/28/76	-MB(+2)	-DT(-3)	-DT(+5)	Trough between two crests
12/21/76	TB*(-2)	MT(+8)		Began 3-week rally
2/2/78	½PB(+4)	½PT(-6)		End of secondary reaction, resumed uptrend next 4 weeks
3/19/79	TB*(+1)	-DT(-2)	½PT(+5)	Sharp 1-week rise followed
1/9/80	TB**(-1)	TT**(-2)		End of short secondary reaction, then resumed upswing to all-time high
2/23/81	TT*(-1)	PB(+7)		End of short rally, then sharp drop to PB
4/2/82		TB*(+5)	PT(+7)	Part of 2-week rally

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	2.36	3.79*
Crest	=	+1.50	+3.36*
Trough	=	-1.79	-2.79

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.29*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.86	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.57*	-5.00**

C/S Index			
Total	=	6.65*	8.79*
Crest	=	+4.36	+8.36*
Trough	=	-5.36	-7.79*

This cycle is somewhat weaker than the previous two. During the central time band, troughs are more likely to happen, but they are not very powerful. Eight days out, powerful crests occurred in every instance analyzed. More than likely this aspect correlates to trading cycles, for during the central time band, only one cycle greater than a good-sized trading cycle occurred. No cycles culminated exactly on the date of the aspect either, suggesting once more the relative weakness of this signature.

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Venus waxing in trine to Pluto (100%).

Somewhat powerful crests tend to emerge within eight trading days (100%), while troughs are more prevalent during the central time band (71.4%).

OPPOSITION

4/16/76	½PB(-1)	-MT(+7)		End of 4-week drop, but no real rally
2/18/77	+G(+1)	+BO(+5)		Breakout up for next 5 weeks
4/12/77	DT(+1)	TB*(-4)		End of rally, drop next 2 weeks
5/13/77	-MT(0)			Began sharp 5-week drop
3/22/78	MB(-2)	TT*(+6)		Began 6-day rally
5/7/79	TT*(0)	TB(+1)		Middle of primary uptrend
2/28/80	TB*(-3)	TT*(+4)		Slight rally before resuming downtrend
4/11/81	MB(+1)	TT*(-5, +7)		Began 7-day rally
5/26/82		TT*(-5)	½PB(+6)	Middle of primary swing down

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.44	3.11*
Crest	=		+1.11	+2.44
Trough	=		-1.44	-2.11
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.44*	3.89*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.22	+1.67	+5.00**
Trough	=	-2.78	-2.22	-3.33*
C/S Index				
Total	=	6.88*	6.33	8.11*
Crest	=	+3.33	+2.78	+7.44*
Trough	=	-4.22	-3.66	-5.44

This is an even weaker signature than the last one. Even within a seven-day range, the strength of the cycles barely qualified the criteria for being noteworthy (3.00). At best, it may be said that this aspect associates with prominent trading cycles. There is not a single instance of a primary cycle culminating within seven trading days. Neither crests nor troughs appear consistently during the central time band, though crests are more prevalent with a seven-day orb (100%).

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles in gold prices tend to occur within one trading day of Venus opposed Pluto (66.7%). Prominent crests tend to occur within seven trading days (100%), but again, they are not powerful.

WANING TRINE

6/3/76	PT(-2)	PB(-6)	End of rally, resumed 7-week downtrend
7/17/77	TT*(+2)		Point in long primary uptrend
5/9/78	TB(-1)	MT(-3)	Slight reaction in midst of primary uptrend
6/25/79	½PT(-1)	½PB(+4)	Began sharp secondary reaction for 4 days, then resumed primary downswing
4/25/80	MT(0)	DB(+4)	Began sharp 4-day secondary reaction, then resumed 6-week uptrend
6/24/80	-DB(0)		Began sharp 3-week rise
7/20/80	-DB(-1)	TT**(+5)	Began sharp 5-day rally
5/29/81	TT(+1)	-BO(+4)	End of short rally, 10-week drop resumed

Relative Strength			Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=		2.75	3.50*
Crest	=		+2.125	+2.56
Trough	=		-0.875	-3.00*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.375*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.75*	+3.125	+3.75*
Trough	=	-1.875	-1.875	-3.75*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.75*	7.125*	8.50*
Crest	=	+5.875	+5.25	+6.31
Trough	=	-2.75	-2.75	-6.75*

This aspect seems to correlate to significant trough cycles during its central time band, but for the most part, they were rather weak. Given an orb of six trading days, more powerful troughs were evident. Though stronger than the opposition, this trine like other Venus/Pluto signatures is not a very strong indicator as to what the market might do.

Conclusions: Significant but weak cycles in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of the Venus waning in trine to Pluto (100%). The tendency is more for a crest (75%) to happen than a trough (37.5%). More powerful troughs are likely to occur within six trading days (75%).

WANING SQUARE

6/27/76	-BO(+1)		Breakout down next day, sharp 4-week drop
8/13/77	½PB(+1)		End of secondary reaction, resumed 12-week rise
6/2/78	DT(0)	MB(+6)	Began 6-day secondary reaction
7/19/79	PT(+3)		Began 9-day secondary reaction
8/28/80	TB(-3)	TT**(-5)	End of secondary reaction, resumed 4-week rise
6/22/81	TT(+1)	-BO(+3)	End of short rally, then sharp breakout down next 6 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	6-Day Period
Total	=		3.67*	3.92*
Crest	=		+1.67	+2.08
Trough	=		-2.17	-2.67
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**6-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.50	+1.67	+2.50
Trough	=	-3.33	-2.50	-3.33*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.67*	7.84*	8.92*
Crest	=	+4.17	+3.33	+4.58
Trough	=	-5.50	-4.67	-6.00

Along with the conjunction, this is the most powerful of the Venus/Pluto signatures. And like the waxing square, the waning square frequently coincides with breakouts in gold prices (33.3%), only this time shortly *after* the aspect. During the central time band, troughs were more likely to occur than crests. However, neither crests nor troughs appeared with any consistent level of power, even six trading days from the aspect. Thus, this signature is associated more with changing cycles than anything else, and more than likely the beginning or end of rallies and secondary reactions.

Conclusions: Rather powerful cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Venus waning in square to Pluto (100%). These are slightly more apt to be a trough (66.7%) than a crest (50%).

#27 MARS/JUPITER

The combination of these two principles is likely one of exaggeration and excess. Mars jumps, is impulsive and quick to act. Jupiter expands and

enlarges, gives hope and optimism to the situation. Together they indicate sudden and great hope, generosity, but frequently poor judgment.

This could have a dualistic effect upon gold prices. If war tensions are high on the planet, speculators might believe gold prices will soar, and hence there might be a great amount of volume on the upside for a short time. On the other hand, the optimism might concern the world economy in general, strengthening most major currencies, thus having a depressing effect upon gold.

It is interesting to note how many times this signature correlates to an intermediate trading crest midway between two good troughs, or a trading trough midway between two good crests. In this regard, it is very similar to the Sun/Jupiter aspects.

As there have been too few instances of Mars/Jupiter specific aspects other than the conjunction, most will not be individually analyzed from a statistical point of view.

CONJUNCTION

6/16/75	DB(+3)	MT(+9)		Prices depressed 5 days, then major cycle reversal up next 5 weeks
9/4/77	TT(+2)			In midst of long 10-week swing up
12/15/79	MB(+3)	TT*(+3)	+BO(-4)	30-point change 3 days later; midpoint of long swing up which began 6 weeks before through 6 weeks later
2/27/80	TB**(-3)	TT*(+4)		Long drop began 5 weeks before to 3 weeks after
5/5/80	DB(-2)	TT**(0)		Began major cycle reversal up next 9 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		2.90	3.10*
Crest	=		+1.10	+2.625
Trough	=		-2.70	-2.70
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.00*	4.00*
Crest	=	+3.00	+2.00	+4.00*
Trough	=	-4.00*	-4.00*	-4.00*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.90*	6.90*	7.10*
Crest	=	+4.10	+3.10	+6.625*
Trough	=	-6.70*	-6.70*	-6.70*

This signature may be beneficial in the determination of what type of swing may be in effect. It seems to transpire in the midst of a particular primary swing, though sometimes it would pose as an intermediate and not very powerful rally or secondary reaction. In every case, it would continue in the same general direction that was present at least two weeks before, so possibly knowledge of this signature may be useful after three days have passed. In almost every instance, a prominent but not necessarily powerful trough occurred within three trading days (80%). However, rises did not necessarily follow unless the market was bullish the preceding two weeks or longer. In no cases were the cycles realized within one day of the aspect, but rather two or three days out. Two major cycle reversals happened within three days of this conjunction (40%).

Conclusions: Prominent trading troughs tend to occur within three days of Mars conjunct Jupiter (80%). This signature tends to correlate with a trend that begins at least two weeks earlier, continues at least another two weeks, though it may represent an intermediate rally or secondary reaction against the primary swing. It may change the existing major trend (40%).

WAXING SQUARE

6/19/76	+G(-2)	-BO(+6)		Sharp drop began 3 weeks before through next 5 weeks
9/25/78	+BO(-1)	TT**(0)	-MB(+2)	Midst of sharp rise began 5 weeks before through next 6 weeks
11/29/80	-DT(+1)	TB*(-3)	PB(+9)	Midst of sharp drop began 2 weeks before through next 2 weeks; crest rally ends next day

The sample is too small for a more complete analysis, yet this signature shows signs of something reliable. In every case, it occurred after a cycle which culminated at least two weeks earlier. The resulting swing in prices continued at least two weeks later than the aspect date. In two cases, breakouts happened right after this square. In two cases, the date of the aspect correlated with a slight correction, usually within three trading days, then returned to primary swing for another couple of weeks or longer. Thus this signature might be valuable in defining what type of market gold is in, simply by seeing which direction prices were headed the two weeks prior to the aspect.

Conclusions: Primary swings of at least four weeks in duration tend to be defined at least two weeks before Mars waxes from a square to Jupiter (100%). Breakouts in that direction frequently occur within six trading days of this aspect (66.7%).

WAXING TRINE

8/24/76	PB(+1)	-DT(+7)		End of downswing, major reversal up next 12 weeks
11/14/78	DB(+2)	PT(-10)	TT*(+4)	End of sharp drop after major reversal, up next week, down next 5 weeks
1/12/81	TB*(+2)	TT*(+7)	-BO(+8)	End of sharp drop, rally for one week, then greater drop next 6 weeks

Even though the sample is small, it appears that the Mars waxing trine to Jupiter might correlate to the end of cycles, most notably bearish cycles. In every instance, this is what occurred within two days *after* the trine, followed by a rally, or a strong primary swing up of at least one week, though usually longer (probably depends upon the longer-term type of market in effect). In each case analyzed, a prominent trading bottom occurred within two days after the aspect (100%), and a prominent crest followed within seven trading days after the same aspect (100%). Two major trend reversals and one breakout was noted in the three samples studied.

Conclusions: Prominent and powerful troughs tend to occur within two trading days after Mars waxes from a trine to Jupiter (100%). A rally tends to follow, culminating in a prominent crest within seven trading days following the same aspect. This signature likely correlates to a major trend reversal or a breakout within ten trading days (100%).

OPPOSITION

11/16/76	PT(-1)	-DB(+2)	End of up cycle, beginning of 8-week swing down. Major reversal.
1/25/79	TT**(-1)	MB(-8)	Temporary end of upswing, secondary reaction next week, then resumed primary uptrend
3/24/81	PT(+2)	TB**(+5)	End of up cycle, beginning of 19-week major reversal down

Again the sample is very small, but very impressive. In every instance, the opposition coincided with a powerful crest within only two trading days (100%), then began a sharp drop. In two of the three cases, this represented a major reversal of a bull market to a bear market. In the third case, the aspect correlated only with a secondary reaction of one week, but it was nonetheless a sharp drop.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles, usually crests, tend to occur within two trading days of Mars opposed Jupiter (100%). A sharp correction in prices *follows for at least one week (100%), and frequently represents a major trend reversal (66.7%).*

WANING TRINE

1/29/77	TB(-1)	TT*(-4)		Slight correction in long upswing that began 3 weeks before through 8 weeks after
4/6/79	TT(-2)	-PB(+5)	PT(-7)	Midst of sharp drop 1 week each side; major reversal up next 14 weeks after PB
6/6/81	MB(-1)	TT*(+1)		Midst of long drop begun 10 weeks before through next 9 weeks; this was a short correction

This cycle is much like the first two. In each instance, a correction of the basic market occurred within two trading days of this trine, and then prices resumed their longer-term trend. Thus this aspect may be helpful to the trader or student who will look for it to represent a very short correction to a swing that is already underway. In two of the cases studied, this swing continued for a long time after the aspect (i.e. eight and nine weeks afterwards). In the third case, April 6, 1979, the aspect occurred in the middle of a very short downswing of only two weeks, which itself was in the middle of a long upswing some three months before through three months afterwards.

Conclusions: *Slight corrections or retractments to swings in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Mars waning in square to Jupiter (100%). Afterwards prices resume the direction of their primary swing in effect just prior to the signature.*

WANING SQUARE

3/15/77	-MB(-1)	PT(+6)		End of secondary reaction, followed by completion of upswing 6 days later, then major reversal down next 12 weeks
5/20/79	+BO(+1)	-MB(+6)		Breakout next trading day, followed by downward correction, then completed upswing 3 weeks later
7/26/81		PB(+6)	MT(-6)	End of down cycle next week, major reversal up next 7 weeks

This is a somewhat mystifying signature. It seems to indicate the end of a long-term primary cycle, the last leg of it after a slight correction. In two of three instances, the primary cycle ended one week after this aspect. Also in two of three instances, a retractment of prices within the major cycle happened close to the aspect date, followed by another leg of the primary cycle. In the May 20, 1979 case, a breakout occurred, which may have

assured that the primary swing would not be complete for a little longer. Yet there was a correction, albeit a minor one, right after the gap up which occurred the next trading day. Therefore, it appears that this cycle could suggest a temporary correction in the primary swing, followed by at least another week in the direction of the swing, before a major cycle reversal. Also interesting to note is the presence of rather strong cycles which occurred six days after the aspect (100%).

Conclusions: *A correction or retractment in the primary swing of gold prices tends to occur with the approaching square of Mars to Jupiter (66.7%). Prices then resume their primary direction for at least one week after this correction (100%). Frequently, the next leg of the primary swing is its last move in the primary direction before reversing its trend (66.7%).*

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.90	3.975*
Relative Consistency		**All Types**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.75*	3.75*	4.75*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.65*	6.65*	8.725*

Conclusions: *The Mars/Jupiter signature is a fairly consistent though not very powerful one coinciding with gold price cycles during a central time band. 75% of the time a prominent cycle will occur within three trading days, and the average strength of this cycle is somewhere between a trading and major type. Given an orb of seven trading days, the frequency of occurrence for a prominent cycle increases to 95%, and the relative strength is on the order of a ½ primary cycle. However, the greatest use of this signature seems to be in its tendency to either define the type of market in effect, and to remain in effect for a period of time afterwards, or in its synchronicity with ending a long-term cycle altogether, depending upon which aspect is operative. In the later case, the signature is fairly reliable in its correlation with a change of direction for at least one week afterwards, making it a rather profitable indicator.*

#28 MARS/SATURN

This signature represents tension and suppression of desire. In astrology, it is considered one of the war-like signatures, for in many instances of its presence, military tensions dominated the news. The threat of war frequently sends speculators and investors into the precious metals markets as buyers for several reasons. One, the possibility of war means huge defense spending and the consequent increase in Federal debt. Two, certain countries will impose economic sanctions against other countries in the form of import and export of commodities. Those countries which do not import a certain commodity will find prices for it skyrocketing as the demand exceeds the available supply. Taking these points into account, one might expect the price of gold to increase during hard aspects of Mars to Saturn. This is most particularly true if the threat of military tension looms in the air. If not, then the principle of aggression and desire (Mars) will be suppressed by the caution and fearfulness of Saturn, resulting in action designed to protect one's assets from loss. In that case, gold would not appear to be attractive. Thus, the investor must position him or herself as Mars comes close to an aspect to Saturn: "Is there a threat of a military or war outbreak?" If so, expect prices of gold to accelerate. If not, and none arises, expect prices to decline under the aspect, then rise after it lifts.

In the analyses which follow, slightly greater orbs between aspect date and cycle culminations have been allowed due to the slower motion between these two planets.

CONJUNCTION

6/12/76	-DB(-4)	PB(+9)	Prices depressed during whole period
6/4/78	DT(-1)	MB(+6)	End of long upswing, began secondary reaction next 6 days
6/24/80	-DB(-1)	PT(+9)	End of 2-week drop, sharp rise next 9 days, then major cycle reversal

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	3.33*	4.67**
Crest	=	+1.33	+3.00*
Trough	=	-2.00	-3.67*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.67	+3.33*
Trough	=	-3.33*	-5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.33*	9.67*
Crest	=	+3.00	+6.33
Trough	=	-5.33	-8.67*

The sample is still too small to be considered a reliable indicator. Yet, what has been found seems most likely to become a stable, powerful signature. In every case, a major cycle was attained during the central time band, and another major or primary cycle occurred within nine trading days afterwards. In all three cases, a major cycle happened just prior to the aspect, followed by another within nine days after. However, the latter cycle was not always opposite from the former (it was in two of the three instances).

What is also interesting is that each of the cycles which occurred just before the conjunction were double tops or bottoms of some other cycle close by.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices may tend to occur shortly before the conjunction of Mars and Saturn (100%). Another primary or major cycle may tend to follow within nine days afterwards (100%).

WAXING SQUARE

11/1/76	TB(0)	+BO(-2)	PT(+10)	Sharp drop that day, breakout up 2 days before through next 10, then major reversal down
11/19/78	DB(-2)	TT*(+4)	PB(+8)	Short rise up that week, sharp drop next week, then major reversal up next 12 weeks
12/2/80	-DT(0)	PB(+8)	½PT(-6)	Sharp 8-day drop began that day as rally ends

Relative Strength			4-Day Central Period	10-Day Period
Total	=		3.67*	5.00**
Crest	=		+3.00*	+3.67*
Trough	=		-1.67	-3.67*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**10-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+5.00**	+5.00**	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.33*	-1.67	-3.33*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.67*	8.67*	10.00**
Crest	=	+8.00*	+8.00*	+8.67*
Trough	=	-5.00	-3.33	-7.00*

Again, the sample is too small to be considered a reliable indicator. Significant cycles appeared very close to the date of the square, particularly crests, and several powerful cycles emerged within ten days. At this point, it is difficult to assess just what the effect of this signature may be, other than powerful primary cycles tend to occur afterwards (100%). In two of three cases, sharp drops followed through the next week after a prominent crest. In the third case, the opposite was true—a breakout upwards led to a primary crest afterwards. In two of the three cases, major trend reversals unfolded within ten days afterwards.

Conclusions: Significant cycles in gold prices may tend to happen within two days of Mars waxing the square from Saturn (100%). Within ten days afterwards, a primary cycle may be attained (100%).

OPPOSITION

2/24/77	+BO(+2)			Breakout upwards in 2 days led to sharp rise next 4 weeks
3/12/79	-DT(+3)	MB(-5)	½PT(+10)	Rally began for 10 days
3/25/81	PT(+1)	TB**(+4)		Major cycle reversal as 10-week drop follows

There is not enough data to make a statistical analysis yet. In two cases, sharp upswings followed this aspect. In the other case, a long downturn followed. The fact that a major, a primary and a breakout all occurred within three days of the opposition suggests that it may be a powerful signature. Good upward swings seem to accompany it right away, no more than three days later.

WANING SQUARE

6/15/75	DB(+5)	TT(-5)		Depressed that day and next 5, then major reversal up for next 5 weeks
6/25/77	MT(+1)	PB(-9)		End of short crest, secondary reaction next week
7/10/79	TT*(0)	½PB(-7)	PT(+11)	Pause at end of short crest, began another next week before secondary reaction
7/25/81	PB(+6)	MT(-6)		Sharp drop for one week began next day, then major cycle reversal up next 7 weeks

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	1.25	4.50**
Crest	=	+1.25	+2.25
Trough	=	-0.00	-4.50**

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	9-Day Prominent
Total	=	2.50	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-0.00	-5.00**

C/S Index			
Total	=	3.75	9.50**
Crest	=	+3.75	+6.00
Trough	=	-0.00	-9.50**

In only one-half of the cases analyzed did a cycle appear during the central time band, and in those cases, it was attained within only one day of the aspect. However, within nine trading days, very powerful trough cycles were attained in every instance. Also noteworthy is the fact that in every case, prices were depressed for a few days after this square. In 50% of instances studied, a major trend reversal unfolded within six days after the aspect.

Conclusions: Significant cycles do not occur consistently during the central time band of Mars waning the square to Saturn. However, within six days afterwards, prominent cycles tend to occur (100%). Prices tend to be depressed for a short time immediately after this aspect (100%).

TOTALS OF MARS/SATURN SIGNATURES

Relative Strength		Central Period	6-Day Period	10-Day Period
Total	=	3.00*	3.66*	4.62**

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	6-Day Prominent	10-Day Prominent
Total	=	4.23*	5.00**	5.00**

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.23*	8.66*	9.62**

Conclusions: Prominent and somewhat powerful cycles tend to occur within four trading days of a Mars-Saturn hard aspect (84.6%). Powerful and very consistent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within six trading days of Mars-Saturn aspects (100%). Within ten trading days, extremely powerful cycles in gold prices tend to unfold (100%). Major trend reversals also happen frequently within ten trading days of this signature (46.2%).

#29 MARS/URANUS

The aggressive, impulsive principles of Mars blending with the speculative, erratic, sudden change of Uranus would seem to result in a most volatile time period in all markets. Needless to say, this is a very fiery time, one in which drastic and quick action is taken. In the study of astrology, aspects between these two planets are considered accident-prone periods, in which rash decisions and actions are undertaken.

This expectation was borne out in the studies of gold prices. In most instances, prices fluctuated wildly, and sharp, short disturbances of cycles were noted. Long reversals of trends were not as dominant as in other Uranus signatures, but its nature did seem very explosive for a short time.

CONJUNCTION

10/18/76	TT(0)	-DB(-5)	+BO(+7)	Prices dropped next 2 days, then breakout next week led to 4-week climb
10/11/78		TT**(+5)	PT(+13)	Sharp rise in primary swing began in 3 days, lasted 3 weeks
10/2/80	MB(0)	PT(-8)		Very volatile; end of sharp drop, then sharp rise next 4 days. Major reversal down.

The sample is too small to do a statistical analysis. In two of three cases, a prominent cycle occurred exactly on the day of the aspect. Sharp movement in prices took place in every instance, close to the date of the aspect. Prices seemed to soar upward in all three cases; in two cases, the climb continued for three weeks or so.

WAXING SQUARE

2/24/77	+BO(+2)		Breakout of resistance level in 2 days, continued rise next 4 weeks
2/16/79	PT(+3)	TB**(-3)	Sharp rise -3 to +3 days, then major reversal down next 8 weeks
2/6/81	MT(+2)	½PB(-4)	End of minor reversal rally, sharp drop next 4 weeks

Again, the sample is too small to analyze statistically. In all three cases, prices went up for at least the next two days, and then in two cases, they broke down in the next two weeks. If the pattern continues, then one might expect a trough just before the aspect, followed by a quick rise lasting perhaps until just after aspect, then a sharp drop. However, it is too soon to tell with any sense of reliability. It does appear that this will be a powerful signature, and certainly a volatile one, as breakouts and reversals occurred within three days in each instance.

WAXING TRINE

4/3/77	TB*(+2)	PT(-8)		Major trend down began 8 days before, lasted 12 weeks
3/26/79	½PT(0)	TB*(-4)		Sharp 3-week minor reversal down began that day
3/17/81	TB*(-3)	PT(+7)	PB(-9)	Sharp rise ended in 7 days, then major trend reversal down next 19 weeks

The sample is still too small to analyze. It appears to coincide with very sharp price movements, one in which crests are achieved within a week afterwards, then followed by sharp drops in price. Interesting to note is the presence of very powerful crests within eight trading days, primary or half-primary in nature. In all cases, these were followed by dramatic reversals down.

OPPOSITION

6/28/75	MT(+2)	DB(-5)		Very volatile; major cycle reversal up for 5 weeks
6/16/77	PB(-2)	MT(+7)		Major trend reversal up next 21 weeks
6/9/79	-DT(+1)	TB(+2)		Very volatile; 1-week sharp rise began next 2 days
6/1/81	TT(0)	-BO(+3)	MB(+4)	Reversal of short rally; price fell next 9 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		3.75*	4.00**
Crest	=		+1.75	+2.50
Trough	=		-2.50	-3.50*
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.75*	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-3.75*	-2.50	-3.75*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.75*	8.75*	9.00**
Crest	=	+5.50	+4.25	+6.25
Trough	=	-6.25	-5.00	-7.25

Though the sample is still very small, indications are that this is a significant signature. Prominent cycles occurred within three trading days in each of the four cases studied, and at least a major cycle ocurred within four days. In every instance, prices were volatile, greatly disturbing existing cycles. Prominent crests happened within seven trading days and significant troughs took place within only five days (100%). Two major trend reversals unfolded in four cases observed (50%).

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Mars opposite Uranus (100%). Within a seven-day orb, more powerful crests and troughs seem reliable (75%). Sharp reversals of cycles are likely within two trading days (100%), and may represent major trend changes (50%). Prices are apt to fluctuate greatly.

WANING TRINE

11/6/75	PT(-1)	TB**(+7)		Major trend reversal down next 11 weeks
3/31/76	TB*(-1)			Prices depressed next 6 weeks
9/16/77	TB(-1)			8-week rise began that day, but part of long primary swing
9/4/79	TT**(+2)	-MB(+7)		Big 3-week rise began in middle of primary swing up
8/27/81	TB**(-2)	MT(-6)	TT*(+9)	Sharp reversal up began 2 days before, lasted 4 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		2.60	2.70
Crest	=		+1.50	+2.10
Trough	=		-1.10	-2.00
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	4.00*	4.00*
Crest	=	+2.00	+2.00	+3.00
Trough	=	-3.00*	-2.00	-4.00*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.60*	6.60*	6.70*
Crest	=	+3.50	+3.50	+5.10
Trough	=	-4.10	-3.10	-6.00

So far, this does not appear to be a consistently powerful cycle. It does, however, seem to shed light on the direction the price of gold will take shortly afterwards, and will continue for some weeks. In every instance, a direction became clear within the following week, and that trend lasted at least the next three.

Conclusions: Significant but not powerful cycles tend to occur within two trading days of Mars waning in trine to Uranus (100%). A definite trend in gold prices tends to be defined within the week of this aspect and that trend tends to stay in effect at least three weeks (100%).

WANING SQUARE

5/23/76	PB(+2)	PT(+6)	Down 2 days, then short, sharp rally up next 6 days; minor reversal
5/18/78	TT*(+3)	DT(+8)	In midst of primary upward swing
10/31/79	PB(0)	MT(+4)	Sharp major upward reversal that day and next 12 weeks
10/18/81		TB**(+8)	Down next 6 weeks; depressed; lack of cycle may have been negated by ♃☌♇

Relative Strength		Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=	3.00*	4.125**
Crest	=	+0.50	+3.00*
Trough	=	-2.50	-3.125*
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	3.75*	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.25	+3.75*
Trough	=	-2.50	-3.75*
C/S Index			
Total	=	6.75*	9.125**
Crest	=	+1.75	+6.75*
Trough	=	-5.00	-6.875*

Despite the small sample, some intriguing implications are suggested. First, no strong crests appeared during the central time band, and those that did emerge were always *after* the aspect. They were also very strong. In three of four cases, strong upward swings followed this square. This may mean that Mars approaching the square to Uranus could correlate to sharp downward pressure on gold prices, which lifts immediately afterwards. More likely, though, is that this aspect followed the pattern of other Mars/Uranus signatures: prices are disturbed around the time of the aspect, and dramatic fluctuations or prices result. However, like the waning trine, this signature too tends to define a trend shortly afterwards, one that may last several weeks.

Conclusions: Crests do not tend to occur within three days of Mars waning in square to Uranus. They do tend to happen within eight days afterwards (75%). About 50% of the time, a powerful (perhaps primary) bottom will occur very close to the date of the aspect. If so, a sharp reversal upward tends to follow immediately, with a good crest realized within the next eight trading days.

TOTAL RESULTS OF MARS/URANUS SIGNATURES

Relative Strength		Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=	2.91	3.85*
Relative Consistency		**Central Prominent**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.09*	4.77**
C/S Index			
Total	=	7.00*	8.62*

Conclusions: Significant but not necessarily powerful cycles tend to occur within three trading days of Mars in aspect to Uranus (81.8%). However, within nine trading days, rather powerful cycles in gold prices do tend to culminate (95.4%). Major trend reversals are also frequent during this time band (36.4%).

#30 MARS/PLUTO

The aggressiveness of Mars combined with the forceful, explosive potential of Pluto makes this a signature of great tension. The threat of violence is strong when these two planets come together, and could correlate to times that investors rush in to cover their positions in the event of a military uprising. As with all Pluto aspects, this one too often leads to the end of one direction in prices, and the beginning of long trends in the opposite direction. Frequently breakouts happen along the way, or very close to the date of the aspect. Unfortunately there are not a number of instances to make a reliable statistical analysis of each major aspect, but the reader can still observe the explosive potential in prices that seem to occur.

CONJUNCTION

9/9/76	-DT(+1)	-DB(+4)	PB(-10)	Explosive & volatile next week, then down next 3 weeks; major cycle reversal up began 10 days before
8/28/78	PB(-3)	TT**(+6)		Exploded up next 10 weeks after end of secondary correction
8/12/80	PB(-1)	TT**(+7)		Exploded up next 6 weeks; major trend reversal

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	4.33**	4.33**
Crest	=	+1.00	+2.67
Trough	=	-3.33*	-4.33**

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.67	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.33*	-5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	9.33**	9.33**
Crest	=	+2.67	+7.67*
Trough	=	-6.67*	-9.33*

In all three cases this coincided with a major cycle in gold prices. Also, explosiveness was present during the week of the aspect, followed by trends of three, six, and ten weeks. The trend was always in the direction opposite the closest cycle. For instance, if a bottom happened during the central time band, then a long upswing in prices followed. In two cases, this constituted a major trend reversal. Also interesting to note is that prominent crests occurred in every case within seven trading days *after* this conjunction, while prominent troughs occurred in all cases within four days either side of the aspect date.

Conclusions: Prominent troughs in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Mars conjunct Pluto. In most cases this will be a primary bottom (66.7%), and it will happen within three days before *the aspect (66.7%). Prominent crests tend to occur within seven trading days* after *this aspect (100%). A somewhat long trend in gold prices follows this aspect in the direction opposite the cycle in effect during the central time band (100%), and may represent a major trend change (66.7%).*

WAXING SQUARE

1/19/77		PB(-7)	TT*(+4)	Began 10-week climb week before
1/6/79	MT(-4)	MB(+6)		Sharp drop next 6 days as secondary reaction begins
12/23/80	MT(0)			Explosive drop next 6 weeks after rally ended

Not enough samples were present during the central time band to conduct a helpful analysis. In each case, though, prominent crests did appear within four days *after* the aspect. In two of the cases, prices commenced a long-term swing of at least six weeks, but in the third case, the swing lasted only six days. As with most Mars/Pluto contacts, it appears that this may be an explosive time in gold prices.

WAXING TRINE

2/27/77	+BO(+1)	TT**(+6)		Breakout next day continued up next 4 weeks
2/13/79	TB**(0)	PT(+6)		Straight up next 6 days, explosive, then major trend reversal down next 8 weeks
1/30/81	½PB(+1)	-BO(-4)	MT(+7)	Rally for 1 week began

Relative Strength		Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	3.50*	4.33**
Crest	=	+1.33	+4.00**
Trough	=	-2.16	-2.16
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.67	+5.00**
Trough	=	-3.33*	-3.33*
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.50*	9.33**
Crest	=	+3.00	+9.00**
Trough	=	-5.49	-5.49

Unexpectedly, the waxing trine between Pluto and Mars was just as explosive as the hard aspects. Trines are generally considered soft, and even amongst such powerhouses as these two war-like indices, a more positive and less destructive urge seemed present. In every case, prices went upwards for at least six trading days following this aspect (100%). In one case, an upside breakout occurred the next day. In another case, a breakout happened four days before. In the third case, a major trend reversal occurred. In two cases, prominent troughs completed themselves within one day of the trine, followed again by nice rallies or primary swings.

Conclusions: Prominent rallies of at least one week tend to follow the date of the waxing trine between Mars and Pluto (100%). In most cases (67%), a major or primary crest will be achieved within seven trading days after this aspect, particularly if a prominent bottom occurs within one day of it. Breakouts or major cycle reversals are also likely within seven trading days (100%).

OPPOSITION

5/30/75	PB(+1)		End of sharp drop, major cycle reversal next 8 weeks
5/13/77	-MT(0)	TB*(+9)	Exploded down next 5 weeks

4/29/79		TT*(+6)	PB(-10)	14-week upward explosion began week before
4/15/81	MB(-1)	TT**(+4)		End 3-week drop, up 4 days, then con't primary swing down

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.50	2.75
Crest	=		+0.50	+1.625
Trough	=		-2.00	-2.50
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	3.75*	3.75*	5.00**
Crest	=	+1.25	+1.25	+3.75*
Trough	=	-2.50	-2.50	-3.75*
C/S Index				
Total	=	6.25	6.25	7.75*
Crest	=	+1.75	+1.75	+5.375
Trough	=	-4.50	-4.50	-6.25

This signature does not appear to be very significant, except that when one studies it, there is the sense of great potential force. In a couple of instances, it was realized, as explosive movements in gold prices occurred. In another two cases, it brought a total stop to the trend in effect, but another and opposite one did not follow. It was as if gold prices were trying to breakout, but just couldn't. As more evidence comes in, it may be that this opposition correlates more with the end, the termination, of trends, particularly if they are downward in nature prior to the aspect. In two cases, major downtrends halted within two days of the aspect. In the other two cases, explosions resulted in trends lasting for at least the next five weeks.

Conclusions: Prominent cycles in gold prices do not necessarily occur consistently during a central trading band of Mars opposite Pluto (75%). If major troughs do occur, it may represent the end of the slide but no real reversal upwards. If troughs do not occur, it may be that a long-term trend in prices follow for at least five weeks.

WANING TRINE

8/27/75	-BO(+3)	TB**(+4)	Breakout down in 3 days, exploded down next 3 weeks
8/4/77	½PT(0)	-MB(-5)	Secondary reaction down next 2 weeks

7/19/79	PT(+3)			1 week secondary correction, then long rise
7/5/81	MB(+1)	-BO(-6)	TT*(+5)	Breakout down - 4 days, 2 week rally followed, then greater drop

Relative Strength		Central Period	5-Day Period
Total	=	4.00**	4.25**
Crest	=	+2.25	+2.75
Trough	=	-1.75	-2.50

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	5-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-2.50	-3.75*

C/S Index			
Total	=	9.00**	9.25**
Crest	=	+4.75	+6.50
Trough	=	-4.25	-6.25

This appears to be a very powerful cycle, though not inclined toward crest or trough. In every instance (100%), something significant happened within three trading days of the aspect. In two cases prices fell sharply, and were in fact accompanied with breakouts of support levels. In the other two cases, powerful crests were achieved within three days, followed by short drops in prices of less than two weeks. It may be that this aspect will correlate to downside breakouts in a bear market if prices hover around the support level prior to the date.

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Powerful movements in gold prices tend to occur within three trading days of Mars waning in trine to Pluto (100%). Crests are just as apt to occur as troughs, however the crests will tend to be more prominent in nature. If prices hover around a support level, there is a good possibility that a downside breakout of it will occur within six days (50%).*

WANING SQUARE

4/8/76	DB(+1)			Prices depressed next 5 weeks
9/23/77	+G(+1)	MT(+6)	+BO(+11)	Gap up next day, up next 7 weeks
9/4/79	TT**(+2)	+BO(-8)		Breakout up 8 days before, gap up day of, exploded up next 4 weeks
8/20/81	MT(-1)	TB**(+3)		1 week secondary reaction began, then rise for 4 weeks after

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		2.875	3.50*
Crest	=		+1.875	+2.50
Trough	=		-1.00	-1.625

Relative Consistency		All Cycles	Prominent Central	8-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	3.75*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.75*	+2.50	+3.75*
Trough	=	-1.25	-1.25	-2.50

C/S Index				
Total	=	7.875*	6.625*	8.50*
Crest	=	+5.625	+4.375	+6.25
Trough	=	-2.25	-2.25*	-4.125

This appears to be another significant Mars/Pluto cycle. Something prominent happened in every instance within only two trading days of this aspect, making it one of the most reliable signatures yet of this combination. Interesting to note is the opposite breakout effect from the waning trine. In the later, breakouts of support levels happened twice. In the waning square, breakouts of the resistance levels or gaps up in prices which were followed by a breakout happened twice. They were, in each instance, in separate cycles. In other words, consider the fact that the waning square usually follows shortly after the waning trine between the same two planets. The first waning trine of Mars and Pluto observed was August 27, 1975. Three days later, a downside breakout of the support level happened. Five months later, the approaching square between the same two planets took place, and there was no breakout. Two years later, the aspects repeated. The trine occurred August 4, 1977 with no breakouts. However, the following square on September 23, 1977 was accompanied by a breakout of the then existing resistance level. This same pattern unfolded the next two times also. If the trine broke through a support level, then no breakouts occurred at the square. If the trine was without a breakout, then the square had one. The trine broke through the support levels, whereas the square would break through the resistance level.

This signature furthermore correlated with long-term price trends. In every case, a trend would unfold for at least the next four weeks, perhaps after a one week correction period. Price cycles were not necessarily powerful at the time of the waning square, but movement of prices did seem significant.

<u>Conclusions:</u> *Significant but not powerful cycles or movements in gold prices tend to occur within two trading days of Mars waning in square to Pluto (100%). In most cases (75%), this correlates to a crest cycle, and is*

followed by a trend in gold prices which last at least four weeks. That trend tends to be in accordance with the type of cycle in effect within two trading days of the cycle, though it may not make its major swing until one week later. This appears to be an intermediary trading cycle within a longer term, greater cycle. Breakouts may occur within eleven trading days (50%).

TOTAL RESULTS OF MARS/PLUTO SIGNATURES

Relative Strength			Central Period	8-Day Period
Total	=		3.20*	3.76*
Relative Consistency		**All Types**	**Prominent Central**	**8-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.52**	4.29*	5.00**
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.72*	7.49*	8.76*

Conclusions: *Prominent cycles and price movements in gold tend to occur within three trading days of a Mars/Pluto aspect (85.7%). Within eight days, the frequency of prominent cycles increases to 100%. Breakouts (28.6%) and long-term price trends to follow are common with this signature.*

COMBINATIONS OF LARGER PLANETARY CYCLES

Aspects between the planets of Jupiter and beyond occur on a much less frequent basis than those discussed so far. In fact, since 1975, no aspect involving these combinations has occurred more than once in a series. Therefore, all of them are included in this one chapter instead of separately. At the end of each section, an analysis of cycles present during all the aspects between any of these two planets will be made instead of reviewing each aspect-type itself.

#31 JUPITER/SATURN

Waning Square:			
6/4/75	PB(-2)	TT(+1)	1st PB in new bear market; major reversal
7/29/75	PT(0)		1st PT rally in bear market, sharp 8-week drop followed, major reversal
3/9/76	-DT(-2)	MT(+7)	End of 3rd rally, followed by 10-week drop; major reversal
Conjunction:			
12/31/80	TB*(+2)	MT(-4)	End of rally, resumed 10-week downtrend
3/4/81	PB(0)	TT**(+2)	Major cycle reversal up next 3 weeks
7/24/81	PB(+6)	MT(-5)	Major cycle reversal up next 7 weeks

Relative Strength			Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=		3.33*	4.50**
Crest	=		+1.83	+2.92
Trough	=		-2.00	-2.83
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**7-Day Prominent**
Total	=	4.17*	4.17*	5.00**
Crest	=	+3.33*	+2.50	+4.17*
Trough	=	-2.50	-2.50	-3.33*
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.50*	7.50*	9.50**
Crest	=	+5.16	+4.33	+7.09*
Trough	=	-4.50	-4.50	-6.16

The Jupiter/Saturn signatures represent one of the most potent indicators yet studied. In four of the six cases of aspects between these two planets, primary cycles culminated within six trading days. In five instances, major cycle reversals happened, leading to new trends lasting at least three weeks.

Conclusions: *Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to unfold within six trading days of Jupiter aspecting Saturn (100%). In most cases, these will be primary cycles (66.7%). Also, major cycle reversals tend to occur within six trading days of these two planets in aspect, leading to new directions in gold prices for at least three weeks (83.3%).*

#32 JUPITER/URANUS

Opposition:			
4/18/76	½PB(-1)	-MT(-7)	Began 2-week rally
Waning Trine:			
6/17/78	½PT(+2)	MB(-5)	Major reversal down next 4 weeks
Waning Square:			
7/30/79	PT(-4)	PB(+5)	Middle of sharp 9-day secondary reaction, then resumed swing up next 8 weeks

Relative Strength		4-Day Central Period	7-Day Period
Total	=	4.33**	4.33**

Relative Consistency		Prominent Central	7-Day Prominent
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	9.33**	9.33**

This is a very volatile signature as well as a powerful one. Both powerful crests and troughs are present within seven trading days. There is likely a couple of days between the cycle's culmination and the presence of the aspect, but when the cycle culminates, it tends to reverse sharply, but not necessarily for more than two weeks.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to be achieved within four trading days of an aspect between Jupiter and Uranus (100%). A sharp but possibly short (less than two full weeks) reversal in prices then tends to unfold (100%). Both crests and troughs are of great strength and tend to be present within seven trading days of the aspect (100%).

#33 JUPITER/NEPTUNE

Opposition:
6/8/77 TT(-2) PB(+4) — Major trend reversal up next 21 weeks

Waning Trine:
8/3/79 PB(+1) — End of secondary reaction, resumed uptrend next 8 weeks

Waning Square:
9/9/80 TT**(+3) TB*(+4) PT(+10) — Major cycle reversal in 10 days as bull market ends

Relative Strength			Central Period	10-Day Period
Total	=		2.83	5.00**
Relative Consistency		**All Types**	**Prominent Central**	**10-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	3.33*	5.00**
C/S Index				
Total	=	7.83*	6.16	10.00**

Primary cycles culminated in association with aspects between Jupiter and Neptune in all three cases analyzed, making this potentially one of the most powerful of all signatures possible. In two of the cases, these primary cycles were troughs and happened within only four trading days. Also, in two cases, the market ended a long-term swing and reversed to a new trend.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to culminate within ten trading days of any major aspect between Jupiter and Neptune (100%). Usually they will culminate within only four trading days (66.7%), and usually they will coincide with a major trend reversal (66.7%).

JUPITER/PLUTO

Waning Square:
6/22/78 ½PT(-2) MB(-8) — Cycle reversed down next four weeks

Conjunction:
11/2/81 TT(0) TB**(-3) — End of weak rally, resumed sharp 4-week drop

There is simply not enough data to draw any conclusions yet.

#34 SATURN/URANUS

Waning Square:
10/4/75 ½PT(-2) TB*(+3) PB(-9) — 1st rally after PB

10/17/75 DT(+3) TB*(-6) -MB(+7) — 2nd rally after PB before sharp drop

7/2/76 TB**(-1) TT(+1) -BO(-4) — Breakout 4 days before led to sharp 3-week drop

2/23/77 +BO(+3) — Breakout led to sharp 3-week rise

4/22/77 MB(+4) DT(-7) — Major cycle reversal down began 7 days before

Relative Strength			4-Day Central Period	9-Day Period
Total	=		3.80*	4.20**
Crest	=		+2.60	+3.40*
Trough	=		-1.80	-2.80
Relative Consistency		**All Cycles**	**Prominent Central**	**9-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**	5.00**
Crest	=	+4.00*	+3.00	+4.00*
Trough	=	-3.00	-3.00	-4.00*
C/S Index				
Total	=	8.80*	8.80*	9.20**
Crest	=	+6.60*	+5.60	+7.40*
Trough	=	-4.80	-4.80	-6.80*

This is another very powerful signature, though the most prominent cycle in gold prices associated with this aspect does not tend to culminate right on the date of planetary occurrence. These two planets move so slowly as seen from Earth that it is quite likely that their effect upon the world and financial markets could be felt for some time. Breakouts, primary and double crests and troughs were quite common within an orb of ten trading days from this aspect. There was always a sense of tension and power during this period, as if prices in the market could explode at any moment. Prices in gold tended to react very sharply, as troughs and crests were both frequently present within a very short time band. In the first two cases, there was a threat of turning the bear market into a bull, as both resulted in strong rallies. In the next two cases, prices for gold witnessed a breakout, first on the downside then on the upside. In the last instance studied, a major trend reversal began seven days before. Thus, it is very volatile and unpredictable, other than to say something significant is likely to happen when these two planets come together in an aspect.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles and movements in gold prices tend to occur within four trading days of Saturn aspecting Uranus (100%). Prices react with great volatility within a nine-day trading orb.

#35 SATURN/NEPTUNE

Waning Trine:				
9/5/76	DT(+4)	PB(-8)		Major cycle reversal as bear market ended 8 days before; began 1st primary swing up
1/12/77	PB(-2)	MT(-6)		End of secondary reaction, and began 2nd big primary swing up; major cycle reversal
6/23/77	MT(+3)	PB(-7)		Began 3rd big primary swing upwards; again, major cycle reversal
Waning Square:				
9/14/79	-MB(-1)	TT**(+4)	PT(+12)	Long crest swing ended in 12 days, then major cycle reversal
3/26/80	DB(+2)	½PT(-2)		Major cycle reversal upwards for several weeks
6/22/80	-DB(+1)	PT(+12)		Major cycle reversal upwards

Relative Strength		**Central Period**	**12-Day Period**
Total	=	3.58*	4.83**
Relative Consistency		**Prominent Central**	**12-Day Prominent**
Total	=	5.00**	5.00**
C/S Index			
Total	=	8.58*	9.83**

This is definitely one of the most powerful associations of geocosmic indicators to gold price cycles. A greater orb was allowed in this case because the planets remain so close to one another for so long due to their

relatively slow movements around the Sun. It is interesting to note that primary cycles occurred in every case except one, and in that case, it was a ½ primary cycle that unfolded. Also interesting to note is that primary troughs were always in evidence within eight days *before* the waning trine, while primary crests were present with the waning square. In two of the later instances, the crest did not unfold until 12 trading days *after* the aspect. In all six cases studied, major trend reversals coincided closely to the date of aspects between Saturn and Neptune.

Conclusions: Powerful cycles in gold prices tend to unfold within four trading days of an aspect between Saturn and Neptune (100%). Given a 12-day trading orb, primary cycles tend to be present (including ½ primary cycles). Major trend reversals coincide close to the time of aspects between these two planets (100%).

PART FOUR

INTEGRATING CYCLES OF THE MARKET WITH CYCLES OF THE COSMOS

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

TECHNICAL TIMING TECHNIQUES IN DETERMINING CYCLE REVERSALS

"Yes it is hard work. But if you expect someone to hand you a million dollar trading secret on a silver platter, you can plan on eventually joining the 90 percent of commodity traders who lose money."

Walter J. Bressert
from THE HAL BLUE BOOK

To profit in gold trading is not an easy task. Even with all of the geocosmic signatures listed on the previous pages, and their high probabilities in effect during rather narrow time bands, it still takes time and patience for the potential trader to develop a feel for the market. Eventually, as a result of increasing experience gathered through diligent study and practice, the art of trading, or rather the art of *seeing* cyclic patterns in gold prices begins to take form.

The purpose of this section is to facilitate that process. Once this "sense" is developed, rewards—either financial or just the sheer joy of understanding and seeing these cycles in motion—can be immense.

STRAIGHT CYCLES' THEORY

Early in the book, three of the important Bressert Cycles were discussed: the 16–22 week *primary trough* (PB), the 8–12 week *one-half primary trough* (½PB), and the 5–8 week *major trough* (MB). The primary trough cycle has occurred at 12–23 week intervals in every instance during the time span of this study (May 30, 1975 through May 28, 1982). Sixteen of the twenty primary bottoms (80%) did, in fact, happen 16–23 weeks apart from one another. Also, in about 80% of the cases observed, a good major bottom occurred every five to eight weeks. Thus, a primary trough cycle frequently consists of three major troughs and two ½ primary trough cycles interacting together, the last of each being the next primary trough itself (see Figure 7).

Starting from this point, a logical first step becomes one of trying to identify a time frame in which a primary trough is due. In Chapter Three, a list of all the primary troughs between May 30, 1975 and May 28, 1982 is given, and may be helpful in forecasting future ones.

Once a potential primary trough time band has been identified, the next step might be to define the time band for potential major bottoms, due five to eight weeks after the primary cycle, as well as that of potential one-half primary troughs.

The use of geocosmic signatures comes in here. The addition of this tool will enable one to more closely define, or limit the extremes of, the time band in which the cycle is likely to culminate. But as one sets out to practice this skill, several questions arise, the most important of which is the dilemna: "On *which* day do I make my transaction?" As one may have noticed in the previous section, cycles in gold prices do not always culminate *exactly* on the date of an aspect, but close to it. In a matter of a couple of trading days, it is possible to lose a good portion of one's profits.

At this point, several technical and cyclic tools become helpful. One of these is the concept of *price objectives*. If one knows a price objective—a probable price range for gold to attain—and a time band in which a cycle is due to culminate, the possibility of loss can be minimized and gain maximized.

PRICE OBJECTIVES

Going back to the early section of this book, one might recall the importance of ascertaining the type of market in effect—bull or bear. To review, in a bull market, prices are generally increasing over a period of time. Each successive crest and successive trough are generally higher in price than the preceding ones, respectively. The movement from a *trough to a crest* in bull market is called a *primary swing*. The movement from a crest to a trough is called a *secondary reaction*. Ideally, one attempts to buy (go long) at the trough of a secondary reaction and take profits and/or sell short at the crest of the next primary swing. During a bull market, the

secondary reaction will *usually* be completed two weeks or less in time after the crest of the previous primary swing (*right translation*).

The price objective of the trough ending a secondary reaction can usually be determined by simple mathematics, such as a 40–60% retracement ratio developed by Walter Bressert for use with cycles.[11] To do this, measure the price movement of the previous primary swing. Then take 40–60% of this swing and subtract it from the price of the crest. For example, assume gold is in a bull market. Over a five-week period, prices rise from $100.00 to $150.00 (see Figure 13). The primary swing is thus $50.00. Multiplying this by 40–60% gives a result of $20.00–$30.00. Subtracting this from the $150.00 crest, the price objective of the secondary reaction is thus $120.00–$130.00. The expected time for prices to achieve this range is two weeks or less after the crest, no more than three weeks. Thus, if prices retract to at least $130.00 within the next two weeks, this is considered a "trigger signal." With the presence of other technical tools soon to be discussed, this could

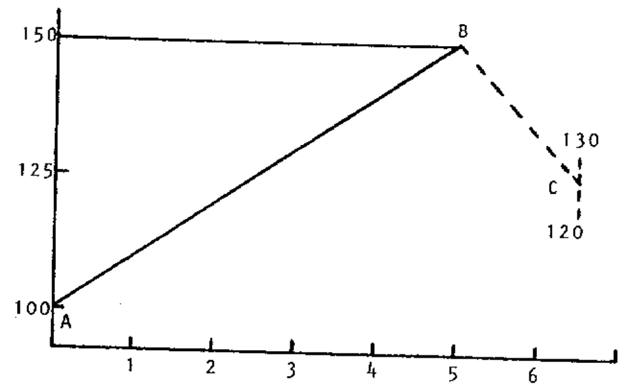


Figure 13: Example of determining price objective of a secondary reaction in a bull market. Price rises $50.00 in primary swing up (A–B). Retractment to C should be 50% of this swing, or $25.00, give or take 10% ($5.00). Thus price objective is $20.00 - 30.00 less the crest of the primary swing, or $120.00 - 130.00.

11. HAL Commodity Cycles Instruction Manual, HALCO, Dallas, Texas.

become the point for a "buy signal." If this price has not been achieved within three weeks, then a major trend reversal may be taking effect.

The same thing works in reverse during a bear market. Again, each successive trough and each successive crest is generally lower than its previous type, respectively. The movement of prices from *crest to trough* is now known as the *primary swing*, while the movement from trough to crest is called a *rally*. In a bear market, rallies are very short compared to primary downswings. They usually last two weeks or less, and no more than three, following the trough at the end of such a downswing, and then prices generally revert back to a four to six week slide to the next major trough.

The rally in a bear market will usually be a 40–60% retractment in prices from the primary downswing preceding it. For example, assume prices start at $200.00, then decline to $120.00 over the next five weeks. The primary downswing is thus $80.00. The resultant rally should then recover 40–60% of that $80.00, or $32.00–$48.00 (see Figure 14). Thus, the price objective of the rally is $152.00–$168.00, probably being achieved within the next two weeks. If not achieved within three weeks, one should suspect a major trend reversal might be in effect.

The 40–60% retractment figures are somewhat arbitrary. Actually, the

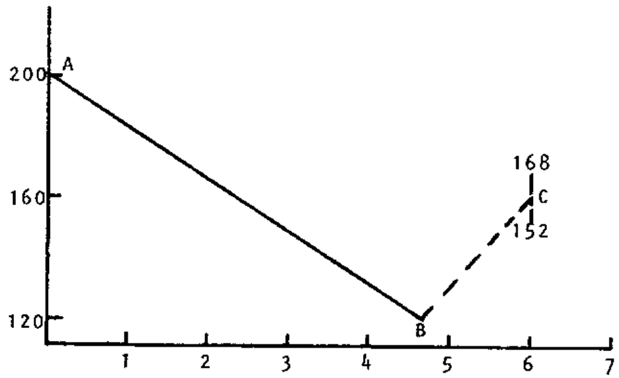


Figure 14: Example of determining the price objective of a rally in a bear market. Prices drop $80.00 in primary swing down (A–B). Retractment to C should be about 50% of this swing, or $40.00, give or take 10% ($8.00). Thus price objective of rally, point C, is $32.00 - $48.00 above the trough of the primary swing (B), or $152.00 - 168.00.

orbs usually allowed have a little more leeway, to correspond with what are known as Fibonacci ratios. These ratios are 38.2% and 61.8%. When a market is very strong in a particular direction, the percentage of retractment will tend to be on the lower side of the range, or around 38.2%. When the market is preparing for a major change, prices will tend to retract toward the higher side, or 61.8%, and in many cases, will even penetrate this ratio. Also, when a *primary* trough is due in a bull market, or a *primary* crest in a bear market, the higher side of the ratio will again likely be evident.

An example of retractment levels in effect can be found in Chart #4, October, 1976 contract. A primary trough occurred May 26, 1976 at $126.10. This was a bear market and, as expected, a rally followed that was short lived, as a crest was achieved the very next week at $133.80. Prices then fell sharply over the next seven weeks, reaching $105.20 on July 20, 1976. This primary downswing covered $28.60. Within two weeks another rally would be expected that should recover about 38.2% of this prior movement, or $10.90. Thus, the price objective should be about $116.10. Within a week (July 28), price came very close, achieving a crest at $115.80, just thirty cents below the lower side of expectation.

Another example appears in Charts #7 and 8, August and December, 1977 contracts. Even though two different contracts are involved, the spacing of the cycles will closely reflect the same results that would be obtained from current contracts. A primary trough in a bull market was realized the week of June 17, 1977 at $137.60, August contract. The primary swing up during the next seven weeks achieved a crest at $148.10, an increase of $10.50. Prices then retracted the next two weeks to $143.20, about 45%, as the one-half primary trough was realized (the stronger the cycle, the greater the percentage of retractment).

Now, if one had continued this primary swing from primary trough to the primary crest of the week of November 11, when prices hit $169.90 (December contract), an upward movement of $32.20 would be observed. A rather large drop in prices would be expected over the next two weeks as a secondary reaction set in, for a *primary trough* was now due (16–22 weeks since last one). Price objectives of 40–60% would define a price range of $150.60–$157.00. Sure enough, a trough of $154.70 (December contract) occurred the week of November 25, 1977, representing the next primary bottom.

There is also a useful technique to forecast price objectives of primary swings, known as the *Mid-Cycle Pause Price Objective*, or MCP. In the *HAL BLUEBOOK*, credit for this tool is given to William Jiler's book *HOW CHARTS CAN HELP YOU IN THE STOCK MARKET*. This is one of the most useful tools in helping one to determine when to close out a position.

In market trading, getting *in* is usually easy, but getting *out* successfully is usually more difficult. Thus defining a price objective for the primary swing becomes another "trigger" in the trader's list of essential things to watch before confirming a "buy" or "sell signal."

Basically the technique of the mid-cycle pause price objective involves three steps. The first is to take the midpoint of the retractment swing which follows the primary swing (i.e. rally in a bear market, secondary reaction in a bull market). Measure the distance between this retractment midpoint and the beginning of the *previous* primary swing. Add (in a bull market) or subtract (in a bear market) this difference to or from this retractment midpoint to obtain price objective of next primary swing.

To illustrate, assume there is a bull market (see Figure 15). Prices start at $100.00, and in the first primary swing up, they achieve the $160.00 level (A to B in figure). Prices then retract 40% to $136.00 (point C). The midpoint of this retractment swing, or secondary reaction, is $148.00 ($160.00 - 136.00 = $24.00. $24.00 × ½ = $12.00. $136.00 + $12.00 = $148.00, the midpoint between $136.00 and $160.00). Now, the difference between this midpoint ($148.00)

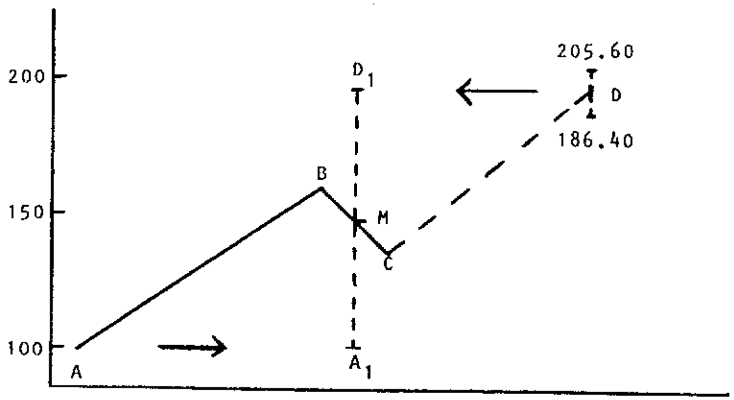


Figure 15: Example of determining *mid-cycle pause price objective* in a bull market. Primary swing A–B covers $60.00. Secondary reaction B–C retracts $24.00, from $160.00 to 136.00. Midpoint (M) of B–C is $148.00. Difference between M–A is $48.00 (M–$A_1$). Adding that difference to M gives D_1, the MCP. The price range of MCP is 10% of D_1–A_1 ($96.00 × 10% = $9.60). Adding and subtracting $9.60 to and from D_1 gives price objective range of $186.40 – $205.60 (D).

and the beginning of the previous primary swing ($100.00) is $48.00. Adding this difference to the midpoint ($148.00 + $48.00) gives us the new price objective of the next primary swing, or $196.00.

The *price range* of the mid-cycle pause price objective is determined by giving a 10% (or slightly greater) price orb based on the total difference between the beginning point of the previous primary swing and the new price objective. For instance, in the illustration above, the beginning point of the previous primary swing was $100.00. The mid-cycle pause price objective of the next primary swing is $196.00. The difference is $96.00. Ten percent of $96.00 is $9.60. Thus the *range* of the next price objective is within $9.60 of $196.00, or $186.40 - 205.60.

Similar steps are taken to find the price objective of a primary swing in a bear market. To illustrate, observe Figure 16. The first step is to locate the midpoint of the rally (B–C). In the illustration, a primary swing down from $200.00 (A) to $120.00 (B) is noted, a change of $80.00. Prices then rallied

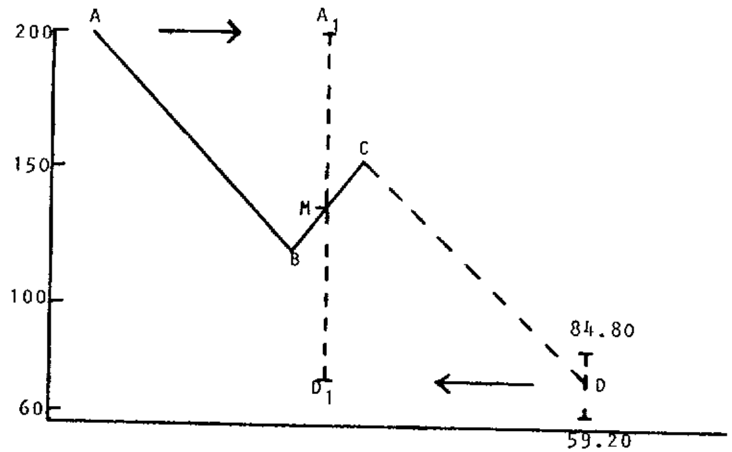


Figure 16: Example of determining *mid-cycle pause price objective* in a bear market. Primary swing A–B covers $80.00. Rally B–C retracts $32.00, from $120.00 to 152.00. Midpoint (M) of rally B–C is $136.00. Difference between Midpoint (M) and beginning of primary swing (A) is $64.00 ($A_1$–M). Subtracting that difference from M gives D_1, the MCP. The price range of MCP is 10% of A_1–D_1 ($200.00 - 72.00 = $128.00 × 10% = $12.80). Adding and subtracting $12.80 to and from D_1 gives price objective range of $59.20 – 84.80 (D).

\$32.00 to \$152.00 (C). The midpoint of this rally swing is \$136.00 (\$32.00 × ½ = \$16.00. \$120.00 + 16.00 = \$136.00).

Now take the difference between this rally midpoint (\$136.00) and the beginning of the previous primary swing (point A, \$200.00), and you arrive at \$64.00 (\$200.00 - 136.00 = \$64.00).

By *subtracting* this difference (\$64.00) from the rally midpoint (\$136.00), one derives the price objective of the next primary downswing, which is now \$72.00 (\$136.00 - 64.00 = \$72.00).This is point D.

The total difference between the new price objective (D) and the beginning of the previous primary downswing (A) is \$128.00. Ten percent of this is the orb that may be used in ascertaining a *price range* for the price objective (D). In our illustration, 10% of \$128.00 is \$12.80. Thus the price objective for point D may have a range of \$12.80 from \$72.00, or \$59.20 - \$84.80.

Once prices reach the *price objective range*, this becomes a "trigger," or a "signal," to prepare a transaction, either to enter or exit the market. In the market place, one of the most important maxims is to cut your losses and let your profits run. In respect to the latter part of this phrase, one might lose out on a great opportunity to increase profits further by exiting from the market just because the price range of a price objective was achieved. Therefore one must look for other "triggers," or signals from the market that a probable top or bottom has been realized. Such a signal suggesting

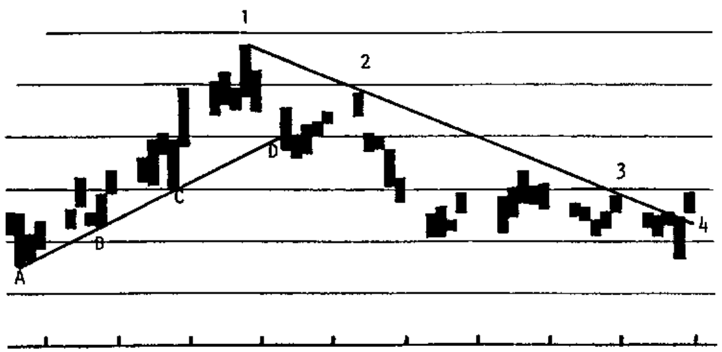


Figure 17: Example of trendlines. A-B-C connects the troughs in a bull swing, while 1-2-3-4 connects the crests in a bear swing. Both are trendlines.

the completion of a crest, as developed by Walter Bressert, might be when the market closes below a previous day's close and current day's opening. Another trigger might be the retractment of prices 10–15% of the previous upswing, below the highest price of that swing.

In determining more of a confirmation for a trough after the price objective is reached, one might look for the market to close at a price above the previous day's close and current day's opening. Or, one might look for prices to rise 10–15% of the previous downswing above the lowest price of that swing. Using these techniques, one may not get in and out at the absolute top or bottom of the market, but frequently close to it. And perhaps more importantly, these techniques increase the safety or assuredness that the market is more likely moving in the direction expected, and hence profits can be allowed to increase further than otherwise might be experienced.

TRENDLINES

Determining the end of a primary swing in a bull or bear market, is not as simple as determining price objectives of retractments, even with the use of the mid-cycle pause price objective technique. In many cases, breakouts accompany such primary swings and the limit to such movements is almost unpredictable.

Besides the application of geocosmic signatures, support and resistance levels, and price objectives tools, there is yet another technique that will help in defining the probable *end* of a primary swing. This is known as *trendlines*. The study of markets is most fascinating because it so frequently involves geometric forms. The most simple form in geometry is a straight line. Often prices will retract to a point on a straight line, known as a trendline, that connects with other price retractments during the same primary swing. In other words, connecting the crests in a bear swing, or the troughs in a bull swing, will yield a straight line (see Figure 17), a trendline.

Trendlines consist of two points where prices have retracted. Thus, in a bear market, a trendline begins with two crests following a trough. Those crests are then connected in a straight line. If a third crest should connect with this trendline, then it becomes very significant, and possibly the basis for a "channel line."

In a bull market, two troughs of secondary reactions following a crest begin the trendline. Connecting these two points with a straight line gives the trendline. Should yet another retractment of prices reach a point on this line, then it becomes a very special case, and possibly the basis for a "channel line"

Trendlines can be used for any length of cycle, for very short ones (i.e. trading cycles), intermediate ones (major cycles), or longer ones (primary cycles), and even longer ones yet (several years). The most effective trendlines are those that connect tops or bottoms of similar types of cycles. For example, in the use of trendlines, it is suggested that crests or troughs of trading cycles be connected with other trading cycles, that major cycle tops or bottoms be connected with other major cycle tops or bottoms, and likewise with crests or troughs amongst primary cycles with one another.

In a bull market, the appropriate use of trendlines measures upwards from the troughs. In a bear market, the trendline conventionally is drawn downward from the crests (see same Figure 17). An exception to this manner of drawing trendlines is the case when a "channel line," or "parallels" are being formed. Occassionally prices trade within a "channel" in which the angle of lines connecting the troughs is the same as an angle connecting crests, in the same type of market (i.e. bull or bear—see Figure 18). In such cases, a trendline may frequently have more than two instances of prices touching it, or the third one (and others) coming very close to it, or just barely penetrating it. Looking at it from another perspective, a three-point trendline suggests that a "channel line" may be in process of forming. If so, one will note that both the crests and troughs are declining or increasing at the same angle, parallel to one another. Hence this becomes a special tool that will help define price objectives of both the primary swing as well as the retractments, so long as prices remain in the "channel."

Eventually a trendline or channel line will be penetrated. Sometimes the penetration is real, and prices respond as if a support or resistance level *breakout* has occured. At other times, prices retract within the boundaries of the original trendline, causing what might be termed a "false breakout," or "false penetration." Determining whether a penetration of a trendline is real or false depends upon several factors.

First, one must determine the likelihood of the trendline being valid. As mentioned, one criterion of a valid trendline is that it must involve cycles of a similar type. A trendline connecting a major cycle to a trading cycle only creates a trading cycle trendline, and is not a valid basis for confirming the price or time of the next primary trough (it can, however, give a strong signal that a major bottom has occured—perhaps the first point—if that has not been determined already). This is a very important point in trendline study: connecting prices of troughs or crests yields a trendline only of the nature of the weakest cycle included, and potentially will not be a valid trendline for cycles any greater in length than the one

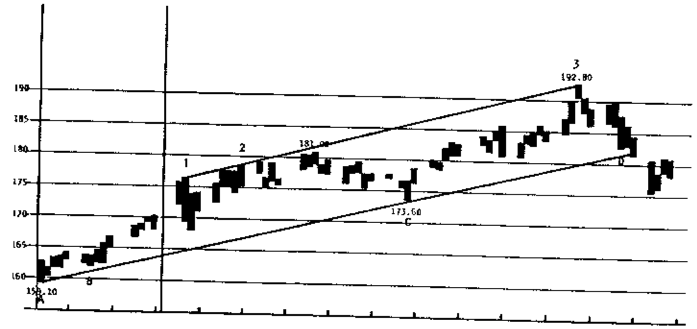


Figure 18: Example of a "channel trend." Trendline A-B-C connects troughs in this bull swing at the same angle as line 1-2-3 connects crests. In this example, the channel line helped define the price objective of the crest at $192.80.

above the weakest cycle involved. If major cycles are the weakest involved, then they cannot confirm any cycle greater than a ½ primary cycle.

Second, a valid trendline should have its second point be a price that was realized on a Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday. If the second point occurs on a Monday or Friday, it may not be valid, because the actual cyclic low could have occured on a Saturday or Sunday.[12]

Third, trendlines drawn across cycles of a similar length may not be valid if a longer cycle has bottomed or topped in between. For example, if a trendline connecting trading crests in a bear market seems to be unfolding, but a primary trough happened between two of these crests being connected, then it is likely not a valid trendline. A false penetration of that trendline might follow, and prices could easily retract to form a new trendline.

On the other hand, a valid trendline being penetrated has a better chance of being a "real penetration," one from which a great deal of importance might be derived. A criterion of a valid trendline is that the second point not fall on a Friday or Monday. If the first point is a Monday or Friday, that is acceptable since the "real" trendline would probably be close to that price. If a trendline does in fact consist of three or more points, particularly if two involve the same cycle type, then this too is considered a characteristic of being valid.

12. IBID

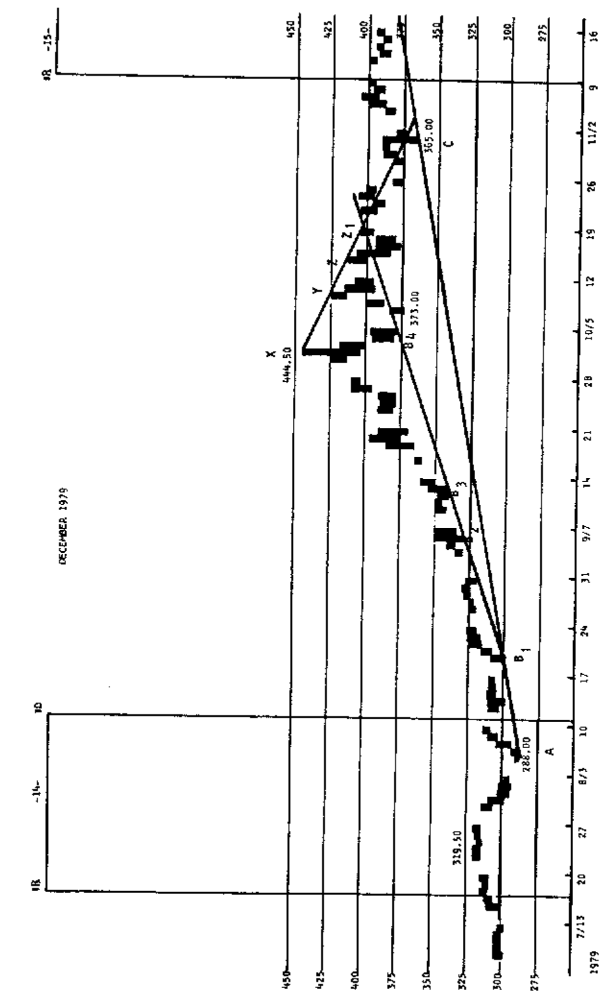
What does a "real" penetration of a valid trendline indicate? This event is one of the strongest confirmation signals that a cycle has come to an end, that a trend reversal is in effect. According to the *HAL Commodities Cycles Instruction Manual*: "The penetration of a (valid) trendline drawn from the crests or troughs of two cycles of similar length should not occur until the next longer cycle has reversed." Thus, if a trendline connecting major troughs is penetrated in a bull market, then this is a strong indication (i.e. about a 90% confirmation according to HALCO) that the primary crest has been achieved. If a valid trendline connecting major crests in a bear market has been penetrated, then this is a strong indication that the primary trough has been achieved.

Following a "real" penetration of a valid trendline, prices might suddenly leap into the new direction. The trend may literally be broken, and a new cycle is likely in progress. At the least, the next dominant cycle is probably over. However, in many cases in this study prices have been seen to retract back to test the broken trendline. Though this is not true in every case, one should be aware of such a possibility. For prices not to retract, or retract but not re-enter the original trendline upon testing, is a strong confirmation signal that the trend has reversed.

If, however, prices revert back to within the previous trendline boundaries, the penetration was false. Given the criteria for valid trendlines, this possibility should be considered the exception more than the rule. Trendlines therefore can be regarded as an excellent tool in defining and possibly confirming the tops or bottoms of specific cycles, as well as a means to lock in profits when used with other "trigger" techniques. When used with price objective methods described earlier, an investor has at his or her disposal two very powerful tools. Add onto this a knowledge of cycles' theories and geocosmic signatures, the probability of successful trading increases immensely.

Before concluding this section on trendline analysis and value, let us walk through an example.

Look at Chart #14 (December, 1979 contract, reproduced here for study). A trendline may begin with the primary trough on August 6, 1979. The next point on the trendline would be the trading bottom of Monday, August 20. This may not be valid because it is the second point, and it is on a Monday. As it turns out, it is valid, though. However, using this point means we are now measuring the weakest cycle included—the trading cycle. The next trading cycle trough occurs September 6, and a third is one week later, September 13. Three points are in effect, so we have a valid trading trough trendline (B_1-B_2-B_3). This line is not touched again until October 2. The next day, October 5, prices dropped below the trendline. They rebounded quickly, and the next five days stayed above this



trendline. However, on October 15 they penetrated again, a strong confirmation that the trading cycle of price increases had come to an end and that the next most dominant cycle, the major (or greater) crest, had been achieved.

However, the penetration of trendline B_1-B_2-B_3 only indicates that the trading cycle is completed, that a major crest has been achieved. A greater cycle may still be in effect, for a trendline involving the primary trough is still not penetrated (line A-B). And, as long as it is still in effect, one cannot assume that the primary crest has been achieved, at least not using trendline theory alone (using cycles' theory, though, a primary crest was indeed due as this was the 28th week after the last primary crest).

Primary trough trendline A-B is finally touched on November 1, 1979, 12 weeks after the August 6th primary trough. The fact that prices did not penetrate this trendline strongly suggested that the recent price increases were not yet over, that greater prices than the October 2 high could follow. Though it cannot be seen clearly from the enclosed charts, due to the fact that price scales were changed, this primary trough trendline remained valid for several more months, during a time span in which gold prices reached their all-time high.

Regressing for a moment now, notice that crests began to decline in price after the October 2 high for several weeks. True, the primary trendline was still valid and not penetrated, but a valid and strong three-point trading trendline was penetrated, and thus it appeared as if a cycle reversal might be in effect.

The new cycle is now subject to downward trendlines connecting the crests of trading rallies. The first point (X) was the primary top the week of October 5. The second point (Y) occurred one week later, October 10, this being the same date prices rallied to test the upward trendline. This is a trading crest, thus the trendline is for a trading cycle. Now notice that a good ½ primary trough occured between these two crests. Since a ½ primary cycle is stronger than trading cycles, and occurs between trading cycles used for a posible trendline, the trendline is *not valid*, even though this line was touched again at points Z and Z_1, the last being achieved on Friday, October 19. But, the following Monday the trendline was penetrated on the upside. Prices retracted and tested the original trendline, falling below it again by that Friday, October 26. If the downward trend was to remain in effect, prices would then have to stay below this trendline. However, next week's trading rally took prices above the trendline, and by the next week they broke out strongly on the upside, suggesting this decline trend was over and a new bull trend about to begin, or another resume. As the next graph shows, prices then began rising to their all-time high, January 21, 1980.

With trendlines, then, one should keep in mind the following points:

1. Valid trendlines connect troughs or crests of two or more cycles of a similar type, or at least of a type consistent with the shortest cycle involved.
2. The second point on a valid trendline will occur on a Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday. It is possible that it could fall on a Monday or Friday, but one should be cautious for the actual point may have been during the weekend. It is acceptable for the first point to be on a Monday or Friday, though.
3. A three-or-more point trendline is valid and very significant. It may be the basis for channel lines, which may enable one to measure possible price objectives of troughs or crests in the primary swing.
4. A trendline may not be valid for a stronger cycle if it includes weaker cycles, i.e. a primary cycle trendline may not be valid if it includes only one primary cycle plus other weaker cycle points.
5. A trendline may not be valid if a stronger cycle unfolds between any two points of a lesser cycle strength used on the trendline. For example, if a trendline involves trading crests, but between two trading crests a primary trough occurs, the trendline is not valid.
6. The penetration of a valid trendline involving cycles of similar length is a strong confirming indicator that the trough or crest of the next longer cycle has been completed.
7. Prices closing within the boundaries of the penetrated trendline frequently indicates a "false penetration," and that the trend has not really reversed.
8. Failure of prices to return within the penetrated trendline boundaries indicates that the cycle has reversed.
9. Trendlines are a "trigger" signal used to a.) lock in profits, and b.) frequently confirm tops or bottoms of specific cycles. However, trendlines should be used with other "trigger" signals before actually entering and exiting the market.

Understanding all these key technical and cyclical methods is necessary in order to most advantageously apply knowledge of geocosmic signatures. Once this is grasped, then the use of planetary indicators can be extremely valuable in timing the end and beginning of a cycle. To summarize these technical and cyclical indicators, the following points should be studied and committed to memory, along with the points summarized about bull and bear markets in the first section of this book:

IN A BULL MARKET . . .

1. Secondary reactions will usually be 38.2–61.8% of the primary bull swing.
   - A. In a strong bull market, the reaction will tend to be on the low percent side. When prices retreat 35%, it is considered a "trigger" to prepare to buy (go long). This will usually occur within two weeks of a good-sized crest, and no more than three.
   - B. When a primary trough is due in a bull market, prices tend to retreat on the higher side of 50% from the preceding bull swing.
   - C. If prices retreat more than 61.8%, it is a strong signal that the market may be changing to a bear cycle.
2. Trendlines drawn from the bottom of troughs of similar cycles upward can be a powerful confirmation tool that a crest of the next greater cycle has been achieved.

IN A BEAR MARKET . . .

1. Rallies will usually be 38.2–61.8% of the primary bear swing down.
   - A. In a strong bear market, the crest of the rally will tend to be on the low percent side. When prices rally 35%, it is considered a "trigger" to prepare to sell (sell short). This will usually occur within two weeks and no more than three of a good-sized trough.
   - B. When a primary crest is due in a bear market, prices tend to rally on the higher side of 50% from the previous bear downswing.
   - C. If prices rally more than 61.8%, it is a strong indicator that the market may be changing to a bull shortly.
2. Trendlines drawn from the top of crests of similar cycles downward can be a powerful confirmation tool that a trough of the next greater cycle has been achieved.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

GEOCOSMIC INDICATORS OF MAJOR TREND REVERSALS

The previous chapter introduced two new technical means, or "triggers," by which to determine a cyclic culmination objective. One, price objectives, is useful in ascertaining secondary reactions and rally levels as well as the end of primary swings, while the other, trendlines, aids in spotting the end of a cycle, whether it be the primary swing, secondary reaction, or rally. However, trendlines provide the information *after the fact*, after the cycle has already reversed. Price objectives methodology is likewise hindered somewhat by its built-in shortcomings: it is not as effective in measuring the crest or trough at the end of the primary swing as it is with secondary reactions and rallies.

How does one know, then, just when to enter and exit the market? How can one more precisely measure the trough or crest at the end of a primary swing, or even narrow the time band of a secondary reaction or rally? This is where the application of geocosmic signatures proves most valuable.

The hypothesis of geocosmic signatures applied to cycles in gold prices is as follows: **Three or more significant geocosmic signatures (a cluster) will tend to be present within six trading days of a gold price cycle culmination.** Only the geocosmic signatures listed in the last section are applicable. Analysis of all primary, one-half primary, major, and seven percent or greater trading cycles has shown this to be true. In the 175 cases of such cycles between the period of May 25, 1975 and May 28, 1982, three or more significant geocosmic signatures were in effect within six trading days 156 times, or 89%. If an additional seventh day was added, the number increased to 165, or over 94%. If the orb was reduced to only five trading days, the total decreased to 141 cases, which was still over 80% reliable (see Table 1, which does not include 7% trading cycles).

TABLE 1

	Trough	Crest	Total
1-Day	6	6	12
2-Day	15	8	23
3-Day	12	16	28
4-Day	13	6	19
5-Day	12	9	21
6-Day	5	6	11
7-Day	4	2	6
8-Day	0	2	2
9-Day	0	1	1
10-Day	1	1	2
Total	68	57	125

Number of instances in which three or more significant geocosmic cycles were present 1–10 days from date of culmination of gold price cycle. Only primary, one-half primary, and major cycles and their double cycles were included. Note that 114 of 125 cycles culminated when three or more signatures were present within six trading days or less (91.2%).

Continuing with this analysis, several of the 19 cases that did not totally fit all the criterion did satisfy it partially. In several cases, there were at least two geocosmic signatures present within six trading days of the cycle, and in almost every case, there was at least one signature present very close to the exact date of the cycle, as will be discussed shortly.

An interesting phenomenon was often present in which the time orb was five days or greater between the cycle and the appearance of three or more geocosmic indicators. Frequently, the gold price cycle culminated at a date very close to a point midway between the extremes of the aspect dates. In other words, if three or more geocosmic signatures were present over a ten-day trading period, then the peak or trough tended to be realized right in the middle of this period, or five trading days after the first aspect, and five trading days before the last.

Also remarkable was the frequency with which this hypothesis applied to powerful trough cycles (i.e. primary, one-half primary and double bottoms). In the 36 instances of these troughs, the rule applied 34 times, or almost 95%. In one of the two cases in which it did not pertain, the orb was seven days instead of the allowable six. Extending this to include major troughs and their double bottoms, the rule was effective in 28 of 31

instances (90.3%). However, if extended a seventh day again, the hypothesis held true in all 31 major troughs. To paraphrase this a little differently, the data indicated that 66 of 67 major or primary troughs occurred within seven trading days of three or more significant geocosmic signatures. Or, 98.5% of all major or primary troughs occurred during a time band of seven trading days either side of it, in which three or more geocosmic indicators were in effect.

The probability of a powerful cycle culminating within two trading days of at least one significant geocosmic signature was great (see Table 2, which does not include 7% trading cycles). In 151 of the 175 cases examined, at least one of the listed planetary signatures was present within two trading days (86.3%). Extending the range to three trading days either side of the cycle found a geocosmic signature present in 166 instances, or about 95% frequency. Adding a fourth day, the frequency increased to 98.9%, as only two cases existed in which at least one planetary indicator was not present. All 175 cycles occurred in a period of time in which at least one geocosmic signature of significance was present within five trading days.

TABLE 2

	Trough	Crest	Total
0-Day	18	20	38
1-Day	35	17	52
2-Day	11	7	18
3-Day	3	10	13
4-Day	1	3	4
Total	68	57	125

Number of instances in which at least one significant geocosmic signature was present 0–4 days from date of culmination of gold price cycle, May 1975 to May, 1982. Only primary, one-half primary, major cycles and their double cycles were included. Note that 90 of 125 cycles culminated within one trading day of a significant geocosmic indicator (72%), and 121 of 125 culminated within three days (96.8%).

Again, it is most remarkable how frequently the powerful troughs occurred close in time to one of these signatures. Of the 21 primary troughs, 17 happened within only one day or less of a significant geocosmic signature (81%). Twenty primary troughs occurred when the orb was extended to only two trading days (95.2%), and all primary troughs culminated during a time in which a significant planetary signature was present within three days or less.

The closeness in time between aspect and trough does not seem limited to only the primary trough. Of the 86 cases of primary, one-half primary, major, 7% trading troughs (and double bottoms) studied, 71 occurred within only one day or less of one of these signatures (82.5%); 81 occurred within only two trading days or less for an equally impressive 94.2% frequency.

The closeness in time between geocosmic signatures and crests was not as consistent, but still impressive. There were numerous instances of primary, one-half primary, major and double crests unfolding exactly on the date of a geocosmic signature (20 of 57), but there were also several cases in which there were as many as three or four trading days between the two (13 of 57). Remember, that only happened in five of 86 troughs, or to keep the figures consistent, in only four of 57 troughs, when the 7% trading cycles were excluded.

These results lead to a corollary of the aforementioned hypothesis concerning the relationship of geocosmic signatures to gold price cycles: **A significant geocosmic signature will tend to be present within three trading days, and usually only one, of a powerful gold price cycle culmination.** The probability of this rule is even greater in regard to the trough cycle than it is to the crest, though both are quite consistent.

MAJOR TREND CHANGES

When a major or greater cycle is realized in gold prices, the trend usually changes, even if for a short time. After a crest culminates, prices retract. And after a trough bottoms out, prices rise. The duration of the reversal after a cycle culmination is usually rather short, within two weeks in most cases. In such instances, it is generally not regarded as a real trend reversal, but only an expected "correction," a "minor" reversal, or retractment after a long primary swing. In the previous chapter, it was explained how these corrections or retractments usually involve a 40–60% price move from the primary swing movement.

What constitutes significant trend reversals, and how do they associate with geocosmic patterns? In Table 3, all of the major trend reversals between May, 1975 and May, 1982 are listed. There were 32 major turning points in which the trend reversed itself, and began a new direction for at least four weeks (one exception was March 4, 1981, in which the bear market reverted to a bull market for only three weeks). Four other periods are listed as possibilities, either due to the fact that they involved powerful double bottoms or very sharp reversals in price movements. Thus, there were 36 time periods in which significant trend reversals took place lasting over three weeks, and in most cases, over seven weeks (29 of 36). Obviously, there were many other periods that correlated to a sudden shift in gold prices, but only these resulted in rather long-term new directions, or at least four weeks. This is important to bear in mind, for when these 36 periods are related to geocosmic signatures, one should remember that they may also be present in the shorter reversals, too.

TABLE 3
SIGNIFICANT TURNING POINTS IN GOLD PRICES: 6/1/75–5/28/82

1. 6/2/75 PB
   Began eight-week rise
2. 7/29/75 PT
   Began eight-week drop
3. 9/23/75 PB
   Began six-week rise
4. 11/5/75 PT
   Began eleven-week drop
5. 1/20/76 PB
   Began eight-week rise
6. 3/18/76 MT
   Returned to 23-week drop
7. 8/25/76 PB
   Began twelve-week rise
   End of Bear Market
8. 11/15/76 PT
   Began eight-week drop
9. 1/10/77 PB
   Began ten-week rise
10. 3/23/77 PT
    Began twelve-week drop
11. 6/14/77 PB
    Began 21-week rise
12. 11/9/77 PT
    Began five-week drop
13. 12/12/77 DB
    Began twelve-week rise
14. 3/8/78 PT
    Began seven-week drop
15. 4/25/78 PB
    Began 27-week rise
16. 10/30/78 PT
    Began four-week drop
17. 11/30/78 PB
    Began twelve-week rise
18. 2/22/79 PT
    Began eight-week drop
19. 4/16/79 PB
    Began 24-week rise
20. 10/2/79 PT
    Began four-week drop
21. 11/1/79 PB
    Began twelve-week rise
22. 1/21/80 PT
    Began eleven-week drop
23. 4/3/80 DB
    Began 14-week rise
24. 7/8/80 PT
    Began five-week drop
25. 8/12/80 PB
    Began six-week rise
26. 9/23/80 PT
    Began 23-week drop
    End of Bull Market
27. 3/4/81 PB
    Began three-week rise
28. 3/26/81 PT
    Began 19-week drop
29. 8/3/81 PB
    Began seven-week rise
30. 9/21/81 PT
    Began 25-week drop
31. 3/15/82 PB
    Began four-week rise
32. 4/14/82 PT
    Began several-week drop

OTHER SIGNIFICANT REVERSALS:

33. 12/19/75 PT
    Began sharp five-week drop
34. 11/21/77 PB
    First leg of double bottom

35. 8/23/78 PB
Resumed two-month rise
36. 3/18/80 PB
First leg of double bottom

Before attempting to delineate geocosmic relationships to these trend reversals, it may be beneficial to examine characteristics inherent in them as a group. First of all, a trend reversal against the basic market type is much shorter in comparison to one consistent with it. For instance, upward trends in a bear market are much shorter in length than downward swings. Between June 2, 1975 and August 25, 1976 a bear market in gold was in effect. There were six trend reversals during that period, three up and three down. The average amount of time the trend was up was seven weeks. The average amount of time it was down was 14 weeks. Another bear phase was in effect from September 23, 1980 through the end of this study, May 28, 1982. During this interval there were three reversals to an upward trend, averaging five weeks in length. At least three primary trends downward averaged 22 weeks each.

The same pattern existed in reverse during the bull market, which lasted from August 25, 1976 through September 23, 1980. Nine downward trends lasted an average of seven weeks each, while ten upward trends lasted an average of fifteen weeks each. If the last six-weeks crest cycle in the bull market is omitted, then the average length of upward cycles would have been sixteen weeks each.

In a bear market, upward trend reversals ranged anywhere from three to eight weeks in duration. Swings back to the primary trend lasted in a range of eight to 25 weeks. In four of the six instances of primary swings, the trend was over 19 weeks long. In a bull market, downward trend reversals ranged anywhere from four to twelve weeks in length. In seven of the nine instances, the trend was eight weeks or less. The reversal back to the primary upward swing, on the other hand, produced trends lasting anywhere from six to 27 weeks. Eight of these ten trends lasted at least twelve weeks before a major reversal took effect.

TABLE 4

NUMBER OF WEEKS OF UPSWING	NUMBER OF WEEKS OF DOWNSWING
Bear Market	
	22 (12/27/74–6/2/75)
8 (6/2/75–7/29/75)	8 (7/29/75–9/23/75)
6 (9/23/75–11/5/75)	11 (11/5/75–1/20/76)
8 (1/20/76–3/18/76)	23 (3/18/76–8/25/76)
Bull Market	
12 (8/25/76–11/15/76)	8 (11/15/76–1/10/77)
10 (1/10/77–3/23/77)	12 (3/23/77–6/14/77)
21 (6/14/77–11/9/77)	5 (11/9/77–12/12/77)
12 (12/12/77–3/8/78)	7 (3/8/78–4/25/78)
27 (4/25/78–10/30/78)	4 (10/30/78–11/30/78)
12 (11/30/78–2/22/79)	8 (2/22/79–4/16/79)
24 (4/16/79–10/2/79)	4 (10/2/79–11/1/79)
12 (11/1/79–1/21/80)	11 (1/21/80–4/3/80)
14 (4/3/80–7/8/80)	5 (7/8/80–8/12/80)
6 (8/12/80–9/23/80)	
Bear Market	
	23 (9/23/80–3/4/81)
3 (3/4/81–3/26/81)	19 (3/26/81–8/3/81)
7 (8/3/81–9/21/81)	25 (9/21/81–3/15/82)
4 (3/15/82–4/14/82)	10 (4/14/82–6/21/82)

From these simple observations, the following conclusions may be drawn:

1. **In a bear market, upward trend reversals will usually last no more than eight weeks. If an upward trend continues over eight weeks, then it is likely that a bull market is in effect.**
2. **Primary swings in a bear market usually last a good 19 weeks or more, and always more than eight. If less than eight weeks, then it is likely that a bull market is in effect.**
3. **In a bull market, downward trend reversals will likely last no more than eight weeks. If a downward trend continues over eight weeks, then a bear market may be in effect.**
4. **Primary swings in a bull market usually last a good twelve weeks or more, and almost always more than eight. If less than eight weeks, then a bear market may be in effect.**
5. **Any trend lasting more than eight weeks is probably a good indicator of the type of market in effect. If the trend is up, then it is a bull market. If the trend is down, it is probably a bear market.**
6. **There will be at least three primary swings of eight weeks or more in each type of market before the entire market reverses from bull to bear, or vice-versa. In fact, such swings tend to occur in multiples of three (i.e. three, six, nine, etc.).**

Why are these points important? First, they will enable the student to identify the very beginning of a bull or bear market. That means there will be at least two more primary swings to follow. Secondly, all important reversals against the major cycle will usually be limited to eight weeks or less, thus providing an excellent awareness of buy and sell indicators.

To illustrate, consider the periods of time just prior to the new bull and bear markets. August 25, 1976 followed a powerful 23-week decline in gold prices. The cycle then reversed. During the course of the next eight weeks, prices generally kept rising. In fact, a sustained downturn did not begin until the 12th week. Because the eight-week or less pattern of an upward trend limit in a bear market was broken, the student should have suspected a new bull market might be in effect. The fact that the next downtrend did not extend beyond eight weeks would be confirmation, and allowed one plenty of time to prepare for the next two primary swings up.

On January 21, 1980, gold prices achieved their all-time high. This was the end of a twelve-week primary swing up. The next trend was down for eleven weeks, and suggested that a bear market might be in effect. However, the trend then reversed upwards, lasting over eight weeks again (14 weeks to be exact), implying the bull market was not yet over. Because the last downtrend lasted over eight weeks, though, the student should have been suspicious that this bull cycle may not be long-lasting.

On August 12, 1980, the upward trend began again, but this time lasted only six weeks, far less than necessary for a strong bull market. The reversal down resulted in a trend that lasted over eight weeks, at which time one should have been aware that the bull phase was indeed over. In fact, this downward trend continued beyond the eight weeks, lasting 23 weeks in all. Now the student should expect the next upward trend reversal to be less than eight weeks, which in fact it was (only three weeks). At least two more primary moves of long duration should follow in this bear phase. When a primary swing down of less than eight weeks is followed by a primary swing up of over eight weeks, the student will know that the bear phase is probably over and the bull cycle is probably in effect.

GEOCOSMIC SIGNATURES RELATED TO MAJOR TREND CHANGES

The study of geocosmic associations with the 36 major trend reversals shown in Table 3 should reveal the most powerful and potentially significant planetary signatures, if any, correlated with gold price cycles.

Earlier chapters of this book have statistically documented geocosmic signatures present during a central time band as well as a five to eleven day orb surrounding gold price cycles. From these studies, specific geocosmic signatures have been associated with stronger cycles than others, and those signatures that were not consistently associated with cycles in gold prices were not included in this report at all. In addition, time

windows following retrograde or direct planetary motions were found to correlate with powerful troughs or crests at regular intervals. The focus in these chapters was upon planetary cycles correlating with gold price cycles.

At this time it is wise to shift that focus. Analyzing from the reverse point of view, from that of the gold price cycle and seeing whether or not it coincides with particular geocosmic signatures is equally important. To some extent, that has been accomplished in the early part of this section. The existence of three or more geocosmic signatures within six trading days of a cycle culmination has been demonstrated. So too has its corollary of one significant signature within two trading days of a powerful cycle been shown.

However, not all 35 signatures were of equal value and strength in their association with different levels of cycles in gold prices. And not all were present when a major reversal of a cycle took place. Since major trend reversals probably represent the most potent of times in any market study, then their association with other factors being studied in the correlation to market prices should also be most evident during these times.

The results begin by confirming the criteria already established. Of the 36 periods of major reversals (Table 3), 34 have three or more significant geocosmic signatures clustered within six trading days (94.4%). Only #20 and #30 did not. In case #20, the only signature present within six trading days was Venus conjunct Pluto, which happened exactly on that date. In case #30, Venus formed a waxing square to Mars four days later and the Sun was waning trine to Neptune four days before (note that the cycle culminated midway between the two aspect dates), as the only two significant geocosmic signatures present within six trading days.

However, in both of these cases, something interesting was in effect which so far has not been discussed. This was the phenomenon known as lunations. Basically, there are four major phases of the moon: the new moon, the first quarter, the full moon and the last quarter. Each occurs approximately one week after the other, in the order just given. Several studies have been conducted denoting the association of the new and full moons upon a multitude of cycles, ranging from the tides of the ocean to patients hemorrhaging in hospitals to psychotic types of crimes committed and even to movements in the financial markets. Because they occur so frequently, this particular study does not include lunations in its effort to detect powerful cycles. True, a new or full moon will frequently accompany a powerful cyclic trough or crest within two trading days, but it does not work in reverse: the presence of new or full moons does not always coincide with a powerful cycle. To illustrate this point, consider the fact that there were 182 new and full moons during the period of this study, May 25, 1975 through May 28, 1982. Less than one-half of these were present within two days of a major or greater cycle in gold prices. What may be the basis for a significant study is their association with such gold price cycles when another planet forms a mathematical relationship (aspect) to the point of the new or full moon. The data present in this study suggests that such an association exists, and even to the quarter moons when they likewise form conjunctions, squares or oppositions to other planets.

Returning to the two cases in which three or more geocosmic signatures were not present within six trading days of the cycle's culmination, both followed Sun to Moon aspects at 27 degrees of Virgo. In case #20, there was a new moon preceding this crest at 27 degrees Virgo (September 21, 1979). In case #30, there was a third quarter moon present the day before at 27 degrees Virgo and Gemini, as another primary top unfolded.

Further research into the 27 degrees of mutable signs (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces) brought to light an interesting picture. Fifteen lunations and quarter moons between 26–28 degrees of the mutable signs have happened since May, 1975, and in ten of those cases powerful cycles have occurred within two trading days. There are eight instances of this in our table of 36 major cycle reversals. Perhaps the only thing this can be related to is the fact that the center of our galaxy, the galactic center, is located at approximately 27 degrees of Sagittarius, a mutable sign. Mathematical relationships to this point from planets or groupings of planets, including the sun and moon, apparently coincide with drastic turns in the financial markets. Clifford Charles Matlock also determined a similar phenomenon in stock prices when new or full moons happened during the last ten days of Virgo (i.e. 21–30 degrees), in his work MAN AND THE COSMOS.[13]

Though the analysis indicated that 34 of 36 cases of major trend reversals occurred when three or more planetary signatures were in effect within a six-day trading range, it furthermore revealed that 27 of those cases had the necessary number of signatures present within only a four-day trading span (75%). Excluding the two that did not possess the required number within a six-day trading period, the average number of days variance between the date of the cycle reversal and the presence of three or more geocosmic signatures was 3.17 days.

Progressing onward to the corollary part of the hypothesis, the date indicated that in every case at least one significant geocosmic signature was present within four trading days of the reversal. In all but one instance (97.2%), a signature was present within only three trading days.

13. MAN AND THE COSMOS: A THEORY OF ENDEAVOR RHYTHMS, Clifford Charles Matlock, 1977, Development Cycles Research Project, Waynesville, North Carolina

In 30 of 36 cases, a significant signature was in effect within only two trading days (83.3%). And finally, at least one planetary signature was present within only one trading day of the cycle's culmination in 28 instances (77.7%).

It is not that frequent that one finds a cluster of three or more of these signatures present in as small a time interval as allowed in this study. However, in the 36 cases of major cycle reversals, more often than not there were over three such geocosmic signatures present within six trading days of the cycle (80.5%).

All of the above analysis strongly suggests that major cyclic reversals coincide with, first, more than the expected number of geocosmic signatures and, second, within a shorter than expected time band. In summary, the following points should all be born in mind when looking for planetary associations with major trend reversals:

1. **A cluster of four or more significant geocosmic signatures will tend to be present within six trading days of a major gold price trend reversal (80.5%).**
2. **One significant geocosmic signature tends to be present within only one trading day of the reversal (77.7%), and this is almost always the case if a three-day orb is allowed (97.2%).**
3. **The average number of trading days between three geocosmic signatures present and a cycle reversal of significance is 3.17 days. In most instances, three or more such signatures will occur within only four trading days or less (75%).**

Which planetary cycles tend to be present at these major turning points in gold prices? Obviously, not all 35 signatures are equal in corresponding effect. To answer this question, an analysis was made of all planetary aspects present within a ten-day trading period of each powerful cycle date. The number of days was extended in hopes of bringing in the slower moving aspects whose effect might not be as quickly evident as the faster moving ones. Also, any aspects between planets exceeding a ten-degree orb at the time of the cycle culmination were eliminated. Thus, it was possible to exclude a Mercury to Mars aspect, for instance, that might have occurred within only seven days of the cycle, but which might have been over ten degrees apart from one another on the date of the reversal. On the other hand, a Mars to Jupiter aspect ten days away from the reversal date might have been included because they were only five degrees apart from exactness, much closer in distance to one another than the Mercury and Mars, though further away in time from the actual cycle.

Table 5 shows the total number of instances each planet was involved in an aspect during the 36 cases of major trend reversals. It is not surprising that the planets of Jupiter and beyond would be less evident than the faster moving bodies. In their orbit around the Sun, the planets Mercury, Mars, Venus and the Earth will obviously make more contact with other planets. Even so, it seems quite significant that Mars was most prominent, given the fact that its orbital motion is considerably slower than either Earth (Sun), Mercury and Venus. Also outstanding was the number of times Uranus was involved, far more than any part of the other planets beyond Mars. The implication here is that the presence of Mars or Uranus in planetary signatures with other planets (especially to one another as well as to the Sun or Venus) might have a more powerful association with trends in gold prices.

TABLE 5

Sun	69	Saturn	39
Mercury	58	Uranus	55
Venus	56	Neptune	28
Mars	73	Pluto	26
Jupiter	40		

Table 5 depicts the number of instances each planet was involved in an aspect during a major trend reversal.

This is exactly what resulted when the study was broken down into actual planetary signatures present during these reversals. As seen in Table 6, Venus/Uranus, Venus/Mars, and Sun/Uranus were the most frequently involved signatures. Close behind were the combinations of Sun/Jupiter, Sun/Pluto, Mercury/Mars, Sun/Saturn, Sun/Mars and Mars/Uranus.

However, to gain a better understanding of these correlations, the frequency of occurrence of each signature should be taken into account. When this is applied, a slightly different picture emerged. Only the Venus/Mars signature correlated with major reversals in over half of the instances in which it occurred, of those just mentioned. In addition, certain signatures involving farther out planets to one another coincided with major reversals too, most notably the Saturn/Neptune (all six of its contacts coincided with a cycle reversal), Saturn/Jupiter (five of six) and Jupiter/Neptune (two of three).

In the planetary retrograde and direct categories, there were several correlations to major trend reversals. The stations of Venus, Mars and Saturn all concurred with major trend reversals in gold prices in at least half of their occurrences. Also impressive in this regard was the retrogradation of Neptune, which happened seven times and synchronized with a powerful reversal in six of those instances.

TABLE 6

Sun/Mars	9	21	Mars/Jupiter	7	18
Sun/Jupiter	14	33	Mars/Saturn	6	13
Sun/Saturn	11	27	Mars/Uranus	8	22
Sun/Uranus	16	42	Mars/Pluto	6	21
Sun/Neptune	13	42	Jupiter/Saturn	5	6
Sun/Pluto	13	42	Jupiter/Neptune	2	3
Mercury/Mars	13	37	Saturn/Uranus	1	5
Venus/Mars	18	28	Saturn/Neptune	6	6
Venus/Saturn	7	29	Solar Eclipse	4	14
Venus/Uranus	19	29	Lunar Eclipse	2	15
Venus/Pluto	5	42			

Number of instances in which a major cycle reversal coincided with geocosmic signatures (aspects between two planets). First column represents number of times signature was present during cycle reversal. Second column represents number of times the signature occurred during time period of study, May 25, 1975 through May 28, 1982.

Mars/Saturn, Venus/Uranus and the stations of Uranus and Pluto correlated with reversals in nearly half of their occurrences. Thus, they too must be considered powerful. In fact, if the waning trine of Venus to Uranus was excluded, it also had an above 50% correlation to cycle reversals. The same is true of Mercury to Mars if only the conjunction and waxing trine were examined, and Sun to Saturn if only the opposition was considered.

From these results, it is plausible to construct categories of strength correlating geocosmic signatures with major trend reversals in gold prices. The three levels would be as follows, in order of their probability according to this study.

LEVEL ONE

Signatures in this grouping represent a greater than 50% association with major reversals in gold price cycles.

1. **Saturn/Neptune**: In all six occurrences, the trend in gold prices reversed within a short period of time (100%).

2. **Neptune Retrograde**: Prices reversed within a few days of this phenomenon in six of seven instances (85.7%).
3. **Jupiter/Saturn**: This signature correlated to a major reversal in gold prices in five of the six times it occurred (83.3%).
4. **Mars Stationary**: In six of eight cases of this occurrence, major changes in gold prices evolved (75%).
5. **Jupiter/Neptune**: Two of the three times this signature occurred, the dominant trend in gold prices ended, and a new trend began (66.7%).
6. **Mercury conjunct or waxing trine to Mars**: In eleven of seventeen instances this signature correlated to reversals in gold prices (64.7%).
7. **Venus/Mars**: Perhaps the most potent of a more frequent signature, these two planets in major aspect led to reversals in gold trends in 18 of the 28 times they occurred (64.3%).
8. **Venus Stationary**: In six of the ten instances of Venus changing directions, major reversals in gold prices unfolded (60%).
9. **Mars/Jupiter**, excluding conjunction and waxing square: This coincided with major trend reversals in seven of twelve instances (58.3%).
10. **Venus/Uranus**, excluding the waning trine: Another potent and frequent signature, it coincided with major price reversals in gold in 20 of 36 instances (55.6%).
11. **Saturn Stationary**: Seven of thirteen occurrences have correlated with major trend reversals (53.8%).
12. **Sun/Uranus**, excluding the waning trine: Though this did not occur with an over 50% frequency, it still happened enough to warrant close watch. In 16 of 36 cases of this signature, gold prices reversed their cycle (44.4%).

LEVEL TWO

Signatures of this grouping are also to be considered very powerful associations to trend reversals. In over 32% of the time of their occurrence, such reversals have been noted.

13. **Mars/Saturn**: This signature does not seem to take effect at once, or at least not during a six-day central time band, but when extended to ten days it is frequently present during trend reversals. At least it was in 6 of its 13 occurrences (46.2%).
14. **Sun/Jupiter**: This is another borderline case because it happened to be present so many times when cycles reversed. Such was the case 14 of 33 instances (42.4%).
15. **Sun/Mars**: Another powerful signature which correlated to trend reversals in 9 of 21 instances (42.9%).

16. **Pluto Stationary**: In 6 of 14 occurrences, prices in gold changed directions significantly (42.9%).
17. **Sun/Saturn**: This was most outstanding during its *opposition when cycles reversed 6 of 7 times it happened.* This aspect alone should be considered Level One while all others are Level Two. However, other aspects also coincided at times with these trend reversals, the total being 11 of 27 (40.7%). (Does not include any trines).
18. **Mars/Uranus**: Like Mars/Saturn, this signature seems to occur just slightly outside the central time band during a cycle reversal. It has been present at major changes in gold prices in 8 of its 22 occurrences (36.4%).
19. **Uranus Stationary**: 5 of its 14 occurrences synchronized with major trend reversals in gold (35.7%).
20. **Mercury Stationary**: When Mercury changed directions, the trend was disturbed in many cases. However, major reversals occurred in only 15 of the 46 instances (32.6%).

LEVEL THREE

These signatures have also been found in several instances of major reversals in gold prices. However, they probably pertain more to cycle culminations than to potent reversals, and may be significant when accompanied by other signatures listed above.

21. **Sun/Pluto**: Though it and Sun/Neptune signatures correlated in 13 instances to price reversals, it took 42 occurrences to do so (31%).
22. **Sun/Neptune**: Same as Sun/Pluto (31%).
23. **Mars/Pluto**: Prices reversed trend in 6 of 21 instances (28.6%).
24. **Venus/Saturn**: Though this signature often depressed gold prices, it was not very evident during major reversals. Cycles reversed in only 7 of 29 instances (24.1%).
25. **Jupiter Stationary**: Even less frequent was the presence of Jupiter changing directions near the time of a reversal. It happened in 3 of 14 instances (21.4%).
26. **Venus/Pluto**: The least effective signature correlating to cycle reversals was this one. In only 5 of 42 instances did new trends begin (11.9%).

Categorized in this manner, some more refined observations can be made, as depicted in the next three tables. Table 7 illustrates the number of days between at least one Level One signature and a major cycle reversal date. Note that in 35 of the 36 cases, or 97.2%, a Level One signature was present within six trading days. Furthermore, these specific signatures

TABLE 7

No. of days	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	more
No. of signatures (36 samples)	6	10	6	6	2	3	2	1

Number of instances in which a Level One geocosmic signature was present at specific number of days away from 36 major turning points in gold prices, May, 1975–May, 1982. Note that in 28 of 36 instances, a Level One signature was present within only three trading days or less of a major reversal.

were present within only five trading days in 33 instances (91.7%), and within only three trading days in 28 cases (77.8%). In fact, a Level One signature was present within only two trading days in over 60% of the instances observed. Excluding case #20, the average number of days between a major cycle change date and a Level One signature was 2.14 days.

In Table 8, the total number of Level One signatures present within six trading days of a cycle reversal date was tabulated. Again, the table repeats the earlier findings that 35 of the 36 cases contained at least one Level One signature within this six-trading day orb. However, it furthermore reveals that two or more Level One signatures were present during this time band in 27 cases, or 75%. The average number of Level One signatures present within six trading days of a major cycle reversal was 2.38.

Table 9 is a breakdown of Level One plus Level Two signatures in effect within the six-day trading band surrounding the date of a trend reversal. In 32 instances, there were at least two signatures of a Level One or Level Two quality present (88.9%), and in 27 instances, there were at least three of the combination present (75%). The average number of Level One plus Level Two signatures present within six trading days of a major cycle reversal was 3.47. In other words, in 75% of instances analyzed, three or more geocosmic signatures of a Level One plus Two type have been present within six trading days of trend reversals in the price of gold. The value in this is that Level Three signatures are not usually necessary in ascertaining the potential of a cycle change.

TABLE 8

No. of signatures	0	1	2	3	4	5
No. of instances in effect (36 samples)	1	8	10	11	5	1

Number of Level One geocosmic signatures present within six trading days of a major trend reversal in gold prices. Note that in 27 instances there were at least two or more Level One signatures present within six trading days of the reversal date.

TABLE 9

No. of Level One or Level Two signatures	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
No. of instances in effect (36 samples)	1	3	4	9	10	5	2	0	1

Number of Level One plus Level Two geocosmic signatures present within six trading days of a major trend reversal in gold prices. Note that in 27 instances, there were at least three or more Level One or Level Two signatures present within six trading days of the reversal date. In 32 instances, there were at least two such signatures present.

The following conclusions may be drawn from the results of this study on major cycle reversals in the price of gold:

1. **A Level One geocosmic signature tends to be present within three trading days of a major cycle change (77.8%). If extended six trading days, it is almost always in effect (97.2%).**
2. **Two or more Level One geocosmic signatures tend to be present within six trading days of a major cycle change (75%). If Level Two signatures are included, the probability increases greatly that at least two will be present within the six-day trading orb (88.9%).**
3. **Three or more Level One or Level Two geocosmic signatures tend to be present within six trading days of a major cycle change (75%). The probability increases considerably if Level Three signatures are included (94.4%).**

At this time, the reader is probably ready to start working with these principles.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

INTEGRATING TECHNICAL INDICATORS WITH GEOCOSMIC SIGNATURES AS A FORECASTING TOOL

The state of the art of forecasting gold prices and cycles is inherently related to the student's ability to integrate all the variables in effect at one time, and then to make clear judgment. This book has focused upon three types of variables that have been observed to correlate with gold cycles: technical indicators, cyclic time bands and geocosmic signatures. The proposition implied throughout has been that the student, or trader, can reasonably well forecast prices and timing of major events in gold prices by use of these three studies. This is especially so when all three are suggesting the same thing. For example, if a primary trough is due during a particular six-week time band (cycles' theory), a crest has just occurred in a bull market, and right-translation suggests that a secondary reaction is now due within two weeks (technical analysis), prices are quickly descending toward a trendline, (technical analysis), and a cluster of geocosmic signatures correlating with planetary trough time windows is about due (geocosmic perspective), then the student should have a fairly accurate projection as to when this trough might be realized. In addition, use of price objective techniques (technical analysis) will further aid in determining a more exact point of bottoming. Once the price achieves the *range* expected during the *time band* expected, the next leg of the primary swing should commence shortly thereafter.

The most effective way to learn how to apply these three factors is through practice. Therefore, a couple of long-term periods will be "walked

through" in a moment, pointing out each variable in effect and how it might influence trading strategy. Before beginning this exercise, a list of steps is now provided which summarizes these specific variables, for they are the keys to spotting the market's future movement.

To begin with, there are three primary rules to take into account before entering the market. They are:

1. The type of overall market in effect: is it a bull or bear market?
2. When and at what price does one enter?

   In a bull market, one buys in (goes long) near the bottom of a secondary reaction. There are several "triggers" to look for:

   A. **Right Translation,** in which the bottom of the secondary reaction usually occurs within two weeks following the crest of a major, one-half primary, or primary crest.
   B. **A Price Objective** that represents 38.2–61.8% retractment of the primary upswing. Usually this retractment will be less than 50% in a strong bull market, so the "trigger," or preparation point of entry might be as prices retrace to the 35% level.
   C. **The Market's Communication Of A Probable Bottom** comes when 1.) prices close above the previous week's high (for the most conservative investor), 2.) when prices close above the previous day's high and current day's opening[14], and/or 3.) when prices exceed 15% of the downswing above the lowest price in the secondary reaction (most speculative method when used alone, but possibly offering highest profit potential when correct). Any two of these conditions, given that points A and B are in effect, represent buying opportunities.

   In a bear market, one sells short near the top of a rally. Again, several "triggers" should be present:

   A. **Left Translation,** in which the crest of the rally usually unfolds within two weeks following the trough of the major, one-half primary, or primary trough.
   B. **A Price Objective** that represents a 38.2–61.8% retractment of the primary downswing. Usually this retractment will be less than 50% in a strong bear market, so the "trigger" might be at the point prices rally to the 35% level.
   C. **The Market's Communication Of A Probable Crest,** after points A and B have been realized, comes when 1.) prices close below the previous week's low (most conservative), 2.) when prices close below the previous day's low and present day's opening, and/or 3.) prices drop more than 15% of the rally swing below the

14. Bressert, Walter, in private conversation with author.

highest price in the rally (speculative). Any two of these conditions represent "selling short" opportunities.

3. When and at what price does one exit the market?

Here, one must apply the old adage, "Let your profits run and minimize your losses." Thus, there are two points of potential exit in the schemata outlined here (there are actually many more points, but only two discussed in great detail in this work). They are:

A. **Enter a stop-loss order at the same time a contract is purchased.** A stop-loss is an order to the broker to exit from the market at a pre-determined price that represents (hopefully) a small and specific percentage of loss to the investor in the event that his/her expectation of the market direction is incorrect. In order to give one's strategy a chance to work, it is suggested that this initial stop-loss order be at a price that reflects a 65% retractment from the previous primary swing.

For example, assume it is a bull market, and prices during a primary swing have moved from $200.00 to $250.00. The primary swing is thus $50.00. A 35% retractment would take prices down to about $232.50. Assuming prices rescind to this level within two weeks, this becomes a "trigger" to prepare to buy. As soon as prices close above a previous day's high, and recover 15% or more of the entire downswing, a purchase could be made. Assume prices went down to $227.00, closed at $229.00, and the next day opened at $230.00 and closed at $231.00. All the conditions are now met. As one purchases a contract, a stop-loss order should also be issued at a price that would represent 65% retractment of the $50.00 primary swing, or at $217.50. If prices drop below $217.50, then it should be evident that one's strategy may no longer be in effect and losses have been limited to less than six percent. If prices do not retract to this level, then the anticipated strategy may be in effect, and the next step is undertaken.

B. **Outline a period of time in which the crest or trough at the end of the primary swing is due.** Besides knowledge of *cycles*, other "triggers" can be used, such as the *mid-cycle pause price objective*, and *trendlines*, if appropriate. Once the "triggers" are in effect, then allow the profits to run until the market communicates that it is time to exit. This it does when prices close below a previous week's low and current day's opening (most speculative), or below a previous day's low and current day's opening in a bull swing[15]. In a bear swing, a close above a previous day's high and current day's opening, or above a previous week's high and current opening (most speculative), is the time to exit, particularly if a

15. IBID

valid trendline is penetrated. If these prices do not penetrate a valid trendline, nor represent a 15% retractment of the entire primary swing below the highest point in a crest, or above the highest point in a trough, then it might be wise to give a little more room for the profits to continue. This can be done by withholding the exit, and instead entering a stop-loss order at the 15% retractment level of the primary swing from highest or lowest price in the swing (most conservative, usually locks in profits early). If prices fail to reach that level, and instead return to the direction of the primary swing, one's profits are increased. In this event, the entire process can be initiated again, but a little later and at higher gains. Once more, look for the day that prices close below a previous day's low and current day's opening (bull market), or above previous day's high and current day's opening. If this represents at least a 15% retractment of the primary swing, or a penetration of a valid trendline, then exit. If not, put a stop-loss in at this 15% retractment price. For the most conservative investor, a stop-loss order at a 10% retractment price can lock in profits early, but may cut one off from further profits should the market resume its primary direction.

To illustrate this point, assume the last example is still in effect. The market was entered at $231.00, because all of the "triggers" for entry in a bull market were met. Assume prices began rising, as expected. Since the next trough is not due until five–eight weeks after this current secondary reaction, and since *right translation* will probably be in effect, the next crest is expected in three to seven weeks (the crest in a bull market precedes the trough by two weeks or less). The *mid-cycle pause price objective* is $277.00 (range is $269.00–$285.00), since the midpoint of the secondary reaction is $238.50 ($250.00 crest, $227.00 trough), and the price change between the beginning of the last primary swing ($200.00) and this mid-cycle price ($238.50) is $38.50; adding this amount to the midpoint price ($238.50 + 38.50) gives our objective. The range is determined by giving a plus or minus ten percent of the difference between beginning point ($200.00) and MCP ($277.00) which in this case is $7.70, or almost $8.00.

Therefore, prices reaching the $269.00 level, and a time period beginning in three weeks, represent two "triggers," or signals that it is time to prepare to exit from the market. Let us assume that this period of crest expectation can be defined even further to five to six weeks, perhaps due to the presence of other "triggers," such as a geocosmic cluster. In this case, the period of time following Friday's close on the fourth week becomes critical.

As soon as our *price* objective is met within the *time* objective, we look for the first day in which prices close below the previous day's low and current day's opening. We also consider whether or not prices have retracted 15% of the primary swing below the highest price of this swing.

Assume that during this period prices have indeed attained the $269.00 level. One day they close at $274.00, with a low of $274.00, after reaching a primary swing high of $277.00. The next day prices open at $273.50, and close at $272.00. The close is below the previous day's close and current day's opening. The time and price objective triggers have been met, so this is an appropriate time and price to exit.

However, let us assume we strongly believe that the upward swing is not yet over. The primary swing has covered $50.00 (from $227.00 to $277.00), and a 15% retractment would represent a price of $269.50, a price level at which we would be willing to close out in order to give our strategy more time to work. Thus we put in a stop-loss order, instead of exiting, at this 15% retractment level, or at $269.50.

To keep the example going, assume prices do resume upwards, even going beyond the price objective, to $290.00. The primary swing has now covered $63.00. Prices close this day at $287.00, with a low of $285.00, and the next day open at $286.00, but close down sharply at $280.00. Now all the conditions for exiting have been met, for $280.00 is below a 15% retractment level ($280.55), it occured *after* the beginning of the anticipated crest period, and it is a price that is lower than the previous day's low and current day's opening.

The exact points of exiting can be adjusted to fit each investor's temperament. For example, a more speculative-minded individual may have preferred to wait until the previous *week's* low was taken out before exiting. A more cautious investor may not be happy with a stop-loss representing a 15% retractment, but may want to lock into profits quicker and perhaps higher by initiating stop-losses at only 10% retractment of the primary swing from the highest price in that swing, once the time objective has been reached.

There are many effective money management methods used in commodity trading. The intent of this book is not to discuss them, but rather to identify significant cycles in gold. However, a natural extension of this book may be to invest in the gold market, and hence, the reader is

encouraged to read THE HAL BLUE BOOK[16] by Walter Bressert and James Jones for an excellent treatise on money management with commodities.

Once these three points are understood as outlined above, then the finer details of integrating technical analysis, cycles' theories and geocosmic principles can be applied for extremely accurate timing. The reader is now advised to thoroughly study and understand each of the following points which integrate all three systems for each type of market.

BEAR MARKET

1. Start by locating a primary trough. A list of primary troughs from May 25, 1975 through May 28, 1982 is printed in Chapter Three of this book.
2. Determine the likely time for the crest of the rally that will follow the primary trough. This is the point to enter the market, by selling short.
   - A. In a bear market, left translation will most likely be in effect, so the crest should occur within two trading weeks of the primary trough and no more than three.
   - B. The price objective for this crest will be 38.2–61.2% retractment from the previous primary downswing. At 35% retractment, one should prepare to enter the market.
   - C. Look for a post-retrograde or direct planetary crest time window to be in effect.
     1. If more than one are in effect, consider the week(s) they overlap to be the most probable period for the crest.
     2. These time windows should furthermore overlap during the expected time band of the left translation crest.
   - D. Look for a cluster of three or more geocosmic signatures listed in this book that occur within a time span of less than 13 trading days. If there are three or more within less than seven trading days, this is even better.
     1. Take the date midway between the planets involved in the cluster. Consider this as one likely due date for the crest if it falls within the time band of point C.
     2. If there is a Level One signature present, look for the crest to appear within three trading days of its aspect, and within the time band outlined in point C. All these times should overlap.
     3. If there is at least one Level One signature present, and a combination of three or more Level One and Level Two

16. THE HAL BLUE BOOK, Walter J. Bressert and James Hardie Jones, HALCO, Dallas, Texas, 1981.

signatures within a midpoint of six trading days, then be wary of a major trend reversal that may last over three weeks.

3. Determine the likely time of the next major trough. This is the point to prepare to exit from the market.
   A. According to the Bressert Cycles' Theory, the next major trough will be five to eight weeks following the previous major or primary trough.
   B. The *mid-cycle pause price objective* method can be used to determine a possible price range for this major trough.
   C. Look for a post-retrograde or direct planetary trough time window to be in effect.
      1. If more than one are in effect, consider the week(s) they overlap to be the most probable period for the trough.
      2. These time windows should furthermore overlap with the expected time band for the major, one-half primary, or primary trough, as identified by cycles' studies.
   D. Look for a cluster of three or more geocosmic signatures listed in this book that occur within a time span of less than 13 trading days. If there are three or more signatures within a seven-trading day period, this is even better.
      1. Take the date midway between the cluster. If it falls within the trough time band outlined in point C, it can be considered the probable trough date.
      2. At least one of the signatures involved in the cluster should be a Level One type. This should fall within three days of the actual trough. If more than one Level One signature is present in the cluster, then consider 1.) the point midway between them as close to the actual trough expectation date, or 2.) consider the signature with the greater C/S Value as the more powerful, and the one that should fall within three trading days of the actual trough.
      3. If there is at least one Level One signature and a combination of three Level One and Level Two signatures present within a midpoint of six trading days, then be wary of a major trend change that might follow. An exception to this would be another cluster appearing during the time band of the next expected rally crest, within three weeks after this trough.
   E. Once the overall time frame and price objective "triggers" are in effect, then look for the market to give a strong signal to exit. An exit signal occurs when:
      1. Prices close above the previous day's high, and current day's opening. For the more speculative-minded, prices must take out the previous week's high.
      2. Prices retract in excess of 15% of the primary downswing above the lowest price. For the more conservative investor, a rally of 10% of the primary swing might suffice.
      3. A penetration of a valid downward trendline strongly suggests (possibly confirms) that the bottom has been reached in the current cycle.

Secondary points concerning bear markets to remember are:

1. If a rally continues over eight weeks, in which each trough is higher than its last, then the market may have changed to a bull cycle.
2. There will likely be at least three primary swings of over eight weeks each during a bear market.
3. Breakouts on the downside are likely to occur, in which case prices usually descend to the next support level. At this point, adjust stop-loss order to reflect the breakout point as a new *resistance* level.

BULL MARKET

1. Start by locating a primary crest. A list of primary crests from May 25, 1975 through May 28, 1982 is printed in Chapter Three of this book. A primary crest cycle lasts about 22 weeks (18–26 weeks).
2. Determine the likely time for the trough of the secondary reaction that will follow this primary crest. This is the point to prepare to enter the market, to buy gold, to go long.
   A. In a bull market, right translation will most likely be in effect, so the trough will tend to occur within two trading weeks of the primary crest, and no more than three (unless a major reversal is in effect).
   B. The price objective for this trough will represent a 38.2–61.8% retractment of the previous primary swing up. At 35% retractment, one should be ready to enter the market.
   C. Look for a post-retrograde or direct planetary trough time window to be in effect.
      1. If there are more than one in effect, consider the week(s) they overlap to be the most probable period for the trough.
      2. These time windows should furthermore overlap with the expected time band of the secondary reaction trough, which is within two (not more than three) weeks after the major or greater crest.

D. Look for a cluster of three or more geocosmic signatures listed in this book to be present within a time span of less than 13 trading days. If there are three or more within less than seven trading days, this is even better.
   1. Consider the date midway between this cluster as the potential trough due date if it falls within the time band outlined in point C.
   2. If there is a Level One signature present, look for the trough to appear within three trading days of its aspect, and within the time band outlined in point C.
   3. If at least one Level One signature is present, and a combination of three or more Level One plus Level Two signatures are present within a midpoint of six trading days, then be wary of a major trend reversal that may last over three weeks.

3. Determine the likely time of the next major crest. This is the time to prepare to exit from the market.
   A. The next major crest will likely occur from three to seven weeks after the trough of the secondary reaction.
   B. The *mid-cycle pause price objective* method can be used to determine a possible price range for this major crest.
   C. Look for post-retrograde or direct planetary crest time windows to be in effect.
      1. If more than one are present, consider the week(s) they overlap as the most probable period for the crest.
      2. These time windows should furthermore overlap with the expected time band for the next major, one-half primary, or primary crest as identified by cycles studies.
   D. Look for a cluster of three or more geocosmic signatures listed in this book to be present within a time span of less than 13 trading days. If three or more of these signatures occur within a seven-day trading span, this is even better.
      1. Assume the date midway in the cluster to be a probable crest date. It should fall within the time frame outlined in point C.
      2. At least one of the planetary signatures should be a Level One type. This should fall within three days of the actual crest. If more than one Level One signature is present, then consider 1.) the point midway between them as close to the actual crest, or 2.) the signature with the greater C/S Value as more powerful.
      3. If there is at least one Level One signature and a combination of three Level One plus Level Two signatures present within a midpoint of six trading days, then be wary of a major trend change that might follow.

   E. Once the time frame and price objective "triggers" are in effect, then look for the market to give a strong signal to exit. An exit signal occurs when:
      1. Prices close below the previous day's low, and current day's opening. For the speculative-minded, prices must take out the previous week's low.
      2. Prices retract in excess of 15% of the primary swing below the highest price within that swing. For the more conservative investor, a retractment of only 10% of the primary upswing might suffice.
      3. A penetration of a valid upward trendline strongly suggests (possibly confirms) that the top has been reached in the current cycle.

As the market retreats from this major or greater crest, one again prepares to go long with the forthcoming secondary reaction trough, following the same rules just outlined.

Secondary points concerning bull markets to remember are:

1. If a secondary reaction continues over eight weeks, in which each successive crest is lower than its last, then the market may have changed to a bear cycle.
2. There will likely be at least three primary swings of over eight weeks each during a bull market.
3. Breakouts on the upside are likely to occur, in which case prices usually continue to the next resistance level. At this point, enter new stop-loss orders to reflect the breakout price as a new support level.

CASE HISTORY #1

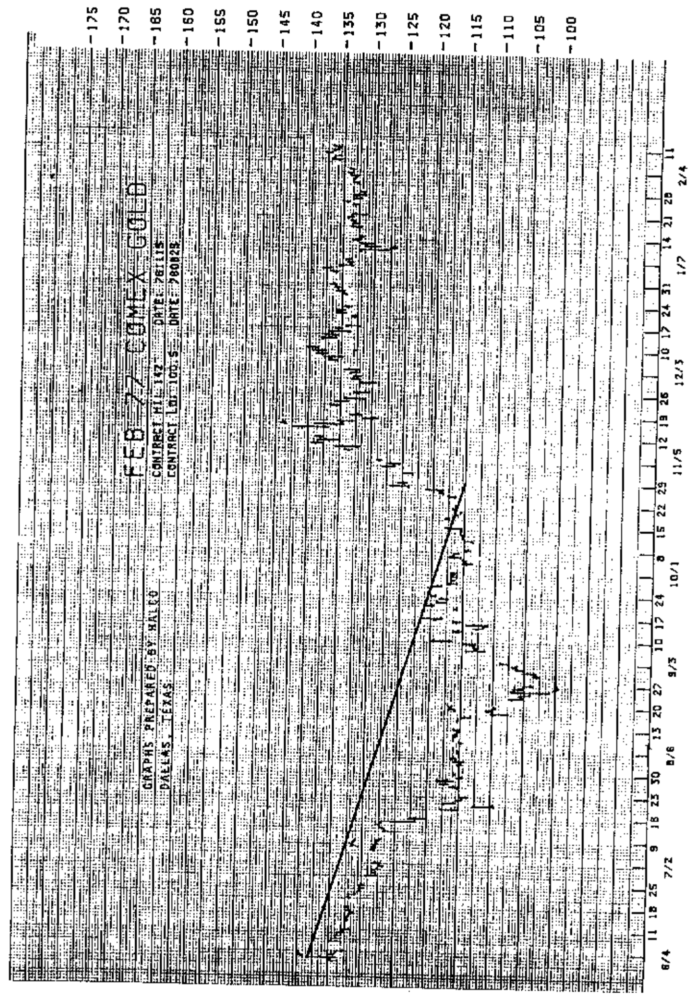
Case History #1 covers the February, 1977 contract from the week of June 4, 1976 through the week of February 11, 1977, a period of 36 weeks. This period of time includes the changeover from the bear market to the bull market on August 25, 1976.

The week of June 4 began with a primary crest which occurred just one week after the primary trough of May 26, 1976 (not shown on chart). Immediately, one should recognize that left-translation was in effect, for a good-sized crest happened within less than two weeks of a primary trough. The price of gold for the February contract at the primary crest was $138.20. Several geocosmic signatures were in effect then, including a cluster of four planetary aspects within two trading days of the crest. Those signatures present were as follows:

Mercury Direct (6/1, Level Two)
Sun oppose Neptune (6/2, Level Three)
Sun waning trine Pluto (5/30, Level Three)
Venus waning trine Pluto (6/3, Level Three)
Post-Saturn direct 10-12 week crest (10th week)
Post-Uranus retrograde 15-18 week trough (16th week)
Post-Mars direct 18-20 week trough (19th week)

As one will note, there were no Level One signatures in effect. Thus, even though a cluster was present, no serious reversal of the bull market was likely. A rally of less than two full weeks could have been expected. The powerful trough the week before satisfied the two trough time windows that were in effect following Mars direct and Uranus retrograde. Sometime before June 18, the 10-12 week post-Saturn direct crest would be due. The only cluster present during that time band happened between May 30 and June 3. The crest appeared close to the middle of this cluster on June 2.

Measuring five to eight weeks past the primary trough of the week of May 28 would signify the next major bottom due date between the weeks of July 2 and July 23. An analysis of post-retrograde or direct planetary time windows reveals that troughs were not due until the week of July 9, so this limits the possibility by one week. A second trough time window entered into effect the following week, and it was most likely that the trough would occur when both were simultaneously in effect, further limiting the probable trough to a time between the weeks of July 16 and July 23. A cluster of three or more (four) planetary aspects occurred between July 11-26, a range covering eleven trading days (midpoint would qualify for an orb of six trading days). Two of these four signatures were Level One types.



The midpoint of this cluster was July 18, a Sunday, while the midpoint of the Level One signatures was July 21-22. The actual trough occurred on Tuesday, July 20. The geocosmic signatures in effect were as follows:

Venus waning square to Uranus (7/17, Level One)
Venus conjunct Saturn (7/19, Level Three)
Uranus direct (7/11, Level Three)
Sun waning square Uranus (7/26, Level One)
5-7 week post-Mercury direct trough (7th week)
25-26 week post-Mars direct trough (26th week)
15-18 week post-Saturn direct crest (16th week)

Again, all the criteria for a major bottom were present. Trough time windows overlapped with one another as well as the expected cycle bottom period, and a midpoint cluster unfolded within this time frame.

The student should note the number of Uranus signatures present during this major trough trading band. As seen before, Uranus tends to correlate with reversals of cycles or breakouts of support or resistance levels, along with rather sudden and volatile movements in gold prices in a short amount of time. During that 15-day period, July 11–26, there were three Uranus signatures. There was also one downward breakout, five gaps in prices, a one-half primary trough and shortly afterwards, a major crest.

How would a knowledgeable student of cycles and geocosmic theories have traded this market? First, one would look for the price, time and geocosmic objective triggers to all be in effect. Going back to the June 2 crest, all the triggers were present. Though it cannot be seen from this chart, the price objective was June 4—18 weeks, and the geocosmic time objective was June 1, give or take two trading days. Thus on June 1, all the triggers were present, and the astute trader prepared to go short just as soon as the market gave a stronger confirmation signal that the crest had indeed been achieved. This came two days later, on June 4, as prices closed below the previous day's low and current day's opening, at $132.60. A sell short order could then be entered, along with a stop-loss order representing 65% of a retractment of the previous primary downswing above the primary trough. Since the previous downswing covered only $13.00, and the primary trough reached about $130.20, then the stop-loss order should be close to $139.00.

Through diligent calculations, the next major bottom is projected for the weeks of July 16 and 23. The more closely expected trough date, through use of geocosmic indices, is defined as July 18-22. Assuming the stop-loss has not been taken out, then the astute trader prepares to close out his position as soon as prices close above a previous day's high and current day's opening, and at a price that represents at least a 15% rally from the low up until that point. On July 21, prices close above the previous day's high but not the current day's opening. That is not accomplished until Monday, July 26, as prices close around $116.00. Since this price represents a greater than 15% rally from the bottom of the primary downswing ($138.20–$109.30), the contract position is closed and a profit of $1660.00 per contract is realized over a period of eight weeks.

Since a bear market was in effect, a short rally within two weeks could be expected. That means a crest would likely be achieved before August 6. This is further confirmed by the presence of the 15-18 week post-Saturn direct crest, which was also due before August 6. Another cluster of three planetary signatures was present between July 26 and August 3, the midpoint being July 30. The geocosmic signatures present around this interval were as follows:

Sun waning square to Uranus (7/26, Level One)
Sun conjunct Saturn (7/29, Level Two)
Sun waning trine to Neptune (8/3, Level Three)
15-18 week post-Saturn direct crest (17th week)

Thus, the time of the expected crest has been limited to the period containing the cluster of aspects, July 26–August 3, with an expectation date of July 30. And since a Level One signature was present July 26, and cycles tend to culminate within three tradings of this, the expectation date could be moved up to the day before, July 29.

Now that the time band has been determined, the next step would be to identify the price objective trigger. The preceding swing down saw a price decline of $28.90. Since it is a bear market, a retractment of at least 35% might be expected, and represents a good level to prepare to re-enter the market selling short. This computes to about $119.40, which was not quite attained July 28, the date of the major crest. Had current contracts been used instead, the retractment would have attained the expected figure.

Even though the price objective trigger was not realized with this contract, both the time and geocosmic objectives were present. It is not uncommon to find the price objective of a rally falling short during a strong bear market. Thus if other strong signals from the market indicate the rally crest is over, one can re-enter by selling short with a reasonable sense of safety.

The next day, July 29, the price of gold took out the previous day's low and closed below its opening. The close that day was $114.70, which is well-below the 15% retractment of the short rally ($109.30–$118.60, 15% retractment from high = $117.70). Thus a short position in the market is entered at $114.70, with a stop-loss also entered at $128.00, which represents a 65% retractment of the previous primary swing above the recent bottom.

The next move is to determine when the next major trough would be due. Counting five to eight weeks past the week of July 23, a time frame of August 23–September 17 is identified. There is one post-retrograde/direct trough time window in effect during this period, the 12–14 week post-Mercury direct trough, August 23–September 10.

There are two clusters of planets present during this time band. The first occurs between August 22 and August 31 and the second between August 30 and September 11. The expected bottom would thus be midway between the second cluster, or about September 5 (actually the 3rd or 6th, since September 5 is a Sunday). However, close attention will be paid to the earlier cluster, too, since it fulfills all the geocosmic criteria as well as cyclical criteria necessary for a major bottom, and it may be that the second cluster correlates with the rally expected to follow closely after. In other words, both clusters contain at least one Level One signature, two or more Level One plus Level Two signatures, plus a post-retrograde/direct time window of the cycle type expected.

Therefore, after the week of August 20, opportunities to close out the short position would be closely watched. On August 25, prices dropped to $100.90, then rallied to close at $107.00, which was higher than the previous day's high, the present day's opening, and represented a greater than 15% retractment of the primary swing down ($118.60 to $100.90, or $103.60). Even though the mid-cycle pause price objective had not been met (about $85.00–$95.00), nor had a valid trendline been penetrated to confirm this as the bottom, it was still the time to exit. The cyclic trough and geocosmic trough time objectives were in effect, and the market spoke with authority.

As it turned out, that indeed was the primary trough. Exiting at this time yielded a profit of $770.00 per contract.

The geocosmic signatures present during this primary trough, which turned out to end the bear market, were as follows:

Neptune direct (8/23, Level One)
Mars waxing in trine to Jupiter (8/26, Level One)
Sun waxing in square to Jupiter (8/22, Level Two)
Mercury conjunct Mars (8/30, Level One)
12-14 week post-Mercury direct trough (12th week)

The midpoint of this cluster was August 26, one day after the actual bottom.

What happened to our September 6 date? Utilizing price retractment concepts, and assuming the bear market was not yet over, a rally to the $115.20–$124.00 range (38.2–61.8% retractment of primary swing down from $138.20 to $100.90) would be anticipated within three weeks, or before September 17. Since no crest time windows were present until September 17–October 1 weeks, the most probable week for a crest would be the 17th. There were numerous signatures present Septemer 9–24, midpoint being September 17, which turned out to be the exact date of a ½ primary crest at $121.60. The September 6 date, or rather September 7 since the sixth was Labor Day, was significant for it correlated with a big gap up in prices leading the market into the price objective range of the expected rally.

At this point in our example, we still do not know that the bear market is over. As prices climb into our price objective realm the week of September 10th, and we enter into the week our rally crest is anticipated (September 17th), we prepare to sell short with a market indicator. On the first trading day of the September 17th week the signal is given. Prices close below the previous day's low and current day's opening, rescind at least 15% of the rally below the crest up to that time (crest was $120.00, 15% below is about $117.00, and close is $115.70). Thus we enter the market selling short at $115.70, expecting the next major (possibly primary) trough to unfold between the weeks of October 1–22, with a stop-loss order in at $124.00 (65% rally from last primary swing).

Checking geocosmic signatures in effect for this period, only one post-retrograde/direct time window is due, the four to six week post-Neptune direct trough, in effect September 20–October 8. This enables us to further limit the date of the expected primary trough to September 27–October 8. During that time frame, there is a cluster of planets present that fits the criteria of a major cycle, even a primary one. It extends from September 24 through October 8. Only one planetary aspect is a Level One, Venus conjunct Uranus, and it occurs on Thursday, September 30. The center of this cluster is October 1, and three trading days from September 30 further narrows the boundary to September 27–October 5. Assume we have settled on October 1 as the expected primary trough date, and decide that our exit effort must begin after closing on Friday, September 24.

Prices start dropping that day from the high of $121.60. A previous day's high is not taken out until October 6, as prices close at $117.20, well above that day's opening. At this point and price we exit at a small loss ($150.00 per contract).

It should be obvious that something is changing. The lowest price in this new swing down only reached $113.60. Thus this trough, which was supposed to be a primary trough, was considerably higher in price than the trough of August 25 (which it turns out was the actual primary trough, and a very early one at that, being only 13 weeks after the last). The $113.60 trough represented a 38% drop from the previous swing up ($100.90 to $121.60), which is a normal retractment level in a strong *bull* market.

A strong confirmation signal appeared when the trendline connecting the primary crest of June 4 and the ½ primary crest of September 17, and a third point the following Tuesday, was penetrated on the upside October 15. That confirmation was even stronger after the trendline was again tested, and then again broken, Monday, October 25, the *ninth* week after the last primary trough. One of the most powerful indicators of the type of market in effect is that which correlates to a definite swing lasting more than eight weeks. For nine successive weeks, each significant trough was higher in price than the last, a very bullish indicator.

In addition, geocosmic indicators of a major trend reversal were present with the major trough of October 4. They were as follows:

Venus conjunct Uranus (9/30, Level One)
Mercury direct (10/1, Level Two)
Sun waxing trine Jupiter (9/24, Level Two)
Sun conjunct Pluto (10/4, Level Three)
Venus waxing square to Saturn (10/8, Level Three)
4-6 week post-Neptune direct trough (6th week)

Now our strategy must shift to fit the new bull market. Assuming all other indicators of a new bull market are in effect, the time to enter (go long) is when prices in the ninth week after the last primary trough take out the high of the eighth week. This occured on Tuesday, October 26, as prices closed at $119.10. This is the point to enter the market long, with the plan to exit close to the next major or primary crest.

The crest, as mentioned, would probably culminate one to two weeks before the next major bottom or approximately three to seven weeks after the last one. The crest is thus due between October 25 and November 26. There are two groups of planetary clusters present here. One is October 30–November 19 and the second is November 12–26. The most intense cluster is actually November 13–18, and consists of parts of both clusters. Level One signatures occur on October 30 (October 27–November 3), November 13 (November 10–17) and November 16 (November 12–19). Thus, the crest would be expected within three trading days of these dates.

In addition, there are a number of post-retrograde/direct time windows in effect, several of which are crests. These include: 15–17 week post-Uranus direct crest (October 18–November 5), 19–22 week post-Pluto direct crest (October 25–November 19) and 7–9 week post-Jupiter retrograde crest (November 1-19). They all overlap the week of November 5, though two of them continue through the week of the 19th.

Therefore we begin looking for a chance to close out our long position beginning the week of November 5. The first day of that week took out the previous Friday's low, but prices rebounded to close higher than they opened. In fact, the market gave no confirming signals along these lines until November 15, when they reached a new high, but then dropped sharply to close below both the opening and the previous day's low. The close of $137.30 was also greater than a 15% retractment of the swing below the high of $142.50, so this was the time and price to exit. Our realized profits were $1820.00 per contract.

Once more, this coincided exactly with the date of the primary crest as well as the midpoint of the planetary cluster. The geocosmic indices present were as follows:

Mars oppose Jupiter (11/16, Level One)
Mercury conjunct Mars (11/13, Level One)
Sun oppose Jupiter (11/18, Level Two)
Sun waxing square Saturn (11/8, Level Two)
19-week post-Pluto direct crest (22nd week)
7-9 week post-Jupiter retrograde crest (9th week)

These same signatures, excluding Sun waxing square to Saturn, were in effect for a double bottom to a major bottom three days later. In addition, the following three other signatures were present:

Sun conjunct Mars (changing, Level Two)
Saturn retrograde (trough, Level One)
Venus waxing square to Pluto (trough, Level Three)

This cluster was in effect November 13–27, the midpoint being November 20, a Saturday. A bottom was realized two days earlier, November 18.

Once again, the market began giving mixed messages. As seen from the graph, the trend turned down for eight weeks. With so many powerful geocosmic signatures in effect at once (seven within only 15 trading days, including three Level One types), a significant reversal might have been anticipated. However, since the previous primary swing up lasted 12 weeks, and was only the first of the new market, an eight-week retractment could be allowed. At least two more primary swings could be expected, and as history revealed in the following months, the price of gold entered into its most glorious performance of all time.

CASE HISTORY #2

This case history involves the June, 1978 contract which extended from a period beginning November 4, 1977 through June 16, 1978. It represents a bull market.

A primary crest the week of November 11 is identified. The geocosmic signatures in effect during a six-trading day time span of this primary crest were as follows:

Sun conjunct Uranus (11/4, Level One)
Mercury waxing trine to Mars (11/14, Level One)
Venus, waxing square to Mars (11/16, Level One)
8–10 week post-Mercury direct crest (8th week)
15–17 week post-Uranus direct crest (16th week)
19–22 week post-Pluto direct crest (20th week)

The midpoint of the geocosmic cluster was November 10, and this was one day from exact of the primary cycle.

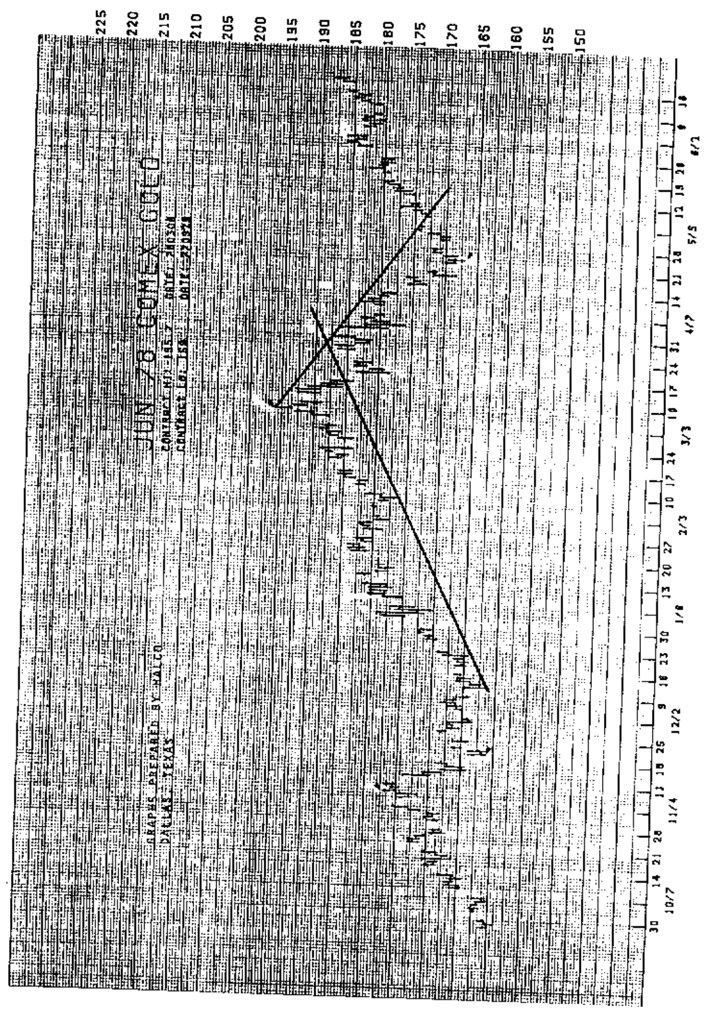
A major bottom would now be due within two weeks (before November 25, and no more than three (before December 2). The fact that there were three Level One signatures present with the crest might make us wary of a major cycle reversal lasting longer than three weeks. But for purposes of illustration, let us cautiously prepare to place an investment into the market now.

The price objective for this trough will be 40-60% of the previous primary swing. That swing does not show up completely on this graph but it was $27.30. Since the crest was about $177.00, our expected price objective for the next trough is $160.60–$166.05.

Our strategy begins by looking for an opportunity to enter the market long, hopefully within the range of one price objective. At the same time, a stop-loss will be entered at a 65% retractment level, or $159.25. Thus, if prices drop further than that, our losses would be minimized, and it would appear that our strategy was wrong.

Our time range objective has been defined cyclically between November 18 and December 2 weeks. A search for trough time windows revealed only one present during this interval: the 13–16 week post-Neptune direct trough, November 25–December 16 weeks. Thus the two only overlap November 25 and December 2 weeks.

Reviewing the geocosmic signatures present before December 2, only one period within the outlined time frame contained a cluster: November 14–22. Those signatures present were:



Mercury waxing trine to Mars (11/14, Level One)
Venus waxing square to Mars (11/16, Level One)
Venus conjunct Uranus (11/20, Level One)
Sun waxing square to Saturn (11/22, Level Two)
8-10 week post-Mercury direct crest (10th week)
13-16 week post-Neptune direct trough (13th week)

Since the Mercury waxing in trine to Mars (November 14) tends to associate with crests, it may be dropped, and there is still the necessary number of signatures present to qualify for a trough. The range can thus be narrowed further to November 16-22, the midpoint being November 19. As that is a Saturday, the likely date is either Friday, November 18 or Monday, November 21. An orb of two trading days limits the likely trough date to November 17-22, which covers the midpoint dates just computed.

With this information, then, we will prepare to enter the market long sometime during the weeks of November 25 and December 2, probably early in the period since a planetary cluster midpoint is due before November 22.

The first date beginning with that week in which prices close above a previous day's high and its current day's opening is not attained until Monday, December 5, when prices closed at $166.00. Our actual bottom, which turned out to be a primary trough, was realized on Monday, November 21, just as calculated. But the market gave no confirming signal until two weeks later, and that is when we must wait to enter. Thus a contract (long) is purchased on December 5 at $166.00, and a stop-loss is entered at $159.25.

Our next step is to outline a period for the next probable major crest. With cycles theories understood, this is expected three to seven weeks later, or between December 12 and January 13, 1978. A search is undertaken to locate a period of time in which post-retrograde or direct planetary crest time windows are in effect. Clusters of three or more geocosmic signatures within a 12-day trading period, with at least one Level One type present, are also sought.

Two such planetary clusters are present within the period we have outlined. One is right around December 12, December 11-13 in fact, as four extremely powerful signatures happen at once. This is only three weeks after the primary trough and only five weeks since the last crest. Could another major crest happen so soon?

A review of post-retrograde and direct planetary time windows reveals that it is the first week of a 7-9 week post-Jupiter retrograde crest period, and the second week of a 10-12 week post-Mercury direct trough. There was not a trough the week before, so one is due either this or next week. Thus, we prepare for the possibility of a crest around December 12.

As can be seen from the graph, no crest emerged. Instead, there was a double bottom formed to the primary trough of three weeks earlier. Since prices still did not go below our stop-loss of $159.25, we are still in the market.

Because it was a double bottom to a primary trough, and prices held at the $160.00 support level, a new crest time period has to be considered three to seven weeks out from the week of December 16. This brings us to January 3-February 3, 1978.

The search is now underway for another cluster of signatures during this new time frame. One such cluster exists between December 31 and January 10, but there are no Level One types present, nor any crest time windows. Interestingly enough, there was a sizable trading top on January 4, right at the midpoint of that cluster.

Another cluster is present January 19-22, which is a very narrow orb, and as explained earlier, will have to include a three-day trading range either side. Nevertheless, a cluster is a cluster and one of the first geocosmic criteria is satisfied. This actually covers two trading weeks, January 20 and January 27. During those weeks, there was a 12-13 week post-Jupiter retrograde crest due. Thus, our expected crest date is Friday, January 20, or Monday, January 23, since the cluster midpoint is on a Saturday.

Though it cannot be seen on this graph, the mid-cycle pause price objective computes to the $181.50-$191.50 range. The combination of cycles and geocosmic time objectives brings us to the weeks of January 20 and 27, with an anticipated center of January 20 or 23. Thus, starting on Monday, January 16, we begin looking for the market to communicate its own sell signal. This came on Wednesday, January 18, as the day's close took out Tuesday's low and Wednesday's opening. It was also at a price ($177.50) well below a 15% retractment of the whole swing up. Our profit is thus $1150.00 per contract over six weeks.

Now here is an example where the more speculative-minded investor would have fared better. Instead of exiting on the day that the previous day's low was taken out, one could have used the method whereby the day's close had to take out the previous *week's low*. This did not occur until Monday, January 30, when prices closed at $179.50. Following this strategy would have yielded an additional $200.00 per contract over an additional 12 days.

The actual crest in this example occured on Wednesday, January 25, at $184.00, only two days later than our projected crest of January 23, a date when prices reached $183.50.

The geocosmic signatures in effect were as follows:

Venus oppose Mars (1/22, Level One)
Sun oppose Mars (1/22, Level Two)
Pluto retrograde (1/19, Level Two)
12-13 week post-Jupiter retrograde crest (13th week)
7-9 week post-Saturn retrograde trough (7th week)
20-23 week post-Neptune direct trough (22nd week)

Now, we look for the next buying opportunity. This should come within two trading weeks, or before February 10, and no later than the third week of February 17, as the secondary reaction is due. Our price objective is $170.00-$175.00, and we will consider a price of $176.00 as a trigger to prepare to enter.

We already know from the prior analysis that two trough time windows are in effect before February 10. A third one is in effect between the weeks of February 3-17 (the 5-7 week post-Mercury direct trough). All three overlap February 3 week, and two overlap February 10 week. There is a large cluster of signatures in effect February 2-16, the midpoint being February 9. These include:

Sun waxing in square to Uranus (2/5, Level One)
Venus waxing in square to Uranus (2/2, Level One)
Venus waxing trine to Pluto (2/2, Level Three)
Mercury oppose Mars (2/2, Level Three)
Venus oppose Saturn (2/11, Level Three)
Sun waxing trine to Pluto (2/5, Level Three)
Sun waning trine to Jupiter (2/15, Level Two)
Sun oppose Saturn (2/16, Level Two)

With the midpoint of three Level One signatures being February 3, and three trough time windows due that week, we would look for a point to enter beginning Monday, January 30, particularly if our $176.00 price objective is realized. On Tuesday of that week, the close took out the previous day's high and current day's opening, but only by 20¢. This could be considered a point to enter the market long, at $181.70. The lowest price in the downswing was only $178.60, still outside of our price objective, and still pre-mature in reaching the geocosmic time objective. If the bottom is to occur within three trading days of a Level One signature, and three of them are due February 2-5, then a date that includes all three is not in effect until at least the next day, Wednesday, February 1. Therefore the more conservative investor might enter now, whereas a more speculative-minded investor would wait a little longer, in anticipation that prices would fall further, to satisfy either or both the price and geocosmic time objectives.

The latter strategy paid off in this example, for closing prices did not take out the previous day's high and current day's opening again until Monday, February 6, at $180.00. At either date of entry, a stop-loss order of $170.00 should be entered, which represents a retractment of over 65%. Our strategy could be wrong should that price be realized. For purposes of study, the actual trough was achieved February 9, right on the cluster midpoint date, at $176.10.

The next step is to identify the next major crest time and price triggers, and sometime after those objectives have been met, to close out our current long position. The mid-cycle pause price objective range would be about $194.50-$202.50. This is calculated by taking the midpoint of the last secondary reaction swing, which was about $180.00 (midpoint of crest at $184.00 and trough at $176.10). Then, adding the difference between this midpoint and the trough which began the last primary upswing ($180.00 - $161.50 = $18.50) to this same midpoint, gives us the MCP (abbreviation for mid-cycle pause price objective). Thus, $180.00 + $18.50 = $198.50, the MCP. 10% of the difference between the MCP ($198.50) and the beginning of last primary swing ($161.50) is an appropriate price orb to give, though in this book we prefer to give a little more, since MCP objectives do not seem to be met as frequently as rally and secondary reaction price objectives.

The cycles time objective is three to seven weeks following the February 10 week trough, which brings us to the weeks of March 3-31. During that time frame, there are three planetary crest time windows. All three overlap the week of March 10, hence this becomes the most likely week for a major or greater crest to occur. However, we should also consider possible any weeks where two of these might overlap, which in this case includes March 3 and 17.

Within these three trading weeks, a number of geocosmic signatures are present, including numerous Level One types. Limiting our midpoint calculations to an orb of 12 trading days, seven signatures occur between February 26-March 14, the midpoint being March 6. Level One types were present February 26, March 2, 3, 6, and 7. A date that is within three trading days of each is March 2. However, if the first Level One signature is removed, then any date between March 2-7 will include all the others within three days, and thus the March 6 cluster midpoint looks solid. Besides, it falls during the March 10 week, the most probable crest time window indicator.

With all of these considerations then, we will begin looking for the market to communicate an exit date the week of March 10. To be safe, though, we will watch closely beginning the week before.

The market's first confirmation-probability signal came on Thursday, March 9, as prices closed lower than they opened, and also below the previous day's close. The closing price of $191.00 was more than 15% below the primary swing's highest point ($196.00), which was within our MCP range. The date of this highest point was March 8, within two trading days of our calculated crest. Thus all the objectives were met, and this was the time to sell. Our profits over the four-week period were $1100.00 per contract.

For purposes of study, the following geocosmic signatures were present within six trading days of the March 8 primary crest:

Venus waning trine to Uranus (2/26, Level One)
Mars direct (3/2, Level One)
Mercury waxing trine to Mars (3/6, Level One)
Sun waxing trine to Uranus (3/7, Level One)
Venus waxing trine to Mars (3/3, Level One)
Sun waxing square to Neptune (3/9, Level Three)
Sun waxing trine to Mars (3/14, Level Two)
8-10 week post-Mercury direct crest (10th week)
12-14 week post-Saturn retrograde crest (13th week)
3-5 week post-Uranus retrograde crest (3rd week)

Now, with the extreme number of geocosmic signatures present, and especially the abundance of Level One types, we should be very wary of a longer than usual retractment. In addition, it has been fifteen weeks since the last primary trough, and thus another is due, probably within the next seven weeks, and possibly within only three weeks if it is indeed a strong bull market. It is likely to be steeper than the previous two troughs or at least represent more than a 45% retractment level. Especially important to note is the fact that Mars went direct, a powerful indicator of a high or low point in gold prices for quite some time.

At this point, then, our strategy could be to sell short, with the expectation of exiting the market possibly as early as the next week, but maybe even as long as four to seven weeks later. It is doubtful that the bull market would be completely over since there has not been a multiple of three good primary swings. But it is possible that the market is now readying itself for some kind of major reversal.

As one can see from the end of our graph, this was indeed what happened. Prices dropped for two weeks, reaching the expected major trough on March 20. A cluster of geocosmic signatures was present March 14-22, including one Level One type, giving a midpoint date of March 18. Since this was Saturday, the actual trough would have been expected on

Friday, March 17, or Monday, March 20. In addition, both a 12-14 week post-Mercury direct and 15-17 week post-Saturn retrograde trough time window began that week.

Having sold short at the same time and price ($191.00) we closed out our previous long position, we would now look for a chance to exit from this short position. The market's signal came two days after the major trough as prices closed at $183.00, taking out the previous day's high and the current day's opening. It also exceeded a 15% retractment above the trough of $175.80. Our profits in nine trading days was thus $800.00 per contract.

Now a couple of very important signals should be given attention. A trendline connecting the last major trough the week of February 10 to the double bottom of the primary trough the week of December 16, 1977, was penetrated March 17. This is a powerful signal that the primary crest has not only been achieved, but that a major reversal may be unfolding. Given this signal, plus the strong geocosmic indicators of a major reversal surrounding the last primary crest of March 10 week, plus the understanding that a primary trough could still yet happen and take prices down even further, our strategy should now be to wait and see if the market gives any other strong signals as to what it is going to do.

The rally the next week, March 31, failed to exceed the primary crest of March 10. In fact, it failed to return to the aforementioned trendline boundaries. The retractment fell within the normal 40-60% level, a bearish indicator.

The next week, prices took out the low of the March 24 trough. Again, that same week, a rally failed to reach prices of the March 31 rally crest. And finally, prices descended all the way to $167.00 the week of April 28, defining the primary trough.

Since prices at this primary trough did not go below those of the last primary trough, and since this reversal did not exceed eight weeks, and since prices of successive weeks afterwards failed to take out the lows of the former week, the bull market was still intact.

For purposes of study, the geocosmic signatures present with the primary trough of April 25 are given below. Notice that the planetary criteria for another major reversal (up) were present, and from the graph, that a good four-point trendline was penetrated the week of May 12, the ninth week after the downswing began, thus taking out the highs of the eighth week.

Saturn direct (changing, Level One)
Mercury direct (changing, Level Two)
Sun waning square Saturn (trough, Level Two)
Venus waning square Saturn (trough, Level Three)

8-10 week post-Mars direct crest (8th week)
10-12 week post-Jupiter direct crest (10th week)
8-10 week post-Uranus retrograde trough (10th week)
4-6 week post-Neptune retrograde trough (5th week)
13-15 week post-Pluto retrograde trough (14th week)

This, then concludes the practical study of case histories. It is hoped that these two examples served the purpose of facilitating greater understanding in the effort to integrate geocosmic principles with those of cycles' theories and technical analyses.

PART FIVE

APPENDIX

APPENDIX A

UPDATE: MAY 28, 1982-SEPTEMBER 21, 1982

The greater body of this book involved research which ended May 28, 1982. Approximately four months have elapsed between then and the time the manuscript finally went to press. During those four months, several signatures listed in this work have unfolded, and in the interest of updating the entire study, this section is being written.

The following cycles in gold prices, and their relationship to geocosmic signatures, have arisen between May 28, 1982 and September 21, 1982:

#1 Mercury Retrograde
9/19/82 TB**(0) PT(-8) Steep secondary reaction

#2 Mercury Direct
6/13/82 MT(-5) PB(+6) Middle of sharp drop from MT to PB

Eight to Ten Week Post-Mercury Direct Crest
+BO (10th week) MB (9th week)

12-14 Week Post-Mercury Direct Trough
TB** (12th week) PT (13th week)

#4 Venus Direct Time Windows
16-20 Week Post-Venus Direct Trough
PB (19th week) MT (17th week)
(This cycle was not confirmed before, but now is)

#6 Mars Direct Time Windows
(Due to lack of many samples, none of these were confirmed before. However, this last Mars retrograde has shed light on the presence of most of them, and the non-significance of others, as follows:)

One to Two Week Post-Mars Direct Crest
TT*
(1st week)
This time window is likely insignificant, except in so much as once again, no trough cycles were present.

Five to Eight Week Post-Mars Direct Trough
PB TT**
(6th week) (7th week)
This time window appears to be quite powerful now, and there is evidence that it may be shortened to five-six weeks

Eight to Ten Week Post-Mars Direct Crest
½PT
(10th week)
This time window now appears to be significant.

13-14 Week Post-Mars Direct Crest
+BO MB
(14th week) (13th week)
This too appears to be a significant time window now.

15-Week Post-Mars Direct Trough
TB** TT**
(16th week) (15th week)
It appears that this might be a significant trough time window if extended to the *16th week.*

18-20 Week Post-Mars Direct Trough
MB
(19th week)
This insert in being written in the 19th week, and the criteria for a major bottom have been met, suggesting this to be a valid trough time window of great power.

#8 Jupiter Direct
6/27/82 TT**(+3) PB(-5) First rally top after PB; major trend reversal

One to Three Week Post Jupiter Direct Powerful
½PT (4th week)
TT** (1st week)

10-12 Week Post-Jupiter Direct Trough
PT TB**
(11th week) (10th week)

#10 Saturn Direct
6/18/82 PB(+1) TT**(+8) End of sharp 10-day drop, major trend reversal and possible end to bear market

Seven To Nine Week Post-Saturn Direct Trough
MB +BO
(8th week) (9th week)

10-12 Week Post-Saturn Direct Crest
PT TB**
(12th week) (11th week)

#11 Post-Uranus Retrograde Time Windows
15-18 Week Post-Uranus Retrograde Trough
PB TT**
(15th week) (16th week)

#12 Uranus Direct
8/9/82 MB(+2) +BO(+8) End of 3-week drop, then sharp reversal and breakout upwards in 8 days

One To Three Post-Uranus Direct Powerful Cycle
+BO TB**
(1st week) (3rd week)

Three To Four Week Post-Uranus Direct Crest
PT TB**
(4th week) (3rd week)

#13 Post-Neptune Retrograde Time Windows
18-21 Week Post-Neptune Retrograde Crest
+BO MB
(20th week) (19th week)

Neptune Direct
9/5/82 PT(+2) TB**-5) End of sharp 4-week upswing
(This signature was not considered significant in prior instances but perhaps it should be in the future)

#15 Pluto Direct
7/4/82 TB*(+2) TT**(-3) End of short trading trough, then steep rise (explosion up) next 3 weeks

Five To Seven Week Post-Pluto Direct Trough
MB +BO
(6th week) (7th week)

Six To Eight Week Post-Pluto Direct Crest
+BO MB
(7th week) (6th week)

#16 SUN/MARS WANING SQUARE
7/9/82 TB*(-2) ½PT(+8) Reversed trough cycle, sharp rise next 8 days and next 9 weeks

#17 SUN/JUPITER WANING TRINE
6/21/82 PB(0) TT**(+7) End of steep trough, and possibly end of bear market; major trend reversal

WANING SQUARE
7/24/82 ½PT(-3) PB**(+4) — End of sharp 4-week rise, minor reversal down down next 3 weeks

#18 SUN/SATURN WANING SQUARE
7/8/82 TB*(-1) TT**(+3) ½PT(+9) — Sharp swing up next 2 weeks

#19 SUN/URANUS WANING TRINE
7/23/82 ½PT(-2) TB**(+4) — End of sharp 4-week rise; minor reversal down next 3 weeks

WANING SQUARE
8/23/82 +BO(-2) TT**(+3) MB(-8) — Dramatic rise begin 8 days before, then short correction, then rise continued next week.

#20 SUN/NEPTUNE OPPOSITION
6/17/82 PB(+2) MT(-8) — End of bear market, major trend reversal up next 4 weeks

WANING TRINE
8/17/82 +BO(+2) MB(-4) — Sharp 3-week rise began day after

WANING SQUARE
9/17/82 TB**(+1) PT(-8) — Sharp secondary reaction

#21 SUN/PLUTO WANING SQUARE
7/16/82 ½PT(+3) — End of 4-week sharp rise; minor reversal down next 3 weeks

#22 MERCURY/MARS WANING SQUARE
7/20/82 ½PT(+1) TB**(+7) — End of sharp 4-week rise; minor reversal down next 3 weeks

#23 VENUS/MARS WANING TRINE
7/9/82 TB**(-2) TT**(+2) ½PT(+8) — Sharp swing up began 2 days before, lasted next 2 weeks

WANING SQUARE
8/24/82 +BO(-3) TT**(+2) TB**(+4) — End of first leg of dramatic swing up including +BO 3 days before

#24 VENUS/SATURN WANING SQUARE
8/3/82 TT*(-1) MB(+6) — End of short rally before completing entire secondary reaction in 6 days

#25 VENUS/URANUS WANING TRINE
8/14/82 MB(-3) +BO(+4) — Reversal of cycle, dramatic 4-week rise began in 3 days

WANING SQUARE
9/8/82 PT(0) TB*(-6) — End of 1st 11-week primary bull swing; sharp reversal down began

#26 VENUS/PLUTO WANING TRINE
7/15/82 TT**(-2) ½PT(+4) — End of 1st rally after bear market ended; 3-week correction followed

WANING SQUARE
8/9/82 MB(+2) +BO(+8) — End of secondary reaction, sharp upward breakout next week

#27 MARS/JUPITER CONJUNCTION
8/8/82 MB(+3) +BO(+9) — End of secondary reaction, sharp upward breakout began next week

#28 MARS/SATURN CONJUNCTION
7/7/82 TB*(0) TT**(-4) — End of short secondary reaction, sharp rise next 2 weeks

#29 MARS/URANUS CONJUNCTION
9/22/82 TB**(-1) PT(-9) — Sharp secondary reaction going on as this book goes to press

#30 MARS/PLUTO CONJUNCTION
7/23/82 ½PT(-2) TB**(+4) — End of 1st leg of new bull swing; minor 3-week reversal down followed

As one can see, nearly every one of the research signatures continued to correlate in same manner as described in the book. Thus the relative consistency level of each will increase from that calculated in the book, with the exception of the *One-Two Week Post-Mars Direct Crest* (which is now considered insignificant) and the *15-Week Post-Mars Direct Trough* (which is now considered a *15-16 week* cycle).

APPENDIX B

FUTURE GEOCOSMIC SIGNATURES

On the following pages are lists of dates from mid-1982 through late 1986 in which geocosmic signatures that possibly correlate to gold price cycles are in effect. Next to each signature is a number corresponding to the order of its listing in this book.

#1 Mercury Retrograde
9/19/82
1/7/83
5/1/83
9/2/83
12/22/83
4/11/84
8/14/84
12/4/84
3/24/85
7/28/85
11/18/85
3/7/86
7/9/86
11/2/86

#2 Mercury Direct
10/11/82
1/27/83
5/25/83
9/24/83
1/11/84
5/5/84
9/7/84
12/24/84
4/17/85
8/20/85
12/8/85
3/30/86
8/3/86
11/26/86

#3 Venus Retrograde
8/3/83
3/13/85
10/15/86

#4 Venus Direct
9/15/83
4/25/85
11/26/86

#5 Mars Retrograde
4/5/84
6/8/86

#6 Mars Direct
6/19/84
8/3/86

#7 Jupiter Retrograde
3/27/83
4/29/84
6/4/85
7/12/86

#8 Jupiter Direct
7/29/83
8/29/84
10/3/85
11/8/86

#9 Saturn Retrograde
2/12/83
2/24/84
3/7/85
3/19/86

#10 Saturn Direct
7/1/83
7/13/84
7/25/85
8/7/86

#11 Uranus Retrograde
3/14/83
3/18/84
3/22/85
3/27/86

#12 Uranus Direct
8/14/83
8/18/84
8/23/85
8/27/86

#13 Neptune Retrograde
4/1/83
4/2/84
4/4/85
4/7/86

Neptune Direct
9/8/83
9/9/84
9/12/85
9/14/86

#14 Pluto Retrograde
2/1/83
2/4/84
2/6/85
2/8/86

#15 Pluto Direct
7/7/83
7/9/84
7/12/85
7/15/86

#16 SUN/MARS

<u>Conjunction</u>
6/3/83
7/23/85

<u>Waxing Trine</u>
3/16/84
5/8/86

<u>Waning Trine</u>
7/5/84
9/9/86

<u>Waxing Square</u>
1/30/84
3/12/86

<u>Opposition</u>
5/11/84
7/10/86

<u>Waning Square</u>
8/29/84
11/15/86

#17 SUN/JUPITER

Conjunction
11/13/82
12/14/83
1/14/85
2/18/86

Waxing Trine
4/1/83
5/3/84
6/7/85
7/15/86

Waning Trine
6/22/82
7/24/83
7/26/84
9/30/85
11/5/86

Waxing Square
2/28/83
4/1/84
5/6/85
6/12/86

Opposition
5/28/83
6/29/84
8/4/85
9/10/86

Waning Square
7/24/82
8/26/83
9/27/84
10/31/85
12/6/86

#18 SUN/SATURN

Conjunction
10/19/82
10/31/83
11/11/84
11/22/85
12/4/86

Opposition
4/21/83
5/3/84
5/15/85
5/28/86

Waxing Square
1/24/83
2/5/84
2/16/85
2/28/86

Waning Square
7/21/83
8/2/84
8/14/85
8/27/86

#19 SUN/URANUS

Conjunction
11/27/82
12/2/83
12/5/84
12/10/85
12/14/86

Waxing Trine
3/30/83
4/3/84
4/7/85
4/12/86

Waxing Square
2/28/83
3/3/84
3/8/85
3/13/86

Opposition
5/29/83
6/1/84
6/6/85
6/11/86

Waning Trine
7/23/82
7/28/83
8/1/84
8/6/85
8/11/86

Waning Square
8/24/82
8/29/83
9/1/84
9/6/85
9/11/86

#20 SUN/NEPTUNE

Conjunction
12/18/82
12/21/83
12/22/84
12/25/85
12/27/86

Waxing Trine
4/19/83
4/21/84
4/23/85
4/26/86

Waning Trine
8/17/82
8/20/83
8/21/84
8/23/85
8/26/86

Waxing Square
3/20/83
3/21/84
3/24/85
3/26/86

Opposition
6/19/83
6/21/84
6/23/85
6/26/86

Waning Square
9/17/82
9/20/83
9/21/84
9/23/85
9/26/86

#21 SUN/PLUTO

Conjunction
10/20/82
10/23/83
10/25/84
10/27/85
10/31/86

Waxing Trine
2/18/83
2/21/84
2/23/85
2/26/86

Waning Trine
6/15/82
6/18/83
6/20/84
6/23/85
6/26/86

Waxing Square
1/20/83
1/23/84
1/24/85
1/27/86

Opposition
4/18/83
4/20/84
4/23/85
4/26/86

Waning Square
7/17/82
7/19/83
7/21/84
7/24/85
7/27/86

#22 MERCURY/MARS

Conjunction
4/9/83
5/8/83
7/2/83
6/15/85
8/16/85
9/4/85

Waxing Trine
3/12/84
5/17/86

Waning Trine
6/14/82
6/27/84
9/7/86

Waxing Square
2/20/84
2/15/86
3/17/86
4/27/86

Opposition
5/29/84
6/19/86

Waning Square
7/20/82
7/16/84
10/1/86
11/12/86
12/22/86

#23 VENUS/MARS

Conjunction
2/19/83
9/19/83
10/26/83
1/31/85
2/27/85
10/4/85

Waxing Trine
4/6/84
4/5/86

Waning Trine
6/29/84
7/24/86
12/5/86

Waxing Square
3/10/84
2/22/86

Opposition
5/17/84
6/9/86

Waning Square
8/1/84
8/19/86
11/2/86

#24 VENUS/SATURN

Conjunction
10/22/82
12/17/83
10/8/84
12/5/85

Opposition
3/22/83
5/12/84
6/28/85
5/3/86

Waxing Square
1/8/83
3/3/84
12/30/84
2/20/86

Waning Square
8/4/82
6/4/83
7/22/84
9/16/85
7/14/86

#25 VENUS/URANUS

Conjunction
11/22/82
1/10/84
10/29/84
12/18/85

Waxing Trine
3/2/83
4/18/84
2/25/85
3/28/85
5/21/86
3/27/86

Waning Trine
8/14/82
6/12/83
7/22/84
9/9/85
6/19/86

Waxing Square
2/5/83
3/25/84
1/19/85
2/20/86

Opposition
4/20/83
6/4/84
7/19/85
5/14/86

Waning Square
9/8/82
7/19/83
8/19/83
10/15/83
8/15/84
10/4/85
7/14/86

#26 VENUS/PLUTO

Conjunction
10/23/82
12/7/83
9/26/84
11/13/85
9/14/86
11/14/86
12/10/86

Waxing Trine
1/29/83
3/15/84
1/8/85
2/19/86

Waning Trine
7/15/82
5/7/83
6/19/84
8/4/85
5/25/86

Waxing Square
1/5/83
2/21/84
12/12/84
1/26/86

Opposition
3/18/83
5/2/84
6/8/85
4/7/86

Waning Square
8/9/82
6/3/83
7/13/84
8/30/85
6/19/86

#27 MARS/JUPITER

Conjunction
8/8/82
10/14/84
12/18/86

Waxing Trine
3/10/83
5/20/85

Waning Trine
8/16/83
11/11/85

Waxing Square
1/24/83
3/29/85

Opposition
5/25/83
8/11/85

Waning Square
10/14/83
1/21/86

#28 MARS/SATURN

Conjunction
7/7/82
2/14/84
2/17/86

Opposition
4/8/83
4/21/85

Waxing Square
12/11/82
12/16/84
12/15/86

Waning Square
8/12/83
8/29/85

#29 MARS/URANUS

Conjunction
9/22/82
9/3/84
3/13/86

Waxing Trine
3/8/83
2/26/85

Waning Trine
8/21/83
8/15/85

Waxing Square
1/28/83
1/15/85
12/30/86

Opposition
5/27/83
5/20/85

Waning Square
10/10/83
10/3/85

#30 MARS/PLUTO

Conjunction
7/24/82
1/15/84
12/25/85

Waxing Trine
1/16/83
12/31/84
12/8/86

Waning Trine
6/24/83
6/12/85

Waxing Square
12/8/82
11/19/84
10/20/86

Opposition
4/3/83
3/21/85

Waning Square
8/9/83
7/28/85

#31 JUPITER/SATURN

Waxing Square
4/2/86

#32 JUPITER/URANUS

Conjunct
3/18/83
5/14/83
9/25/83

Waxing Square
6/4/86
9/6/86
2/12/87

#33 JUPITER/NEPTUNE

Conjunction
1/19/84

JUPITER/PLUTO

Waxing Square
2/27/85

SATURN/PLUTO

Conjunction
11/8/82

APPENDIX C

FOLLOW UP

There are several suggestions as to where one may go from here. The first suggestion is to review and practice the methods outlined in this book until you are very familiar with them. Towards this end, it would be helpful to order copies of the charts which appear in this book, or the HAL Blue Book. Either may be ordered through M.M.A., which will be explained shortly.

Secondly, start tracking gold prices of several contracts on the COMEX. It is suggested that you track both daily as well as weekly, and even monthly, prices. On these graphs, freely mark planetary aspects, and try to locate clusters within cyclic time bands of expected troughs or crests.

Thirdly, subscribe to market letters that analyze gold prices. This will help you to develop a "feel," an intuition, for gold cycles. Our own market report, M.M.A., utilizes all and more of the concepts introduced in this book.

Another suggestion is to attend seminars on cycles studies, particularly as they relate to financial markets. Information on such seminars may be obtained through M.M.A.

The following is a list of recommended newsletter services, books, and supplies available for your consideration.

Recommended Newsletter Services

1. **The Merriman Market Analyst (M.M.A.)**, P.O. Box 1074, Birmingham, Michigan, 48012. Issued 17 times per year. Analyzes stock market, gold and silver, and interest rate trends, as well as frequent reports on pertinent global matters and their likely implications upon financial markets. Written by Raymond A. Merriman. *Price: $150.00/yr., $60.00/4 mth., trial issue free with self-addressed, stamped envelope*
2. **HAL Commodities Cycles**, HALCO, 16816 Dallas Parkway, Dallas, Texas 75248. Issued weekly, includes hot line daily service. Analyzes trends in all futures' markets, and includes frequent special articles on such matters as weather forecasts. *Written by Walter Bressert. Price: $475.00/yr., $150.00/3 mth.*
3. **The Aden Analysis**, Adam Smith Publishing Co., 4425 W. Napoleon Ave., Metairie, LA. 70001. Issued monthly. Includes special articles and update reports from the Aden sisters. Analyzes stock and futures' market trends, interest rates, U.S. Bonds, Currencies, and other economic indicators. *Price*: $250.00 per year.

Books And Supplies

Any of the following can be ordered directly through M.M.A. (PPD—postage price included).

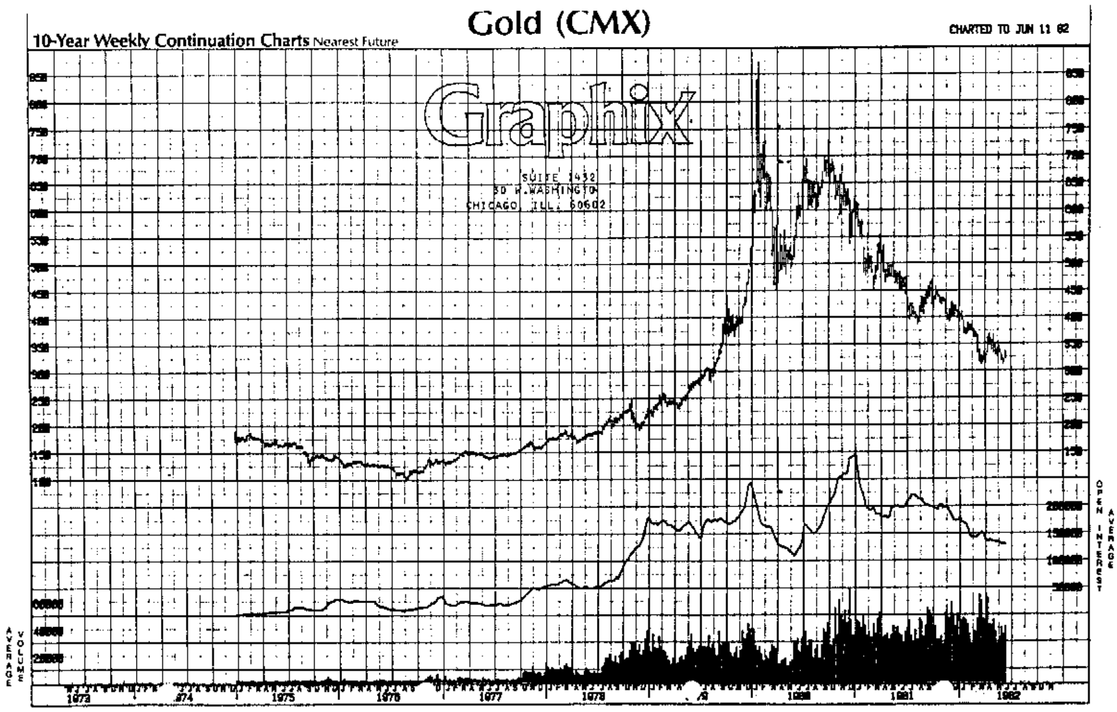
1. **The HAL BLUE BOOK** by Walter Bressert and James Jones
   $50.00 PPD: $52.00
2. **YEARLY FORECASTS BOOK** by Raymond A. Merriman
   $7.00 PPD: $7.50
3. **THE AMERICAN EPHEMERIS FOR THE TWENTIETH CENTURY: MIDNIGHT** by Neil Michelsen.
   $15.95 PPD: $16.95
4. **Blank graph paper** for charting daily prices. covers 19 weeks, 8½" × 14". Pad of 25.
   $7.50 PPD: $8.00
5. **Blank graph paper** for charting daily or weekly prices of four different commodities, as used in M.M.A. Reports. Covers 21 weeks on a daily basis, or 147 weeks on a weekly basis. 11" × 17", 14 squares per inch. Set of 10.
   $15.00 PPD: $16.00

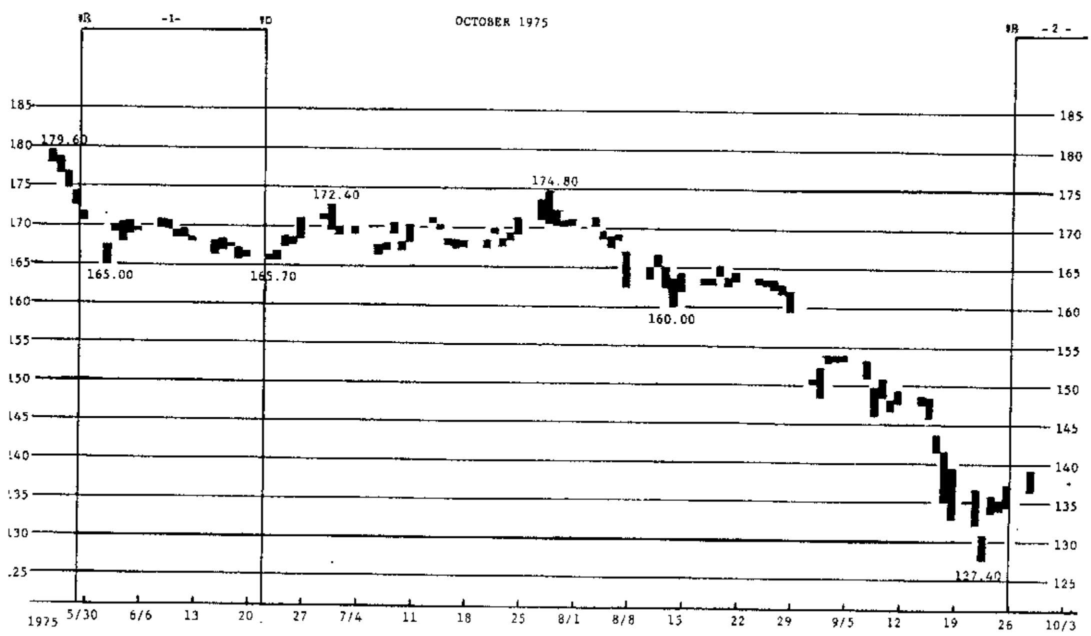
6. **Gold prices charts,** 5/26/75–9/24/82, as they appear in this book. 23 per set, available in either 8½" × 11", or 8½" × 14". Specify which.
   $25.00 PPD: $26.00 -for entire set #1–23
   $ 2.00 PPD: $ 2.50 -individually (future graphs available every 19 weeks)
7. **Gold price charts,** 5/26/75–9/24/82, as they appear in this book, *with markings of geocosmic signatures plus cycle types in effect.* Ideal for research. Available in either 8½" × 11" or 8½" × 14". Specify which. 23 per set.
   $75.00 PPD: $76.00 -for entire set #1–23
   $ 4.00 PPD: $ 4.50 -individual chart (future ones available every 19 weeks).

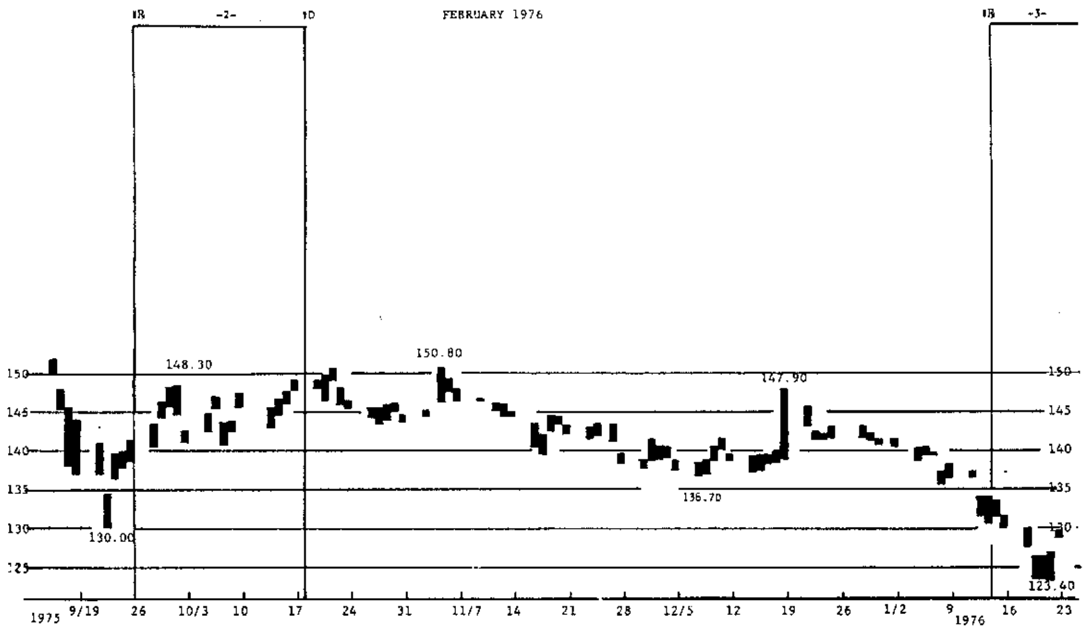
APPENDIX D

WEEKLY AND DAILY GRAPHS OF GOLD PRICES

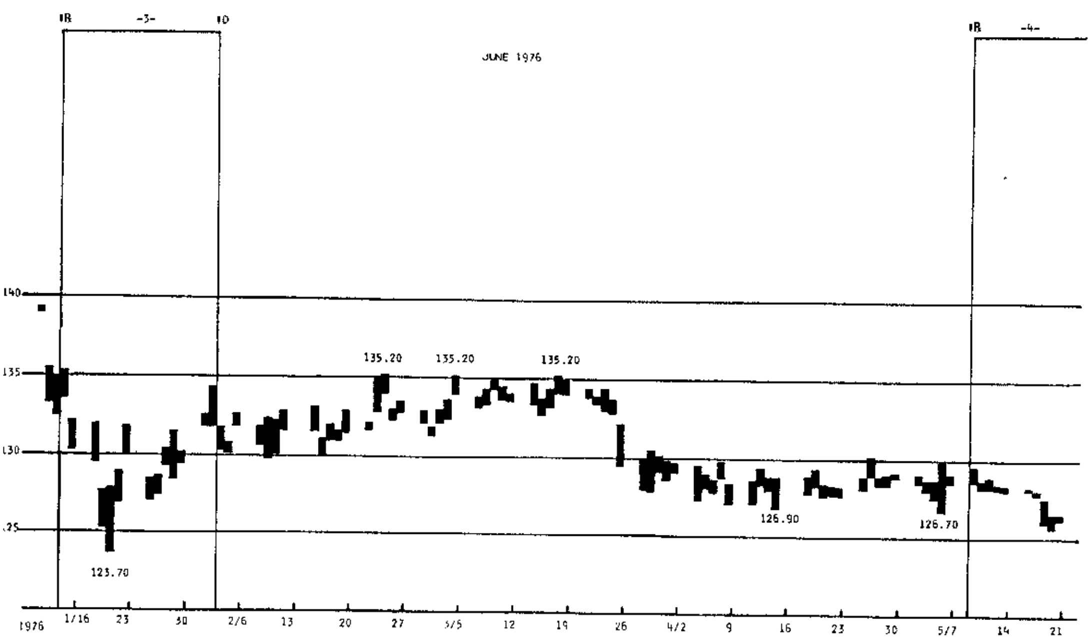
On the following pages are charts depicting the weekly and daily prices of gold. The weekly graph covers a period between 1975 and 1982. The daily graphs cover the period May 26, 1975 through September 24, 1982. The daily graphs are the basis for the results written in this book.


10-Year Weekly Continuation Charts Nearest Future
Gold (CMX)
CHARTED TO JUN 11 82
Graphix
SUITE 1432
30 W. WASHINGTON
CHICAGO, ILL. 60602
OPEN INTEREST AVERAGE
AVERAGE VOLUME
1973
1975
1976
1977
1978
1980
1981
1982

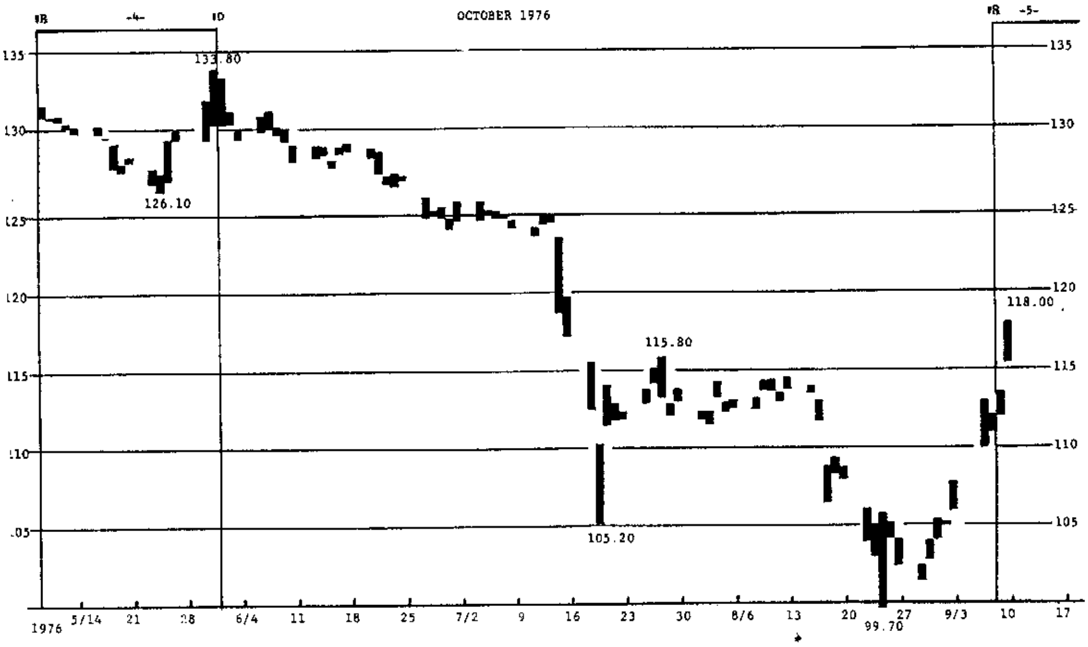

OCTOBER 1975
-1-
- 2 -
179.60
165.00
165.70
172.40
174.80
160.00
127.40
185
180
175
170
165
160
155
150
145
140
135
130
125
1975 5/30
6/6
13
20
27
7/4
11
18
25
8/1
8/8
15
22
29
9/5
12
19
26
10/3

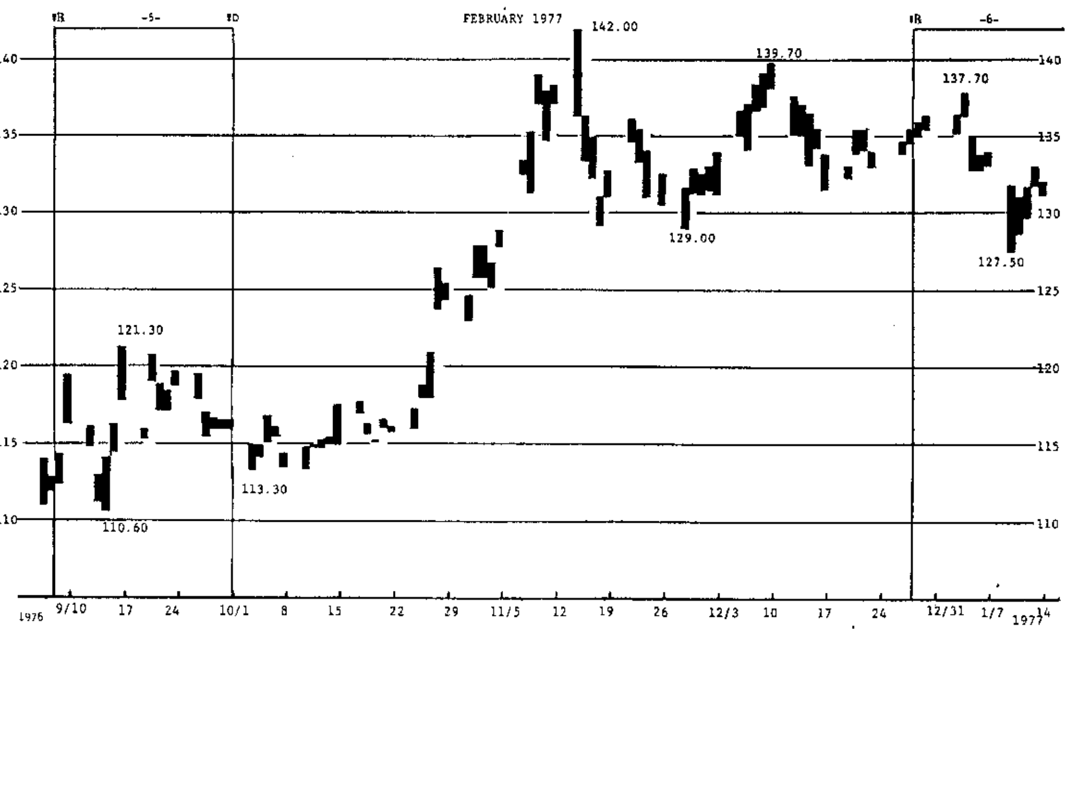


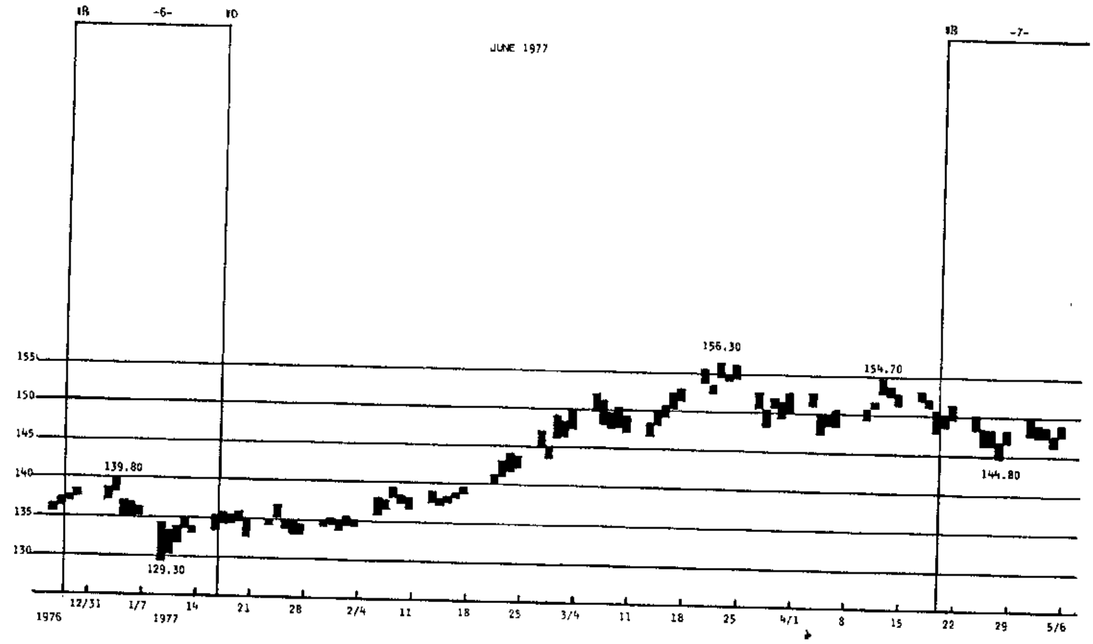
FEBRUARY 1976
-2-
-3-
148.30
150.80
147.90
136.70
130.00
123.40
150
145
140
135
130
125
1975
9/19
26
10/3
10
17
24
31
11/7
14
21
28
12/5
12
19
26
1/2
9
1976
16
23



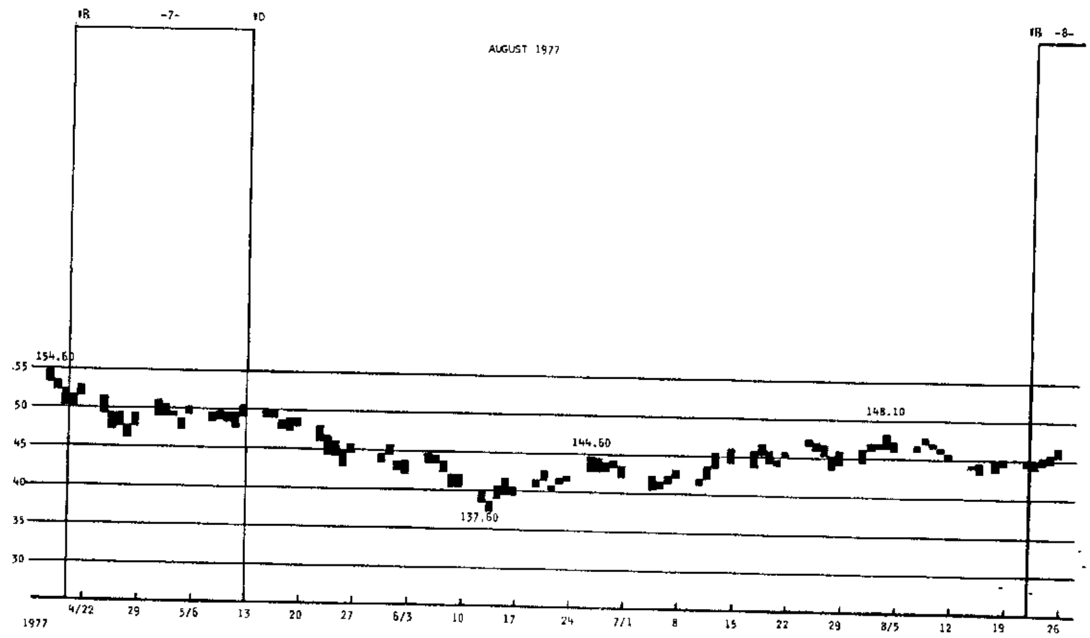
JUNE 1976
-3-
-4-
135.20
135.20
135.20
123.70
126.90
126.70
140
135
130
125
1976
1/16
23
30
2/6
13
20
27
3/5
12
19
26
4/2
9
16
23
30
5/7
14
21


#B
-4-
#D
OCTOBER 1976
#R
-5-
135
130
125
120
115
110
105
133.80
126.10
118.00
115.80
105.20
99.70
1976
5/14
21
28
6/4
11
18
25
7/2
9
16
23
30
8/6
13
20
27
9/3
10
17

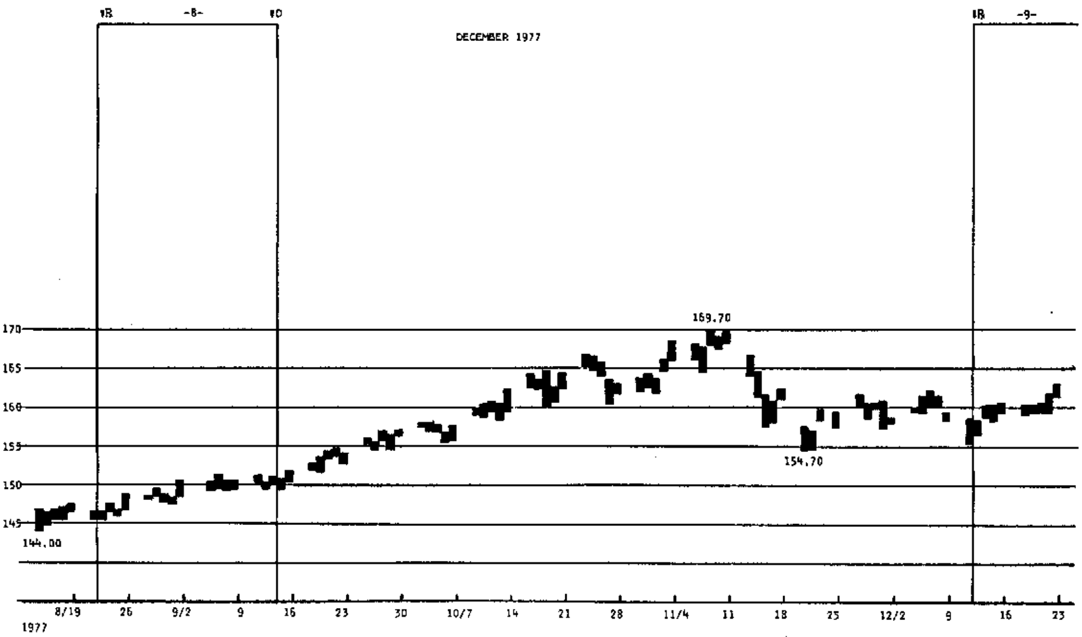

#B
-5-
#D
FEBRUARY 1977
#R
-6-
140
135
130
125
120
115
110
142.00
139.70
137.70
129.00
127.50
121.30
113.30
110.60
1976
9/10
17
24
10/1
8
15
22
29
11/5
12
19
26
12/3
10
17
24
12/31
1/7
1977
14



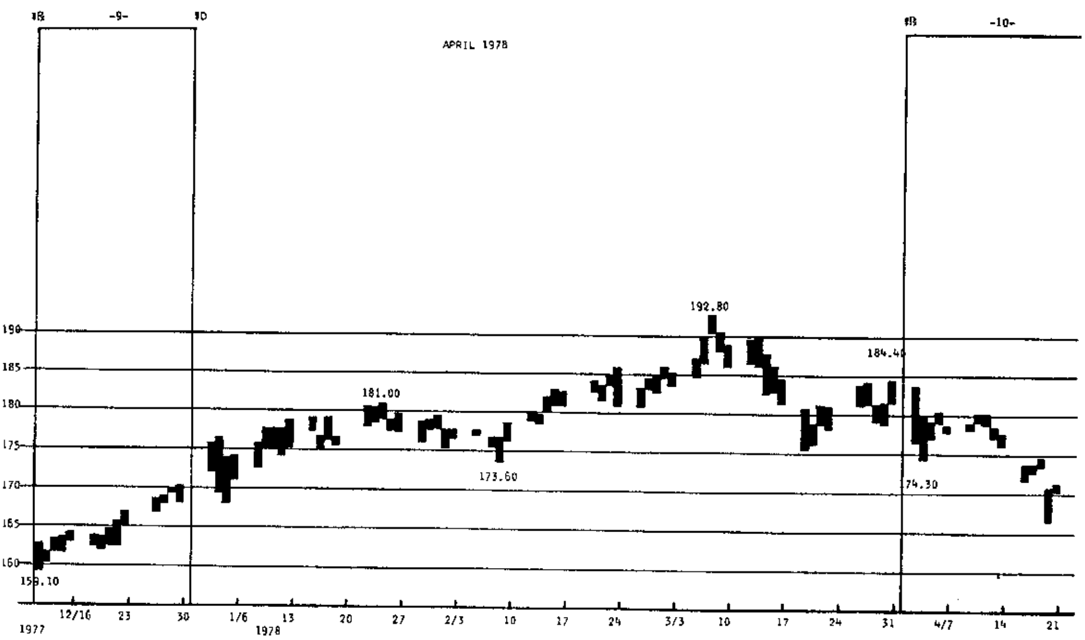
#B
-6-
#D
JUNE 1977
#B
-7-
156.30
154.70
139.80
129.30
144.80
155
150
145
140
135
130
1976
12/31
1/7
1977
14
21
28
2/4
11
18
25
3/4
11
18
25
4/1
8
15
22
29
5/6



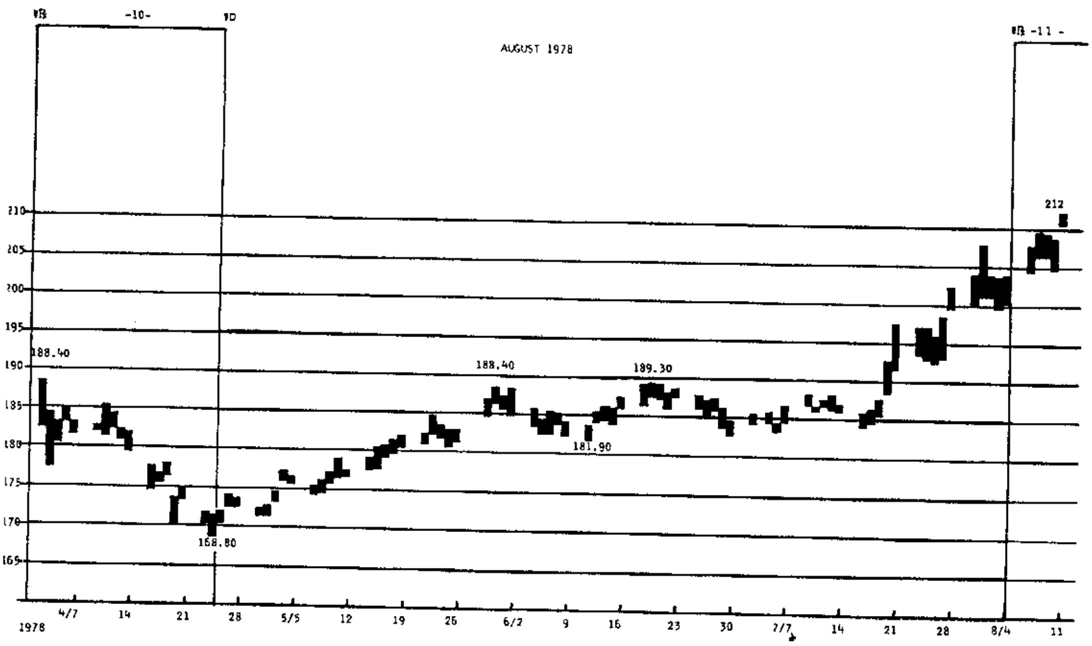
#B
-7-
#D
AUGUST 1977
#B -8-
154.60
144.60
148.10
137.60
.55
50
45
40
35
30
1977
4/22
29
5/6
13
20
27
6/3
10
17
24
7/1
8
15
22
29
8/5
12
19
26



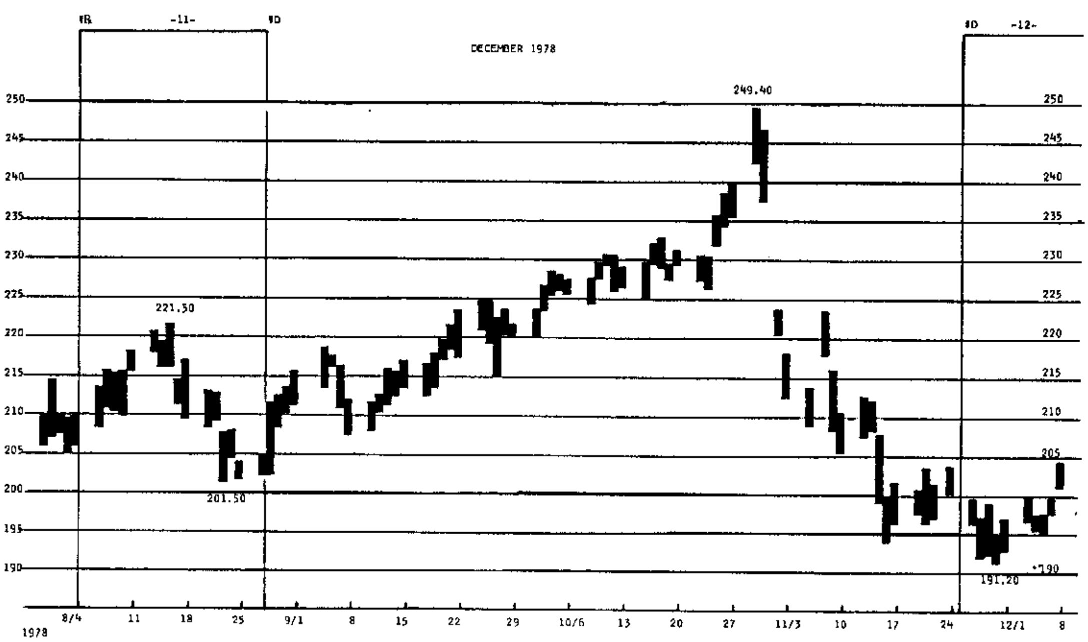
#B
-8-
#D
DECEMBER 1977
#B
-9-
169.70
154.70
144.00
170
165
160
155
150
145
8/19
26
9/2
9
16
23
30
10/7
14
21
28
11/4
11
18
25
12/2
9
16
23
1977



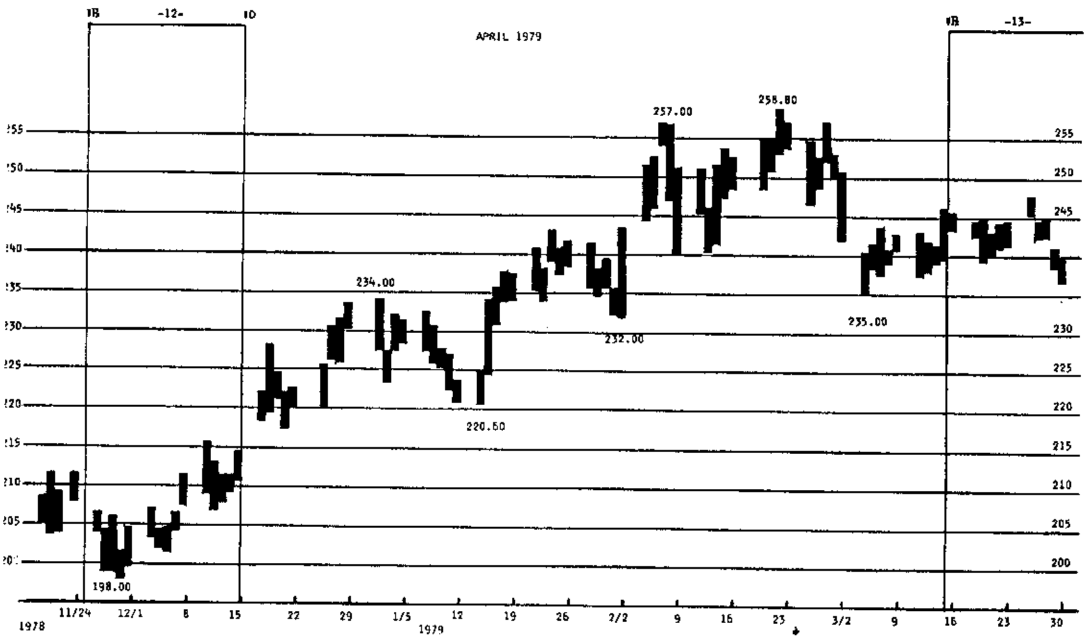
#B
-9-
#D
APRIL 1978
#B
-10-
192.80
181.00
184.40
173.60
174.30
159.10
190
185
180
175
170
165
160
12/16
23
30
1/6
13
20
27
2/3
10
17
24
3/3
10
17
24
31
4/7
14
21
1977
1978



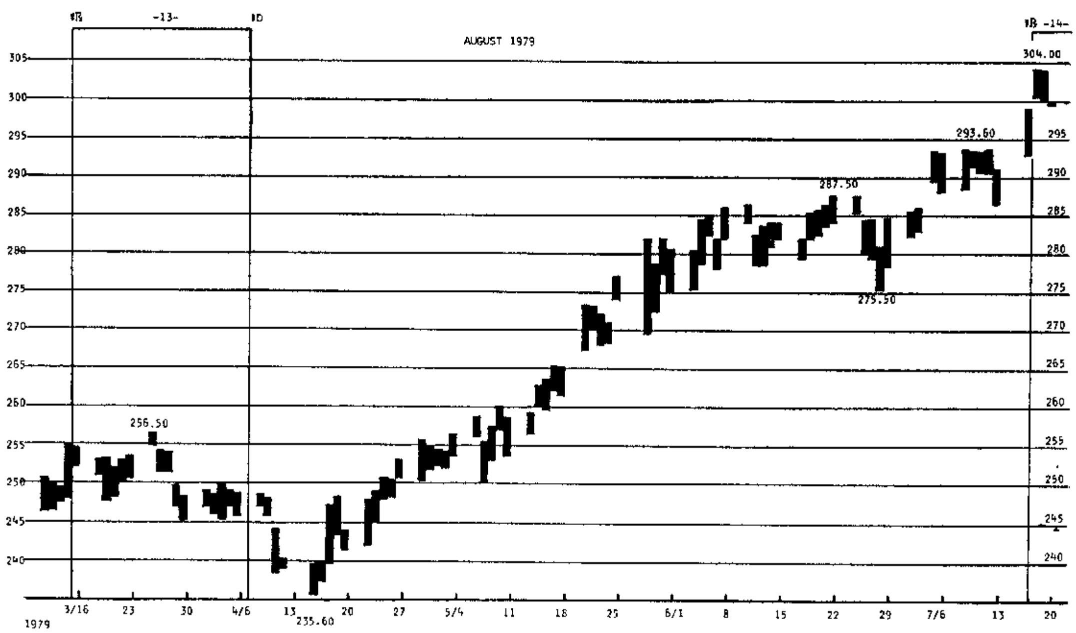
AUGUST 1978
-10-
-11 -
188.40
168.80
188.40
181.90
189.30
212
1978



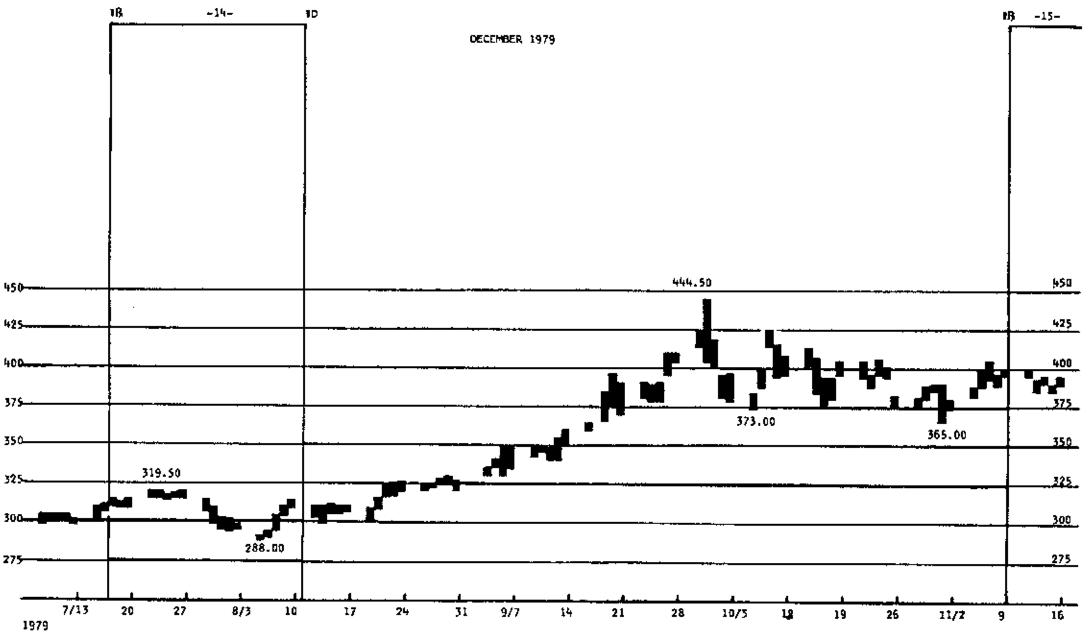
DECEMBER 1978
-11-
-12-
221.50
201.50
249.40
191.20
1978

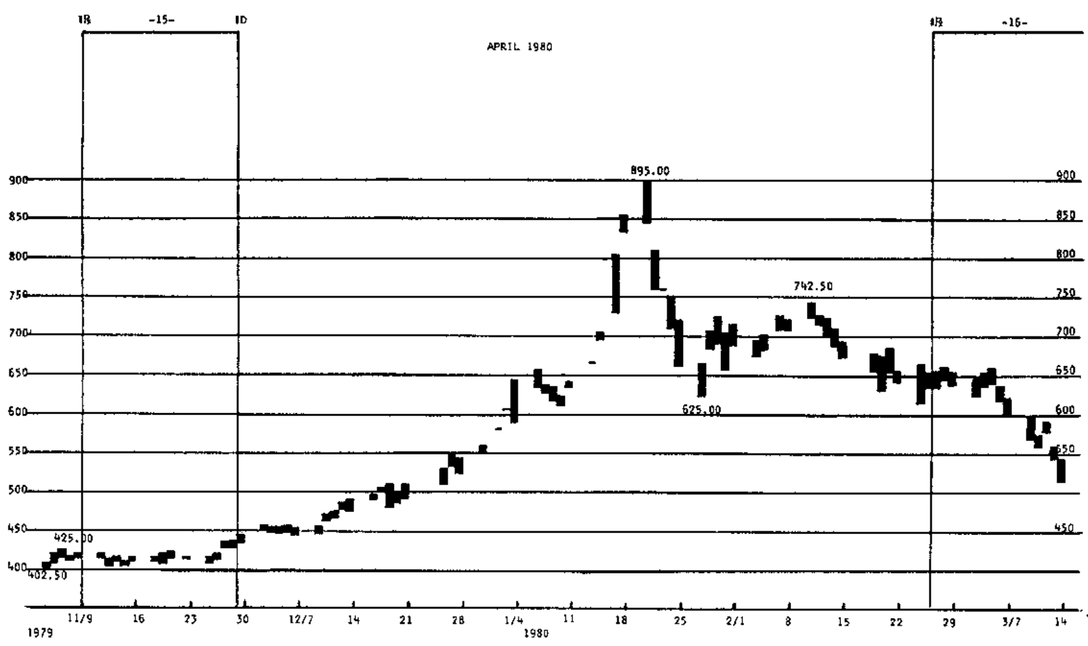


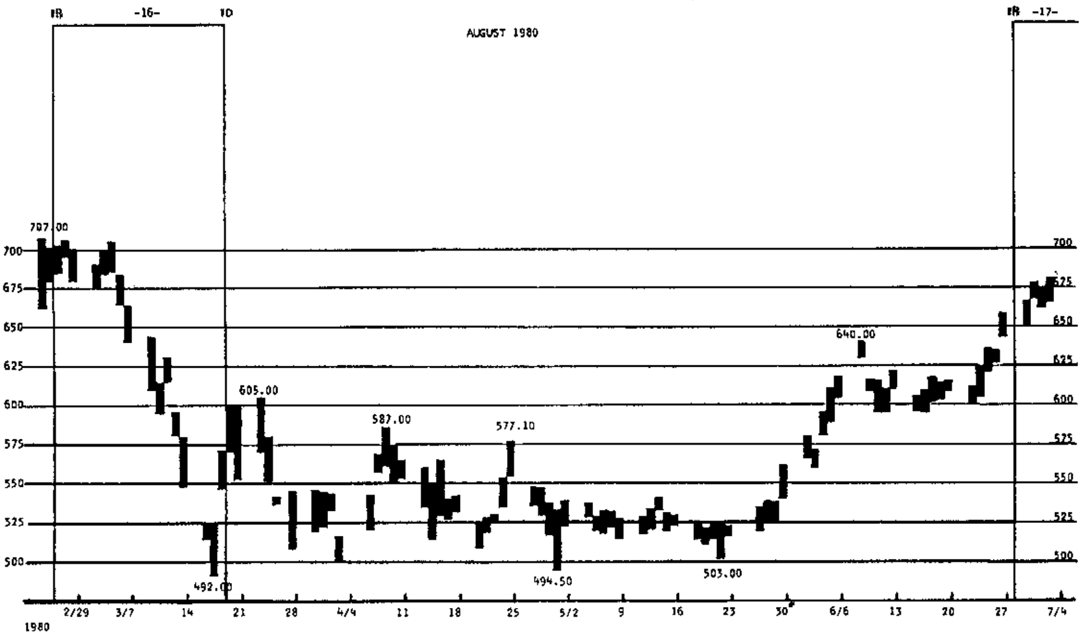
IB
-12-
ID
APRIL 1979
257.00
258.80
IB
-13-
234.00
232.00
235.00
220.60
198.00
255
250
245
240
235
230
225
220
215
210
205
200
11/24
12/1
8
15
22
29
1/5
12
19
26
2/2
9
16
23
3/2
9
16
23
30
1978
1979



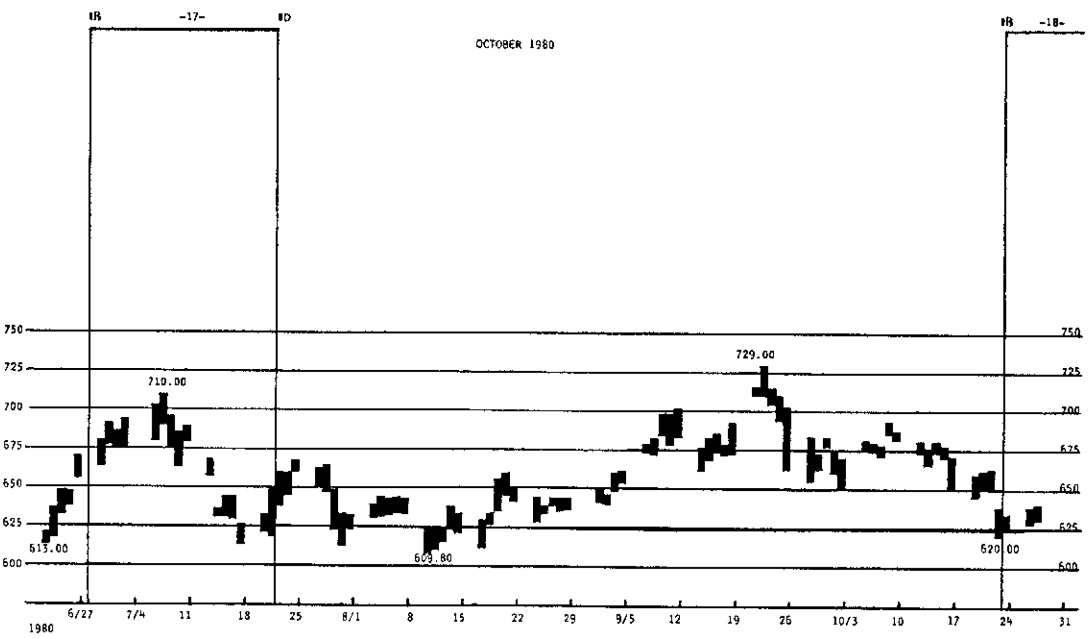
IB
-13-
ID
AUGUST 1979
IB -14-
304.00
293.60
287.50
275.50
256.50
235.60
305
300
295
290
285
280
275
270
265
260
255
250
245
240
3/16
23
30
4/6
13
20
27
5/4
11
18
25
6/1
8
15
22
29
7/6
13
20
1979


1B -14- 1D
DECEMBER 1979
1B -15-
319.50
288.00
444.50
373.00
365.00
450 425 400 375 350 325 300 275
1979 7/13 20 27 8/3 10 17 24 31 9/7 14 21 28 10/5 12 19 26 11/2 9 16


1B -15- 1D
APRIL 1980
1B -16-
895.00
742.50
625.00
425.00
402.50
900 850 800 750 700 650 600 550 500 450 400
1979 11/9 16 23 30 12/7 14 21 28 1/4 1980 11 18 25 2/1 8 15 22 29 3/7 14

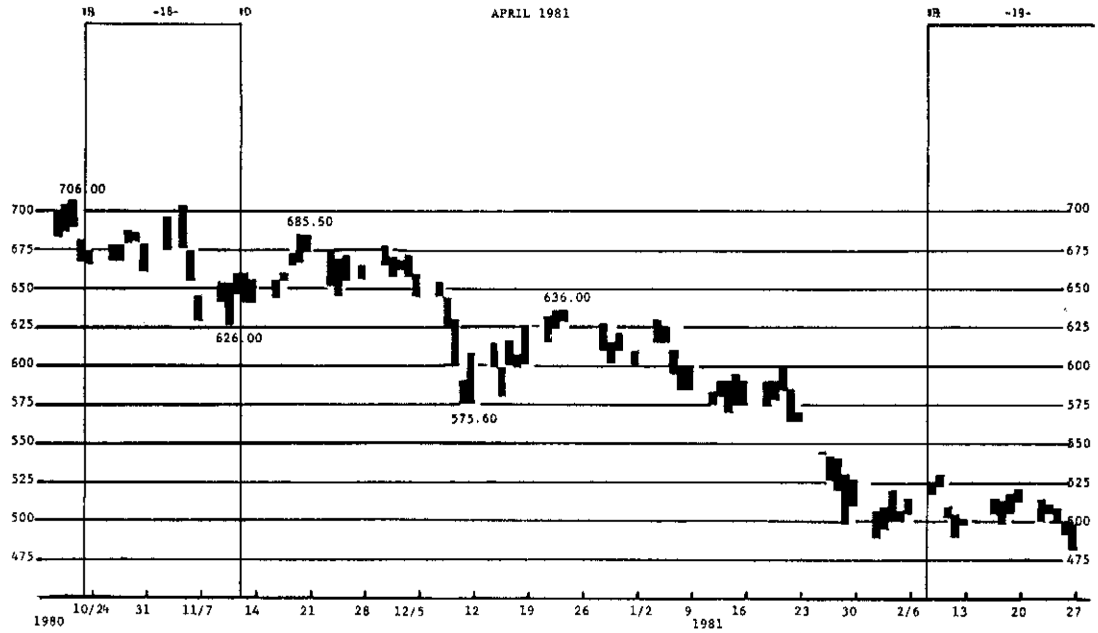


IB -16- ID
AUGUST 1980
IB -17-
707.00
605.00
587.00
577.10
640.00
492.00
494.50
503.00
700
675
650
625
600
575
550
525
500
1980
2/29 3/7 14 21 28 4/4 11 18 25 5/2 9 16 23 30 6/6 13 20 27 7/4

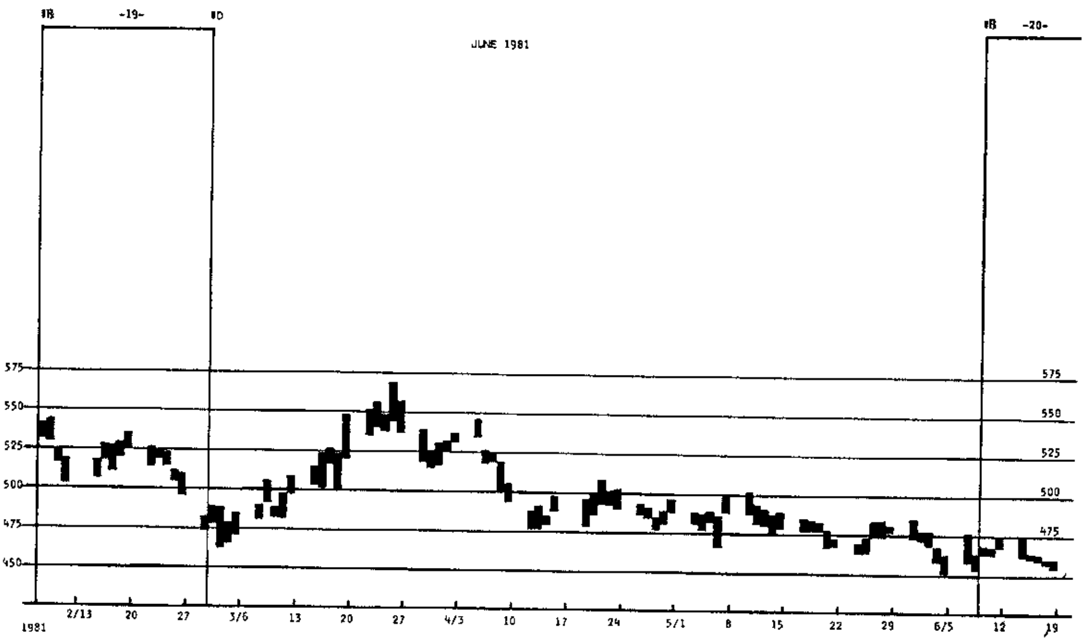


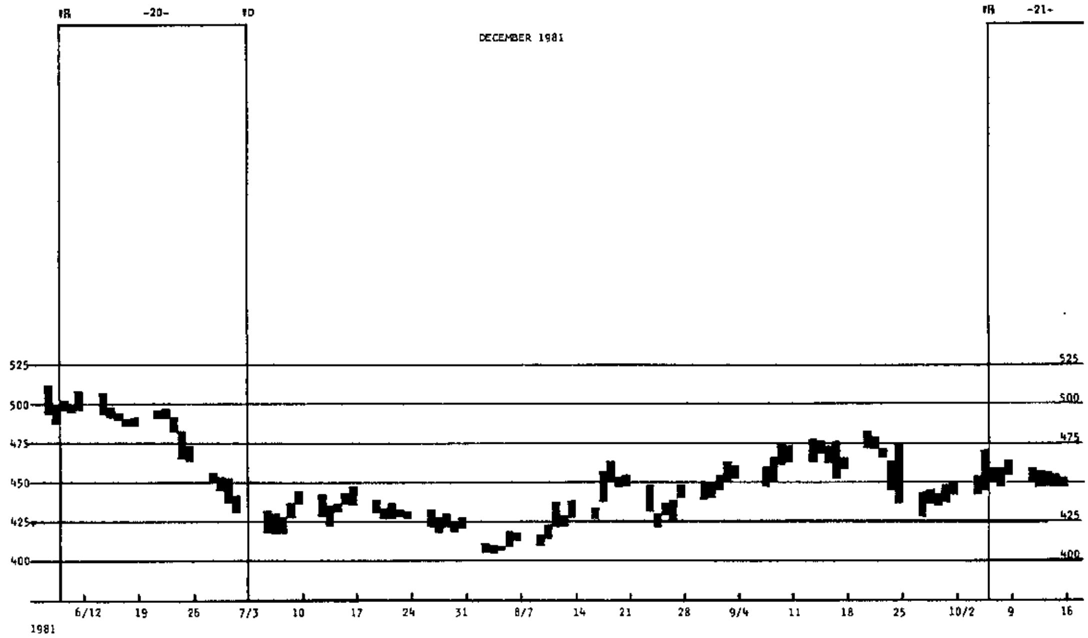
IB -17- ID
OCTOBER 1980
IB -18-
710.00
729.00
613.00
609.80
620.00
750
725
700
675
650
625
600
1980
6/27 7/4 11 18 25 8/1 8 15 22 29 9/5 12 19 26 10/3 10 17 24 31

APRIL 1981

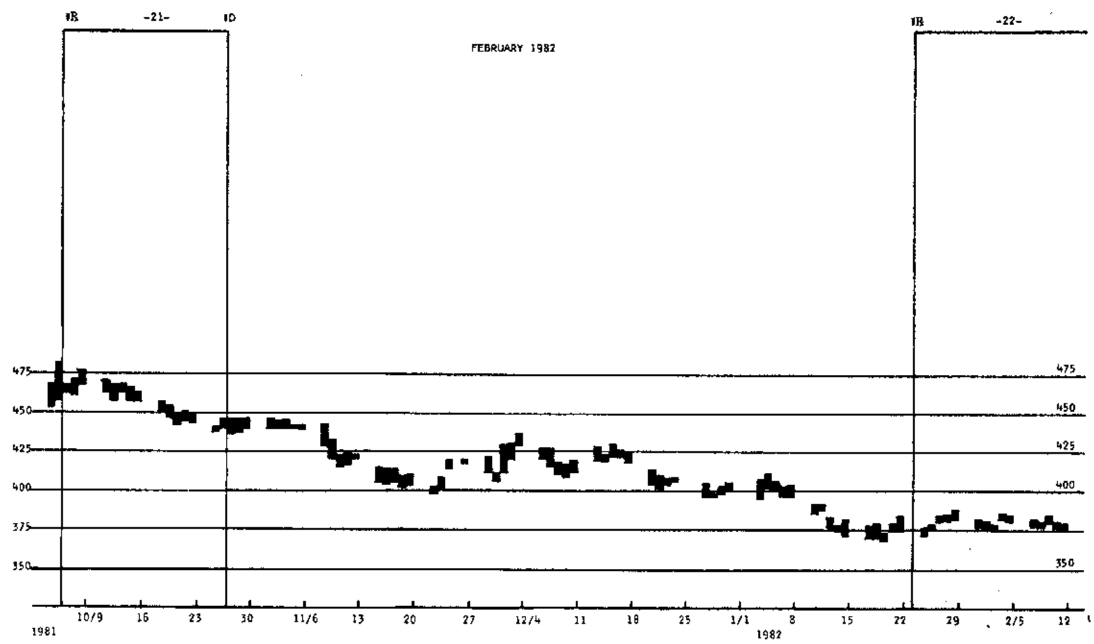


JUNE 1981

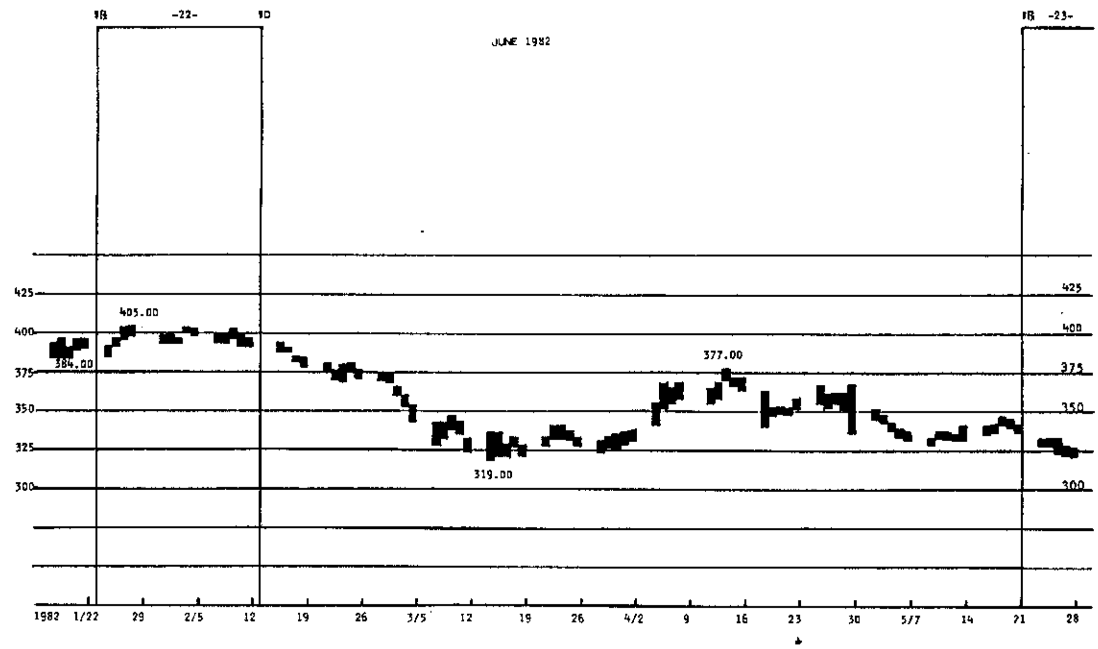




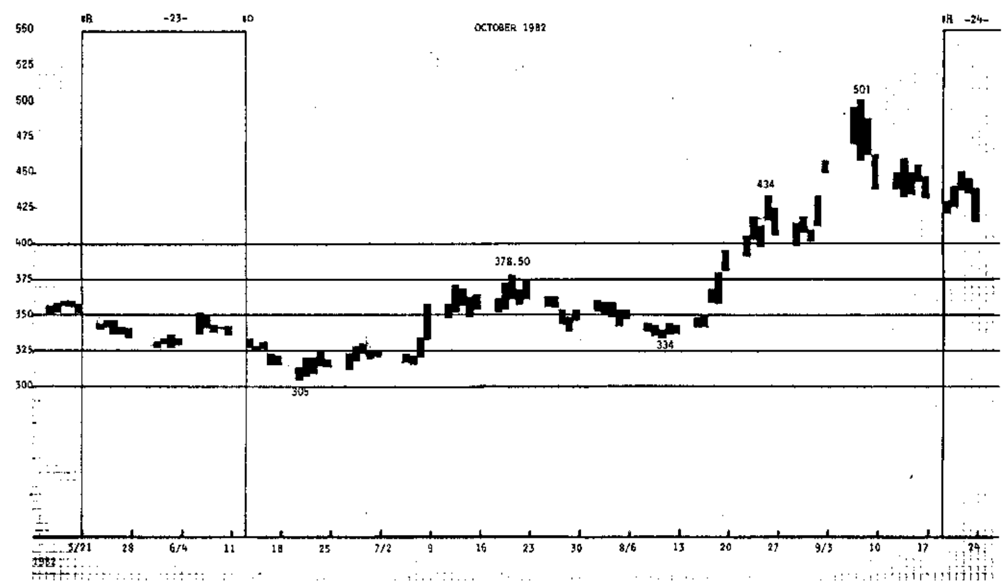
FB -20- FD
DECEMBER 1981
FB -21-
525
500
475
450
425
400
6/12 19 26 7/3 10 17 24 31 8/7 14 21 28 9/4 11 18 25 10/2 9 16
1981



FB -21- FD
FEBRUARY 1982
FB -22-
475
450
425
400
375
350
10/9 16 23 30 11/6 13 20 27 12/4 11 18 25 1/1 8 15 22 29 2/5 12
1981
1982



JUNE 1982
FB
-22-
FD
FB -23-
405.00
384.00
377.00
319.00
425
400
375
350
325
300
1982 1/22 29 2/5 12 19 26 3/5 12 19 26 4/2 9 16 23 30 5/7 14 21 28



OCTOBER 1982
FB
-23-
FD
FB -24-
501
434
378.50
334
305
550
525
500
475
450
425
400
375
350
325
300
1982 5/21 28 6/4 11 18 25 7/2 9 16 23 30 8/6 13 20 27 9/3 10 17 24

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Bressert, Walter, and Jones, James, *The HAL Blue Book*, HALCO, Dallas, Texas, 1981.
2. Aden-Ayales, Pamela, and Aden-Harter, Mary Anne, *Aden Gold Study*, Adam Smith Publishing, Metairie, La. 1981.
3. Shirk, Gertrude, *Cycles Magazine*, Vol. 25, No. 9, Foundation For The Study Of Cycles, Pittsburgh, Pa. 1974.
4. Wilson, Louise, *Catalogue Of Cycles: Part 1-Economics*, Foundation For The Study of Cycles, Pittsburgh, Pa., 1964.
5. *Moody's Handbook Of Common Stocks*, Moody's Investor Service, New York, NY, 1982.
6. Michelsen, Neil F., *The American Ephemeris For The 20th Century: 1900 To 2000 At Midnight*, Astro Computing Services, San Diego, Ca. 1980.
7. Michelsen, Neil F., *The American Ephemeris: 1981*-1990, Astro Computing Services, San Diego, Ca., 1977.
8. Bressert, Walter, *Hal Commodity Cycles Instructional Manual*, HALCO, Dallas, Texas, 1974.
9. Matlock, Clifford Charles, *Man And Cosmos: A Theory Of Endeavor Rhythms*, Development Cycles Resarch Project, Waynesville, N.C. 1977.
10. *Commodities Exchange, Inc. 1977-1980 Statistical Yearbooks*, Commodities Exchange, Inc. New York, NY 1977-1978.
11. *Wall Street Journals*, Dow Jones & Company, Inc., New York, NY.
12. *Graphix Commodity Charts*, Chicago, Ill. 1982.